



# Interlanguage:

## English for Senior High School Students X



PUSAT PERBUKUAN  
Departemen Pendidikan Nasional

Joko Priyana  
Virga Renitasari  
Arnys Rahayu Irjayanti

Di unduh dari : [Bukupaket.com](http://Bukupaket.com)

---

# **Interlanguage:**

## **English for Senior High School Students X**

---

**Joko Priyana, Ph.D**

**Arnys Rahayu Irjayanti**

**Virga Renitasari**



Pusat Perbukuan  
Departemen Pendidikan Nasional

Hak Cipta pada Departemen Pendidikan Nasional  
Dilindungi Undang-undang

# **Interlanguage:**

## **English for Senior High School Students X**

Penulis	:	Joko Priyana, Ph.D Arnys Rahayu Irjayanti Virga Renitasari
Editor Ahli	:	Suharso, M.Pd
Editor	:	Ika Mayliana
Perancang Kulit	:	Bene
Layouter	:	Rita E
Ilustrator	:	Ipunk Kristianto
Ukuran Buku	:	17,6 x 25 cm

420.07  
PRI PRIYANA, Joko  
i INTERLANGUAGE: English for Senior High School Students X: SMA/MA Kelas XI/oleh Joko  
Priyana, Riandi, Anita Prasetyo Mumpuni. — Jakarta: Pusat Perbukuan, Departemen Pendidikan  
Nasional, 2008.  
vi, 207 hlm.; ilus. ; 25 cm  
Daftar Pustaka : hlm. 184-186  
Indeks  
ISBN 979-462-895-6  
1. INTERLANGUAGE: English for Senior High School-Studi dan Pengajaran I. Judul  
II. Riandi III. Mumpuni, Anita Prasetyo

Hak Cipta buku ini dibeli oleh Departemen Pendidikan Nasional  
dari Penerbit Gramedia Widiasarana Indonesia (Grasindo)

Diterbitkan oleh Pusat Perbukuan  
Departemen Pendidikan Nasional  
Tahun 2008

Diperbanyak oleh....

# Kata Sambutan

Puji syukur kami panjatkan ke hadirat Allah SWT, berkat rahmat dan karunia-Nya, Pemerintah, dalam hal ini, Departemen Pendidikan Nasional, pada tahun 2008, telah membeli hak cipta buku teks pelajaran ini dari penulis/penerbit untuk disebarluaskan kepada masyarakat melalui situs internet (website) Jaringan Pendidikan Nasional.

Buku teks pelajaran ini telah dinilai oleh Badan Standar Nasional Pendidikan dan telah ditetapkan sebagai buku teks pelajaran yang memenuhi syarat kelayakan untuk digunakan dalam proses pembelajaran melalui Peraturan Menteri Pendidikan Nasional Nomor 34 Tahun 2008.

Kami menyampaikan penghargaan yang setinggi-tingginya kepada para penulis/penerbit yang telah berkenan mengalihkan hak cipta karyanya kepada Departemen Pendidikan Nasional untuk digunakan secara luas oleh para siswa dan guru di seluruh Indonesia.

Buku-buku teks pelajaran yang telah dialihkan hak ciptanya kepada Departemen Pendidikan Nasional ini, dapat diunduh (down load), digandakan, dicetak, dialihmediakan, atau difotokopi oleh masyarakat. Namun, untuk penggandaan yang bersifat komersial harga penjualannya harus memenuhi ketentuan yang ditetapkan oleh Pemerintah. Diharapkan bahwa buku teks pelajaran ini akan lebih mudah diakses sehingga siswa dan guru di seluruh Indonesia maupun sekolah Indonesia yang berada di luar negeri dapat memanfaatkan sumber belajar ini.

Kami berharap, semua pihak dapat mendukung kebijakan ini. Kepada para siswa kami ucapkan selamat belajar dan manfaatkanlah buku ini sebaik-baiknya. Kami menyadari bahwa buku ini masih perlu ditingkatkan mutunya. Oleh karena itu, saran dan kritik sangat kami harapkan.

Jakarta, Juli 2008

Kepala Pusat Perbukuan

# Kata Pengantar

Puji syukur kami panjatkan kepada Tuhan Yang Maha Esa yang telah memberi hidayah, kekuatan, kesehatan, dan ketabahan kepada kami sehingga penyusunan bahan ajar seri *Interlanguage: English for Senior High School Students* ini terselesaikan.

Bahan ajar ini disusun dengan tujuan menyediakan materi pembelajaran Bahasa Inggris untuk peserta didik kelas X sesuai dengan Standar Isi mata pelajaran Bahasa Inggris 2006. Materi dan tugas pembelajaran dikembangkan dengan prinsip-prinsip Communicative Approach untuk secara terintegrasi mengembangkan kompetensi peserta didik dalam keempat keterampilan berbahasa, yaitu menyimak, berbicara, membaca, dan menulis. Selain itu materi dan tugas pembelajaran secara terpadu mengembangkan kecakapan hidup dalam arti luas dan peningkatan wawasan kebinekaan.

Materi dan tugas-tugas pembelajaran dalam bahan ajar ini diorganisasikan ke dalam dua siklus pembelajaran, yaitu siklus lisan dan siklus tulis. Sementara siklus lisan menekankan pengembangan keterampilan berbahasa lisan (menyimak dan berbicara), siklus tulis mengembangkan keterampilan dalam berbahasa tulis (membaca dan menulis). Sesuai dengan prinsip keterpaduan dalam pembelajaran bahasa, kedua siklus tersebut mengembangkan keempat keterampilan berbahasa secara terintegrasi. Baik siklus lisan maupun siklus tulis tersusun atas empat macam kegiatan pembelajaran, yaitu pembuka, pajanan terhadap bahasa target, penjelasan mengenai unsur-unsur kebahasaan, dan latihan berkomunikasi dalam bahasa target secara terbimbing maupun bebas. Selain itu, untuk keperluan pengayaan dan evaluasi, setiap unit dilengkapi dengan tugas terstruktur berupa pekerjaan rumah dan review.

Kegiatan-kegiatan belajar dikembangkan untuk menjadikan siswa secara aktif belajar Bahasa Inggris melalui kegiatan memahami dan menggunakan bahasa Inggris untuk mengekspresikan gagasan dan perasaan secara alami. Dalam pembelajaran, guru diharapkan bertindak sebagai fasilitator, pemberi umpan balik, dan pendorong siswa agar berani menggunakan bahasa target untuk berkomunikasi secara akurat dan berterima.

Penyusunan buku ajar ini terselesaikan atas dukungan dari berbagai pihak. Oleh karena itu, kami mengucapkan terima kasih kepada semua pihak yang telah membantu terselesaiannya penyusunan buku ini.

Walaupun kami telah menyusun bahan ajar ini dengan upaya yang sungguh-sungguh, karena berbagai keterbatasan kami, buku ini masih memiliki sejumlah kekurangan. Sehubungan dengan hal tersebut, kami mengharapkan masukan dari berbagai pihak, terutama guru dan siswa pengguna buku ini, untuk perbaikan lebih lanjut.

Januari, 2008

Penulis

# Daftar Isi

<b>Kata Sambutan .....</b>	iii
<b>Kata Pengantar .....</b>	iv
<b>Key to Pronunciation .....</b>	vii
<b>List of Abbreviation.....</b>	viii
<b>Unit I Let Me Introduce Myself.....</b>	1
<i>Greeting Someone</i>	
<i>Asking How Someone is</i>	
<i>Saying How You are</i>	
<i>Introducing Yourself</i>	
<i>Introducing Someone</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Recount Texts</i>	
<b>Unit II I'm Sorry to Hear That.....</b>	19
<i>Showing Attention</i>	
<i>Showing Sympathy</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Recount Texts</i>	
<b>Unit III That Sounds a Nice Idea.....</b>	35
<i>Accepting an Offer/Invitation</i>	
<i>Declining an Offer/Invitation</i>	
<i>Giving instruction</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Procedural Texts</i>	
<i>Short Functional Texts: Invitation Letters</i>	
<b>Unit IV Can I See You at 11 a.m.? .....</b>	55
<i>Making Appointments</i>	
<i>Approving Appointments</i>	
<i>Canceling Appointments</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Procedural Texts</i>	
<b>Unit V I'm Delighted to Hear That.....</b>	71
<i>Saying that You Are Pleased</i>	
<i>Thanking</i>	
<i>Responding to Thanks</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Narrative Texts</i>	
<i>Short Functional Texts: Announcement</i>	
<b>Unit Review Semester 1.....</b>	89

<b>Unit VI</b>	<b>It was the Least I Could Do .....</b>	97
	<i>Thanking</i>	
	<i>Responding to Thanks</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: Narrative Texts</i>	
<b>Unit VII</b>	<b>What a Nice Hair Cut! .....</b>	113
	<i>Complimenting Someone</i>	
	<i>Congratulating Someone</i>	
	<i>Responding to Compliments and Congratulations</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: Descriptive Texts</i>	
<b>Unit VIII</b>	<b>I Find It Very Interesting.....</b>	131
	<i>Saying that You Are Excited</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: Descriptive Texts</i>	
	<i>Short Functional Text: Advertisement</i>	
<b>Unit IX</b>	<b>I Don't Believe It!</b> .....	147
	<i>Expressing Disbelief</i>	
	<i>Expressing Surprise</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: News Item Texts</i>	
<b>Unit X</b>	<b>That's Very Kind of You.....</b>	161
	<i>Accepting an Offer/Invitation</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: News Item Texts</i>	
<b>Unit Review Semester 2.....</b>		177
<b>Daftar Pustaka .....</b>		184
<b>Appendix 1: Listening script.....</b>		187
<b>Appendix 2: Answer key .....</b>		198
<b>Subject Index.....</b>		199
<b>Mini Dictionary .....</b>		200
<b>Glossary .....</b>		206

# Key to Pronunciation

## Vowel

Phonetics symbols	Example	Pronunciation
i:	see	[si:]
i	any	['eni]
e	ten	[ten]
æ	hat	[hæt]
a:	arm	[a:m]
ɔ	got	[gɒt]
ɔ:	saw	[sɔ:]
ʊ	put	[put]
u:	too	[tu:]
ʌ	cup	[kʌp]
ə:	fur	[fə:]
ə	ago	[ə'gəʊ]
ei	pay	[peɪ]
ai	five	[faɪv]
əʊ	home	[həʊm]
au	now	[nau]
ɔɪ	join	[dʒɔɪn]
ɪə	near	[nɪə]
ɛə	hair	[heə]
ʊə	pure	['pjʊə]

## Consonants

Phonetics symbols	Example	Pronunciation
p	pen	[pen]
b	bad	[bæd]
t	tea	[ti:]
d	did	[dɪd]
k	cat	[kæt]
g	got	[gɒt]
tʃ	chin	[tʃɪn]
dʒ	june	[dʒu:n]
f	fall	[fɔ:l]
v	van	[væn]
θ	thin	[θɪn]
ð	then	[ðen]

s	so	[səʊ]
z	zoo	[zu:]
ʃ	she	[ʃi:]
v	vision	[ˈvɪʒn]
h	how	[haʊ]
m	man	[mæn]
n	no	[nəʊ]
s	sing	[sɪŋ]
l	leg	[leg]
r	red	[red]
j	yes	[jes]
w	wet	[wet]

### List of Abbreviations

- kb* : kata benda  
*KKI* : kata kerja intransitif  
*KKT* : kata kerja transitif  
*KS* : kata sifat  
*KK* : kata keterangan

# UNIT I

## LET ME INTRODUCE MYSELF.



## Concept Map



In your daily life you often meet new people and you need to introduce yourself to them or possibly introduce your friends to others. You may also need to respond to others who introduce themselves to you. Do you know how to do them very well?

When you meet others you usually greet them, ask them how they are, say goodbye, etc. Do you know how to do them?

You like reading and writing, don't you? The texts that you read may include recount texts such as experiences in joining extracurricular activities and competitions. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

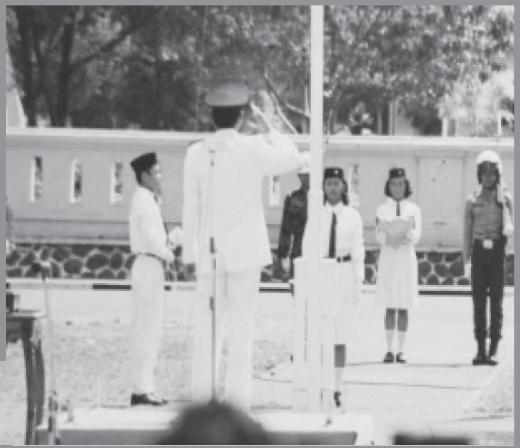
## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

In pairs, discuss the following activities with your classmate. The following words may help you.

ceremony ['seriməni] (kb)	:	upacara
classroom ['kla:srum] (kb)	:	ruang kelas
club [klʌb] (kb)	:	klub; perkumpulan
extracurricular ['ekstrəkə'rɪkjulər] (ks)	:	ekstrakurikuler
join [dʒɔɪn] (kkt)	:	mengikuti



## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 2

---

Listen to the following short dialogues. Then, complete the missing expressions. The listening script is in the Appendix.

- 1) Ayu : Good morning.  
Andi : \_\_\_\_\_  
Ayu : Do you know when the class meeting starts?  
Andi : It starts at 9 a.m. today.  
Ayu : I see. Thanks for telling.  
Andi : You're welcome.
  
  - 2) Virga : How are you, Den?  
Denias : \_\_\_\_\_  
Virga : Well, you look different today.  
Denias : Really? How do I look?  
Virga : You look great.  
Denias : Thanks. You do too.
  
  - 3) Retno : I think we need to discuss our plan for next month.  
Arnys : You're right.  
Retno : What if we meet at the canteen this afternoon?  
Arnys : Sure.  
Retno : So, \_\_\_\_\_  
Arnys : See you.
- 



### Task 3

---

Study the following expressions. Work in pairs.

In the dialogues in **Task 2** you find expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
• Good morning.	Greeting someone
• How are you, Den?	Asking how someone is
• See you.	Saying good bye

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
• Good afternoon/evening. • Hi!/Hello!	Greeting someone
• How are you doing?	Asking how someone is
• I'm fine, thanks. • Very well, thanks. • Not so bad, thanks.	Saying how you are
• Good bye. • Bye. • See you soon/later/tomorrow.	Saying good bye



## Cultural Tips

### Meeting and Greeting in Australia

- Shake hands with everyone present upon meeting and before leaving. Allow women to offer their hands first.
- Women generally do not shake hands with other women.
- Use titles, Mr, Mrs, and Miss when first introduced.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## Task 4

Complete the dialogues below with correct expressions.

- 1) Arnys : ...  
Ruben : Very well, thank you.
- 2) Ayu : Good evening.  
Denias : ...
- 3) Andi : How are you doing?  
Retno : ...
- 4) Adib : See you tomorrow.  
Virga : ...
- 5) Anita : Take care.  
Marcell : ...



## Task 5

Let's say it right.

In the dialogue between Ayu and Andi in **Task 2** you find the word 'class'. How do you pronounce it?  
class [kla:s]

**Note:**

The vowel letter 'a' is pronounced 'ɑ:' when followed by '-ss, -st, or -sk'. Here are some other examples.

glass [gla:s]

pass [pa:s]

cast [ka:st]

last [la:st]

ask [a:sk]

task [ta:sk]



## Task 6

Listen to the conversation and then answer the questions. Before listening, read the questions. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Situation:** Andi, Denias, and Adib are new students. They are at the students' association office.

### Questions

1. What does Andi say to Denias to introduce himself?
2. What does Denias say to Andi to introduce himself?
3. What does Andi say to Denias to introduce Adib?
4. Who joined *pencak silat* extracurricular activity in the Junior High School?
5. What does Andi say to end the conversation?



## Task 7

Study the following expressions. Work in pairs.

In the conversation in **Task 6** you find expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• My name is Andi.</li><li>• I'm Denias.</li></ul>	Introducing yourself
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Denias, this is Adib.</li></ul>	Introducing someone

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Let me introduce myself. My name is ...</li><li>I'd like to introduce myself. My name is ...</li><li>Allow me to introduce myself. My name is ...</li></ul>	Introducing yourself
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>I'd like to introduce ...</li><li>Let me introduce ...</li><li>Allow me to introduce ...</li></ul>	Introducing someone



## Task 8

---

Complete the following conversation with the correct expressions in the box. Compare your answers with a classmate's. Then, act the conversation out.

**Situation:** Adib, Arnys, and Retno are new students. They meet at the students' orientation course.

Hi, Retno. this is Retno. I'm Arnys.	My name is Adib.
--	------------------

Adib : Hi, Are you a new student?

Arnys : Yes, I am. By the way, are you a new student, too?

Adib : I'm a new student too. 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Arnys : 2) \_\_\_\_\_. Well, Adib, 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
She was my classmate in the Junior High School.

Adib : 4) \_\_\_\_\_ Nice to meet you?

Retno : Nice to meet you too.

Adib : Anyway, we still have half an hour before the class starts. Shall we go to the canteen?

Arnys &

Retno : Okay.

---



## Task 9

---

Have a conversation in groups of three. Introduce yourself and one of your classmates to your group. Look at the example.

Anita : Hi, my name is Anita.

Virga : Hi, Anita. My name is Virga.

Anita : Virga, this is Ayu.

Virga : Hi, Ayu. It's nice to meet you.

Ayu : It's nice to meet you too, Virga.

---



## Task 10

In small groups, introduce yourself to your classmates. The following guidance will help you.

- greet your classmates
- introduce yourself: name, place/date of birth, address
- mention your hobbies and your ambitions
- tell the activities you ever joined and recent activities you have

Good morning, everybody! Let me introduce myself. My name is Anita Mumpuni. I was born in Semarang, on 29 August 1992. I live at Diponegoro street no. 27. My hobbies are dancing, singing, and swimming. I want to be a professional dancer someday. I joined the music club in the Junior High School. Now, I join the dancing club. I practise hard to reach my ambition.



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 11

Study the following sentences. Work in pairs.

Now



Two years ago



I am a Senior High School student.

I was a Junior High School student.

Now



Two years ago



I join the pencak silat club.

I joined the football club.

Now



Two years ago



I play the guitar in my band.

I played the keyboard in my band.



## Task 12

Read the following text carefully and then write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false. Correct the false statements. Compare your work with a classmate's. Look at the example.

### Joining the Traditional Dance Competition

I joined the Traditional Dance Competition in Jakarta last year. I represented my Junior High School. It was my biggest competition. I practised hard with my teacher for a month. We also prepared the best costume we had.

We only had one day in Jakarta. We went there by plane. We left at 6 a.m. and arrived in Jakarta at 7 a.m. We took a taxi to take us to the place where the competition was held. It took an hour to get there. There were already some participants when we arrived. The competition would start in an hour.

First, my teacher and I went to the dressing room. My teacher helped me do the make-up and the costume. We spent almost an hour for the preparation. I told my teacher that I was really nervous. I was not ready for this. However, she told me that everything was alright, and I felt better.

Then, the time came for me to perform on stage. There were five judges and about two hundred people watching me. However, I did not feel nervous anymore. I performed on the stage confidently. I really did the best I could. I was glad when it ended smoothly.

After that, we waited for the announcement of the result. It was 4 p.m. when the judges finished making their final decision. I was so impatient to hear the result. I still could not believe when they called my name as the first winner. I was so happy to be given the trophy. My teacher was also proud of my achievement. Finally, we went back to Yogyakarta in the evening. We were so tired. However, we were satisfied because our effort was not useless.



No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	The writer joined the Modern Dance Competition.	F	The writer joined the Traditional Dance Competition.
2.	The writer joined the competition when she was in the Junior High School.		
3.	The writer went to Jakarta a day before the competition was held.		
4.	The writer went to Jakarta alone.		
5.	The writer spent more than an hour for the preparation before she performed.		
6.	The writer performed on the stage confidently.		
7.	The writer's performance ended gracelessly.		
8.	The writer went back to Yogyakarta the next day.		



## Task 13

---

### Study the following notes.

The text in Task 12 is a recount text telling ‘what happened’. The purpose of the story is to tell a series/sequence of events and evaluate their significance in some way. It has expressions of attitude and feeling, usually made by the writer about the events.

The text is organized to include:

- an information about ‘who’, ‘where’ and ‘when’;
- a record of events usually in chronological order;

- personal comments or evaluative remarks, which are arranged over throughout the record of events; and
- a reorientation which ‘rounds off’ the sequence of events.

The grammatical patterns of the text include:

- use of nouns and pronouns to identify people or things involved;
  - use of action verbs to refer to events;
  - use of past tense to locate events in relation to writer’s time;
  - use of conjunction and time connectives to sequence the events;
  - use of adverbs and adverbial phrases to indicate place and time; and
  - use of adjectives to describe nouns.
- 



## Task 14

---

**Read the text in Task 12 once again and find the meanings of the following words based on the context. You may work in groups of three.**

achievement [ə'tʃi:vment] (kb)	: ....
announcement [ə'naunsmənt] (kb)	: ....
competition [kɒmpə'tɪʃn] (kb)	: ....
costume ['kɒstju:m] (kb)	: ....
impatient [ɪm'peɪʃnt] (ks)	: ....
nervous ['nə:vəs] (ks)	: ....
participant [pa:tɪcipənt] (kb)	: ....
preparation [prepə'reɪʃn] (kb)	: ....
smoothly ['smu:ðli] (kk)	: ....
trophy ['trəʊfi] (kb)	: ....
useless ['ju:sləs] (ks)	: ....

---



## Task 15

---

**In pairs, match each word in column A with a word or phrase in column B that is close in meaning.**

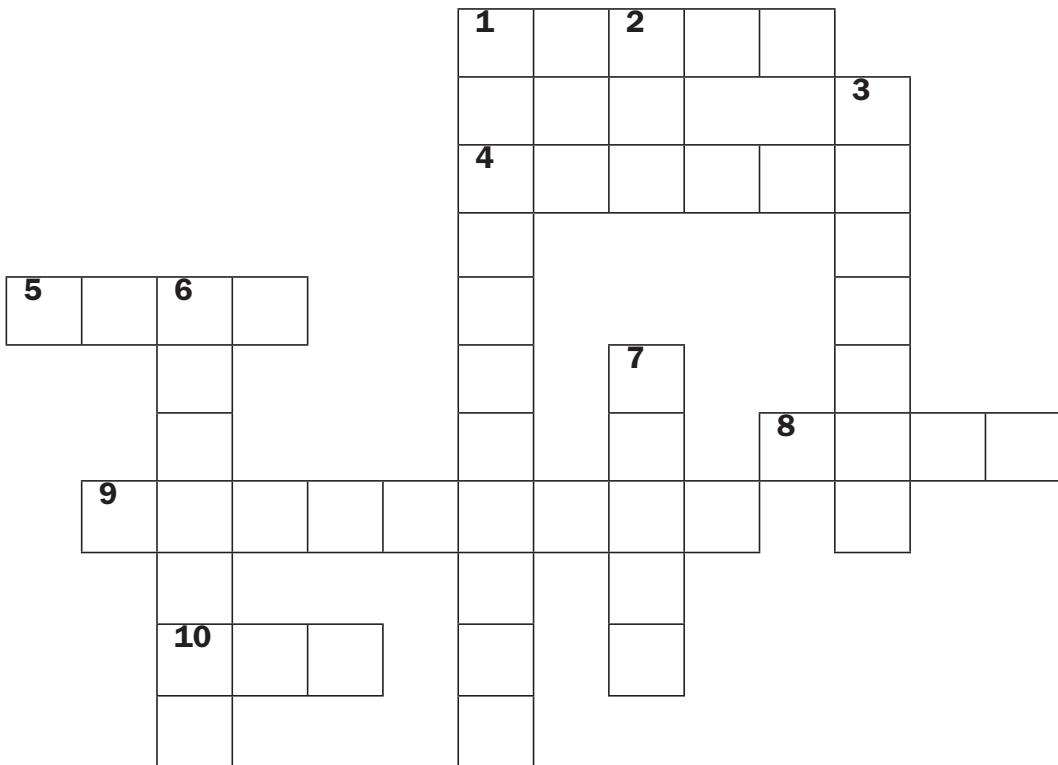
Column A	Column B
competition	award
arrive	contest
nervous	attainment
jury	viewer
audience	get there
trophy	adjudicator
achievement	anxious

---



## Task 16

Do this crossword puzzle in groups of three.



### Across:

1. He was the winner in the singing contest. He was very happy to be given the ....
4. She is a modest person. The synonym of "modest" is ....
5. Andre is a new member of the basketball ....
8. The ... will decide the winner of the competition.
9. a person who is in the same class as you at school
10. unhappy

### Down:

1. the synonym of attainment
2. goal
3. being worried
6. not useful
7. game between two teams



## Task 17

---

Study the rule below.

### Simple Past Tense

To talk about past events and conditions, you use VERB-2 forms. Here are some examples taken from the text.

- I **joined** the Traditional Dance Competition in Jakarta last year.
- It **was** my biggest competition.

Telling Past Events

- (+) S + V2  
(-) S + did not + V1

Examples:

- (+) I **joined** the Traditional Dance Competition in Jakarta last year.  
I **represented** my Junior High School.  
(-) I **did not feel** nervous anymore.

Telling Past Conditions

- (+) S + was/were + noun/adjective  
(-) S + was/were not + noun/adjective

Examples:

- (+) It **was** my biggest competition.  
I **was** so happy to be given the trophy.  
(-) I **was not** ready for this.

The adverbs that are usually used in the ‘simple past tense’ sentences are:

- yesterday,
- a week ago,
- ... ago,
- last week, and
- last ...



## Task 18

---

Fill in the blanks with correct verb forms. Compare your answers with your classmate’s sitting next to you. Look at the example.

<b>am</b>	win	take	have	join	are
-----------	-----	------	------	------	-----

### The Football Competition

When I 1) **was** in the Junior High School, I joined two clubs. They 2) \_\_\_\_\_ the Football Club and the Karate Club. I 3) \_\_\_\_\_ those clubs because I love sports, especially football and karate. I 4) \_\_\_\_\_ football on Sunday mornings and karate on Mondays at 4 p.m.

One day my football club joined a football competition. There were eight clubs joining the competition. At first, our club 5) \_\_\_\_\_ the match. Then, we had to defeat one club to get to the final. Remarkably, we won again. After those two matches, we 6) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch in the cafeteria nearby. We were so impatient to play in the last game. It was the hard one because our opponent was very tough. Finally, we won the game with a nice score of 3 – 2. We were very happy and proud.

---



## Task 19

---

**Make a composition about your experience in joining an extracurricular activity in the Junior High School. The following questions may help you develop your composition.**

1. What extracurricular activity did you join?
  2. Did you ever join any competition held by the club or outer club?
    - If so, tell about your experience in the competition.  
(Tell about what you did from the preparation until the end of the competition)
    - If you never did, tell about any interesting experience in the club.  
(Tell about the event from the beginning until the end)
- 



## Task 20

---

**Ask two of your classmates to give you feedback to revise your draft. Put your final draft in the school bulletin.**

---

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 21

---

**Complete the following dialogues with correct expressions. Then, perform them with your partner.**

### Dialogue 1

**Situation: Andi and Denias are in the bookstore. They meet Ayu, a friend of Andi.**

- Andi : Hi, Ayu! 1) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ayu : Hi, I'm fine, thanks. What about you?
- Andi : 2) \_\_\_\_\_. By the way, this is Denias. He is my classmate.
- Ayu : Nice to meet you.
- Denias : 3) \_\_\_\_\_.

Andi : Ayu, I didn't see you at the farewell party. I heard you went to London. Is that true?  
Ayu : Yes, I left for London two days before the farewell party.  
Andi : What did you do there?  
Ayu : Actually, my brother studies there, and last month I had the chance to visit him.  
Andi : Oh, I see. Denias also lived in London for two years when his father studied there.  
Ayu : Really?  
Denias : Yes, that's true. That's when I was still ten years old.  
Andi : Anyway, it's been nice talking to you. I'm afraid I must go now.  
Denias : Well, we still have a lot of things to do this evening.  
Ayu : Okay, I'll call you tonight.  
Andi : That'd be great. You have to tell me more about your holiday. Goodbye.  
Ayu : 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

## Dialogue 2

**Situation: Ayu found an agenda book. She intends to take it to the owner.**

Ayu : Excuse me, is this your agenda book?  
Retno : Oh, yes, thank you. I didn't realize that I left it.  
Ayu : Don't mention it. By the way, are you a new student?  
Retno : Yes, I am. 1) \_\_\_\_\_. I'm from class A.  
Ayu : 2) \_\_\_\_\_. I'm from Class D.  
Retno : Anyway, 3) \_\_\_\_\_, my classmate.  
Ayu : Hi, Arnys. It's nice to meet you.  
Arnys : It's nice to meet you too, Ayu. By the way, do you know Adib? He's from Class D.  
Ayu : Sure. He's the captain of the class.  
Arnys : He was my classmate. He won the National Math Competition last year.  
Ayu : Oh, really? I don't know about that. He never tells us.  
Arnys : Well, he is a modest person.  
Ayu : Yes, you're right. Everybody likes him.



## Task 22

**Read the text and then choose the right statements by circling the letter a, b, c, or d.**

### Swimming

When I was a boy, I liked swimming very much. Each year my two brothers and I spent the holiday with our uncle and aunt in their house by the sea. It was only twenty yards from the water. The water was warm, the sun shone brightly, and most days there were no waves. In the middle of the day a wind always began to blow, but it was not strong and did not make the sea rough.

One day, we put on our swimming-shorts before breakfast. Then, we ran down to the sea across the sand and jumped in. We were in the sea or on the beach until late at night. When our aunt rang a bell, we went back to the house for food, but we ate it in our swimming-shorts and soon went back in the sea again. We were all very good swimmers. We dived through the waves or rode towards the beach on top of them until we were tired and hungry.

Adapted from: L.A. Hill, 1963

1. a. The boys' home was near the sea.  
b. The boys' uncle's home was near the sea.  
c. The boys' uncle's home was a long way from the water.  
d. The boys' home was a long way from the water.
  2. a. There were waves every day.  
b. There were waves on most days.  
c. There were no waves on most days.  
d. There were no waves every day.
  3. a. The boys had breakfast in the house.  
b. The boys did not have breakfast.  
c. The boys had breakfast on the sand.  
d. The boys did not use to have breakfast.
  4. a. The boys put on their swimming-shorts before each meal.  
b. The boys put other clothes on before every meal.  
c. The boys did not do anything to their clothes before meals.  
d. The boys always changed their clothes before meals.
  5. a. The waves rode on top of the boys towards the beach.  
b. The waves carried the boys towards the beach.  
c. The boys rode on top of their brothers towards the beach.  
d. The boys rode on the waves using their board.
- 



### Task 23

---

**Find two recount texts on someone's experience when joining any competition. You may find them on the internet, in magazines, etc. Then, write them down in your notebook.**

---

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 24

---

**Work in groups of two or three. Have a conversation based on the following situations.**

- You meet an old friend at a singing contest.
    - greet him/her
    - ask how he/she is
    - say good bye
  - You are at a students' orientation activity. You do not know anyone there. Try to find someone and have a talk with him/her. Introduce yourself.
-



## Task 25

Write a short paragraph to introduce yourself and tell all of the activities you joined while you were in the Junior High School.

### Music Corner

You can find expressions of saying goodbye in many songs. One of them is entitled **Goodbye** by Spice Girls.

#### Goodbye

Now listen little child, there will come a day  
When you will be able, able to say  
Never mind the pain or the aggravation  
You know there's a better way  
for you and me to be  
  
Look for the rainbow in every storm  
Fly like an angel heaven sent to me  
Goodbye my friend  
(I know you're gone you said you're gone  
but I can still feel you here)  
I's not the end  
(You gotta keep it strong before the pain  
turns into fear)  
So glad we made it  
Time will never change it no no  
Just a little girl, big imagination  
Never letting no one take it away  
Went into the world (into the world)  
What a revelation  
She found there's a better way  
for you and me to be

Look for the rainbow in every storm  
Find out for certain  
Love is gonna be there for you  
You'll always be someone's baby  
You know it's time to say goodbye  
We would play about the way we used to  
Scream and shout never dreamt you'd go  
Your own sweet way  
You know it's time to say goodbye  
And don't forget on me you can rely  
You know it's time to say goodbye  
And don't forget on me you can rely  
I will help, help you on your way  
I will be with you every day

Taken from: <http://www.mp3lyric.com>  
Pictures: <http://www.shynystyle.tv>  
<http://www.img.thesum.co.uk>



## E. Let's Make a Reflection

Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to greet someone, for example:
  - Good morning/afternoon/evening.
  - Hi!
- 2) How to ask how someone is, for example:
  - How are you?
  - How are you doing?
- 3) How to say how you are, for example:
  - I'm fine, thanks.
  - Very well, thanks.
- 4) How to say good bye, for example:
  - Good bye.
  - Bye.
- 5) How to introduce yourself, for example:
  - My name is ...
  - I'm ....
- 6) How to introduce someone, for example:
  - This is ...
  - I'd like to introduce ...

7) Simple Past Tense:

Telling Past Events

(+)	S + V2
(-)	S + did not + V1

Telling Past Conditions

(+)	S + was/were + noun/adjective
(-)	S + was/were not + noun/adjective

8) A recount text is a text that tells us about a part of experience. A recount text has an orientation, a series of events in chronological order, personal remarks on the events, and a reorientation that "rounds off" the sequence of events. In the text, you will find words and phrases used to start, connect a sentence with the next one, and end your composition.

# **I'M SORRY TO HEAR THAT.**





<http://www.worldisround.com>

In your daily life you often want to show your attention or possibly sympathy to others. Do you know how to do them very well?

You love reading and writing, don't you? The texts that you read may include recount texts such as experiences during a funeral and wedding. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

In pairs, study the following occasions. What occasions are they? Can you name them? The words in the box may help you.

- ceremony ['seriməni] (kb) : upacara  
funeral ['fju:nərəl] (kb) : pemakaman  
occasion [ə'keɪʒən] (kb) : acara  
relative ['relətɪv] (kb) : kerabat  
wedding ['wedɪŋ] (kb) : pernikahan



### Task 2

Answer the following questions. Share your answers with your classmates.

1. What family occasions do you usually have or attend?
2. When did you last attend a family occasion?
3. What occasion was it?
4. Can you tell your classmates what you did from the beginning till the end?

## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 3

---

Listen carefully to the dialogue between Denias and Retno. Complete the missing expressions.  
The listening script is in the Appendix.

Denias : Hi, Retno.

Retno : 1) \_\_\_\_\_.

Denias : You were absent for two days. Where were you?

Retno : My family and I went to my uncle's wedding party.

Denias : 2) \_\_\_\_\_. Where was it?

Retno : It was in Surabaya. It took us five hours to get there by bus.

Denias : How was the party?

Retno : It was great, but there was something bad that happened.

Denias : 3) \_\_\_\_? What was that?

Retno : The bride fainted after the party was over.

Denias : Oh, 4) \_\_\_\_\_. Was she sick?

Retno : Actually, she was not. She was just too tired. Fortunately, she soon recovered.

Denias : That's good. Anyway, the bell is ringing. Let's go back to the class.

Retno : Okay.

---



### Task 4

---

Write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false according to the dialogue. Correct the false statements. Look at the example.

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1	Retno will be absent for two days.	F	Retno was absent for two days.
2	Retno plans to go to her cousin's wedding party.		
3	Retno went to Surabaya for five days.		
4	There was an incident after the party.		
5	The bride fainted before the party was over.		
6.	The bride was not sick.		

---



## Task 5

---

**Study and practise the following dialogue between Adib and Ruben. They are talking about Ruben's experience last Christmas. Pay attention to the expressions printed in bold.**

- Adib : Hi, Ruben. What a nice hat!
- Ruben : Oh, hi Adib. Thank you for saying so.
- Adib : Is that new?
- Ruben : No, actually. My grandfather gave me this hat last Christmas.
- Adib : **I see.** Well, I heard you went to Medan last Christmas.
- Ruben : You're right. My family and I spent the holiday with our relatives there.
- Adib : How was it?
- Ruben : It was a nice gathering. We spent three days there. However, there was something annoying in our way home from Medan.
- Adib : What was it?
- Ruben : I lost my wallet.
- Adib : **I'm sorry to hear that.** How did it happen?
- Ruben : I thought I dropped it in the taxi. However, when I called the taxi company, they said they found nothing in the taxi.
- Adib : **How upsetting.**
- Ruben : Moreover, I lost all my identity cards.
- Adib : **That's a pity.**
- 



## Task 6

---

**Study the following expressions.**

In the dialogue in **Task 5** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
• I see.	Showing attention
• I'm sorry to hear that.	Showing sympathy
• How upsetting.	
• That's a pity.	

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
• You're right.	Showing attention
• Right.	
• Nice.	
• Wow ...	
• Really?	
• Is it?	
• I'm terribly/dreadfully sorry about ...	Showing sympathy
• How annoying.	
• You must be very upset/annoyed.	



## Task 7

Respond to the following statements. Look at the example.

1) A boy shows his burnt hand to a girl. She responds: "I'm sorry to hear that."

2) Two girls are comforting each other. One says: "My uncle told us that Grandpa passed away last night." The other responds with an ellipsis (...).

3) A boy says: "It took us almost twelve hours to get there. Normally it's only six hours." The girl responds with an ellipsis (...).

4) A boy and a girl are talking. The boy says: "I met our Biology teacher at my aunt's wedding party." The girl responds with an ellipsis (...).

My niece broke my glasses last holiday.



## Task 8

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Adib and Ruben in Task 5, you find the word 'Christmas'. How do you pronounce it?

**Christmas** ['krɪsməs]

**Note:**

The letter 't' in the word 'Christmas' is silent. Here are some other examples.

bouquet [bu'keɪ]

buffet ['bufer]

castle ['ka:sɪl]

debut ['deɪbju:]

listen ['lɪsən]

often ['ɒfən]



## Task 9

**In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate using expressions of showing attention and sympathy based on the following situations.**

- Your classmate tells you that she tore your gown she borrowed.
- You tell your classmate that there will be no party for your birthday this year.
- Your classmate tells you that her kitten died.
- You tell your classmate that the food in the party last night was not delicious.
- Your classmate tells you that she dropped the birthday cake in her cousin's party last night.
- You tell your classmate that your servant's wife passed away this morning.



## Task 10

---

Listen to the following monologue. Complete the missing words. The listening script is in the Appendix.

### Our Holiday in Greece

Last year, my family and I ... our relatives in Greece. We ... to Athens via Singapore. After two hours of drive from Athens, we ... in Hydra where our relatives live. The interesting thing about Hydra is that no vehicle ... We have to walk to get anywhere. People often get around on horses. After Hydra, we visited Satorini by ferry. Then we ... a high speed catamaran to Mykonos. At least in Mykonos they have taxis and buses so we ... not have to walk to go everywhere. From Mykonos we flew to the island of Skiathos where we ... a lovely week visiting beaches and eating wonderful Greek food. Finally it ... time to go back to Athens and end our trip. After wandering around the old part of the city and taking lots of photos of the Acropolis and other ancient Greek monuments and statues, we ... to get my taxi to the airport.

---



## Task 11

---

Tell your classmates your experience in attending a wedding party and funeral. You may follow the questions below.



#### Questions

1. When did you last attend a funeral?
  2. Can you tell the class about the funeral from the beginning till the end?
  3. When did you last attend a wedding?
  4. Can you tell the class about the wedding from the beginning till the end?
-



## Task 12

What did you do last holiday? In groups of three, tell each other.

## 2. Read and Write



## Task 13

Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text on Torajan funeral and answer the questions.

balcony [ˈbælkəni] (kb)	: balkon
coffin [ˈkɒfɪn] (kb)	: peti mati
corpse [kɔ:pz] (kb)	: jenazah
elaborate [ɪ'læbərət] (ks)	: rumit
kin [kɪn] (kb)	: sanak; famili
slaughter [ˈslɔ:tə] (kkt)	: menyembelih

### My Grandpa's Funeral in Toraja

Last month my family and I went to Toraja to attend Grandpa's funeral. It was my first time to go to such a ceremony. We gathered there with our kin in the ceremony.

Overall, the ceremony was quite elaborate. It took about a week. Several days before the ceremony was done, grandpa's body was kept in a series of houses arranged in a circular row around an open field called *tongkonan*. His corpse was dressed in a fine wearing.



The funeral was performed in two phases. First, we slaughtered the pigs and buffaloes, and then moved the corpse to face north. In this ceremony we wore black clothes. After that, the corpse was placed in a sandal wood coffin. Then, it was brought out of the house and placed on an open platform beneath the granary. Meanwhile, my uncle, my brother, and I prepared the wooden puppet and a funeral tower called *lakian*. The next phase of the ceremony was held in

this place. The coffin is borne from the house and placed in the *lakian*. During the day, there were also buffalo matches. They were great matches. In the night, we were feasting, chanting, and dancing.

On the last day, the grandpa's coffin were lowered from the funeral tower and brought up to the mountain side family graveyard. It was followed by great shouting and excitement from the relatives and the guests. Finally, we installed the wooden puppet on a high balcony where other puppets representing the members of a whole family were already there.

The funeral ceremonies made my family and me tired. However, we were grateful because it ran smoothly.

Adapted from: <http://www.worldisround.com>

### Questions

1. When did the writer attend the funeral?
2. How long did the writer and his family hold the ceremony?
3. What did they do to the corpse before the funeral was done?
4. What did they do after the corpse was placed in a sandal wood coffin?
5. What did they do on the last day of the ceremony?

### Notes:

As explained in Unit 1, a recount text is a text that tells you a part of experience. A recount text has an orientation, a series of events in chronological order, personal remarks on the events and a reorientation that “rounds off” the sequence of events. In the text, you find words and phrases used to start, connect a sentence with the next one, and end your composition. Those words and phrases are:

- First,
  - Then,
  - After that,
  - Finally,
- 



### Task 14

---

#### What do the following words refer to based on the text in Task 13?

1. **We** (paragraph 1, sentence 3) refers to ....
  2. **It** (paragraph 2, sentence 2) refers to ....
  3. **His** (paragraph 2, sentence 4) refers to ....
  4. **It** (paragraph 3, sentence 5) refers to ....
  5. **It** (paragraph 3, sentence 10) refers to ....
-



## Task 15

**Study and pronounce the following words. Then, arrange the jumbled paragraphs into a good text about Anita's experience in attending her cousin's wedding.**

bride [braɪd] (kb)	: pengantin wanita
bridegroom ['braɪdgru:m] (kb)	: pengantin laki – laki
couple ['kʌpl] (kb)	: pasangan
involve [ɪn'vɒlv] (kkt)	: melibatkan
legalize ['lɪ:gəlائز] (kkt)	: mengesahkan
marriage ['mærɪdʒ] (kb)	: pernikahan
reception [ri'sepʃn] (kb)	: resepsi
ritual ['ritjuəl] (kb)	: susunan upacara; ritual
sacred ['seɪkrəd] (ks)	: suci

In the following morning, <i>Ijab</i> Ceremony (religious marriage consecration) was held. I sat right behind the bride. I really didn't want to miss this moment because it is the most important phase in the wedding. After <i>Ijab</i> , there were some Javanese ceremonies following the wedding celebration. They were <i>Panggih</i> , <i>Balangan Suruh</i> , <i>Wiji Dadi</i> , <i>Sindur Binayang</i> , <i>Timbang</i> , <i>Tanem</i> , <i>Tukar Kalpika</i> , <i>Kacar Kucur</i> , <i>Dahar Klimah</i> , <i>Sungkeman</i> and <i>Mertui</i> Ceremony. I was too busy in the reception table so I did not follow all of those ceremonies.	Paragraph ....
The very first ceremony was <i>Siraman</i> (bathing ceremony). <i>Siraman</i> means to take a bath. The <i>Siraman</i> ceremony was organized in the afternoon. I was also involved in preparing the place and the stuffs needed. After the <i>Siraman</i> , the bride was led to the wedding room. She was dressed with a traditional woman's blouse ( <i>kebaya</i> ) and <i>batik</i> clothes. Make-up was put on her by a traditional make-up woman who led the whole ceremony. The bride looked very beautiful.	Paragraph ....
I went back home in the evening by the last train. I went happily because I could attend my cousin's wedding even helped the preparation.	Paragraph ....
Two weeks ago I went to Semarang to attend my cousin's wedding. I was there for four days. I was involved in the preparation of the wedding ceremony. Like other Javanese wedding ceremonies, it has several complicated traditional rituals.	Paragraph ....
The next ceremony was <i>Peningsetan</i> or <i>Srah Srahan</i> (traditional engagement ceremony). The family of the would-be-bridegroom visited the parents and the family of the would-be-bride. They were bringing some gifts. After this ceremony, I helped the women in the backyard. We packed the snacks for the party in the morning.	Paragraph ....

The second ceremony was <i>Midodareni</i> (ceremony on the eve before the wedding). The bride had to stay in the room from 6 p.m. to midnight accompanied by some elder women giving her useful advice. My other cousins and I also visited her for a while.	Paragraph ....
After the wedding rituals, the reception followed. The newly wed couple received blessings and greetings from the guests. The newly wed couple looked very happy although they couldn't hide their tired faces.	Paragraph ....



## Task 16

Study the rule below. Then, complete the dialogues based on the clue. Look at the example.

### Simple Past Tense (?)

The ‘simple past tense’ is used to tell actions or situations in the past. In Unit 1 you learned the ‘simple past tense’ used in positive and negative sentences. In this unit you learn the ‘simple past tense’ in interrogative sentences. Here are the patterns.

#### Actions

(?)	Did + S + V1
-----	--------------

Examples:

- Did you go to her wedding party yesterday?
- Did you wear your new skirt at the party last week?

#### Situations/Conditions

(?)	Was/Were + S + noun/adjective
-----	-------------------------------

Examples:

- Was she angry with you last night?
- Were they classmates in Junior High School?

1. talk/Retno/yesterday

Virga : Did you talk to Retno about the wedding yesterday?  
Arnys : No, I did not.

2. look for/wedding gown/two days ago

Ruben : ...  
Retno : Yes, I did.

3. accompany/Anita/boutique/last week

Adib : ...  
Denias : Yes, I did.

4. sad/funeral/yesterday  
Ayu : ...  
Marcell: No, I wasn't.
5. your parents/happy/birthday party  
Retno : ...  
Ayu : Yes, they were.
6. Adib/join/New Year Party  
Anita : ...  
Ruben : No, he didn't
- 



## Task 17

---

Summarize the text in Task 15. Ask your classmate to proofread your draft.

---

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 18

---

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box.

You're right      I see      I'm sorry to hear that      Hmm ...

- Adib : Ruben, I didn't see you yesterday. Were you absent?
- Ruben : Yes. My aunt passed away. I was attending the funeral.
- Adib : Oh, 1) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ruben : Thanks.
- Adib : May I know the cause of her death?
- Ruben : She got a heart attack. However, nobody knows what made her suddenly get it.
- Adib : 2) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ruben : I think it's just strange for her to get a heart attack without any cause.
- Adib : 3) \_\_\_\_\_. However, you should not think about it any longer. Anyway, how was the funeral?
- Ruben : It ran well. My family and I arrived there at 7 a.m. and went home at 1 p.m. I followed the whole process. I was involved in the funeral.
- Adib : 4) \_\_\_\_\_, I think you're a good nephew. I'm sure she was proud of you.
-



## Task 19

Fill in the missing blanks with the suitable words in the box. Make any changes to the verb forms if necessary.

attend                  buy                  come                  give  
wear                  tell                  lose                  celebrate

1. I couldn't ... my cousin's wedding party because I was at the hospital.
2. I think there were about hundreds of people who ... to his funeral ceremony.
3. Virga ... her cell phone when she was celebrating New Year party with her family in the town square.
4. Retno ... me that Ayu's birthday party cost a lot of money.
5. My sister ... birth to a healthy baby last night.
6. Last year, Marcell ... Christmas Eve with his family in Berlin.
7. Denias ... a nice suit in his parent's wedding anniversary yesterday.
8. Ruben ... a novel at the bookstore as a wedding gift for his brother.



## Task 20

Find two recount texts on someone's experience when attending a wedding and a funeral. You may search on the internet and/ or in magazines for the texts.

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



## Task 21

Complete the following dialogue with the appropriate expressions of showing attention or sympathy.

- 1) Andi : I saw a woman crying sadly at my brother's wedding.  
Denias : ....
- 2) Marcell : My mom was angry with me this morning for something that I didn't do.  
Arnys : ....
- 3) Retno : I visited the National Museum with my brother and my cousins last week.  
Anita : ....
- 4) Ruben : My brother died in a tragic accident five years ago.  
Ayu : ....
- 5) Adib : I went to Bandung yesterday. My sister has a new baby.  
Virga : ....



## Task 22

**Write a text telling your experience in attending any family occasion. Use the following questions to help you develop the text.**

1. What kind of occasion did you attend?
2. Where and when did it happen?
3. Can you tell your classmates what you did from the beginning till the end?
4. How did you feel?



### Cultural Tips

Americans do not have as many customs and taboos concerning gifts as many other cultures have. Gifts from your country will always be appreciated. Good choices are local and regional arts and crafts, books, candies, specialty foods and wine or spirits (if you are certain that the recipient drinks).

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>.

## Music Corner

You can find expressions of showing sympathy in the song entitled *Picnic By The Motorway* by Suede.

### ***Picnic By The Motorway***

I'm so sorry to hear about the news  
Don't you worry  
I'll buy us a bottle and we'll drink in the petrol fumes  
I'm so sorry to hear about your world  
Don't you worry  
There's a gap in the fence down by the nature preserve



Hey, such a lovely day, such a lovely day  
Such fun, looking at the lovers in a lay-by with my little one

I'm sorry to hear the news today  
Don't you worry  
There's been a speeding disaster so we'll go  
I'm so sorry to hear about the scene  
Don't you worry

Just put on your trainers and get out of it with me  
Hey, such a lovely day, such a lovely day  
Such fun, looking at the lovers in a lay-by with my little one  
Hey, such a lovely day, such a lovely day

Such fun, looking at the lorries in the litter with my lovely one  
We could go dancing, we could go walking  
We could go shopping, we could keep talking  
We could go drinking, we could sit thinking  
We could go speeding, or we could go dreaming, see?  
Oh hey ...



Taken from: <http://www.elyrics.net>  
Pictures : <http://www.rockbackpages.com>

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made in after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to show attention, for example:
  - I see.
  - Really?
  - Right.
  - Hmm ...
- 2) How to show sympathy, for example:
  - I'm (very) sorry to hear ....
  - How upsetting/annoying.
  - That's a pity.
- 3) Simple Past Tense (?)  
The simple past tense is used to tell actions or situations in the past. In interrogative sentences, here are the patterns:
  - Actions  
    (?) Did + S + V1
  - Situations or Conditions  
    (?) Was/Were + S + noun + adjective
- 4) Recount texts  
Recount texts tell a series of events and evaluate their significance in some way.

# **THAT SOUNDS A NICE IDEA!**





<http://h1.ripway.com>

In your daily life you often have to respond to many kinds of invitations. You may need to accept or decline them. Do you know how to do them very well?

Do you often read procedural texts? The texts that you read may include recipes of Indonesian food. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

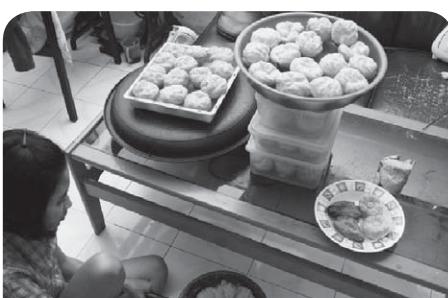
## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

---

In pairs, study the following pictures. What are the people doing?



### Task 2

---

Answer the following questions. Share your answers with your partners.

1. Can you cook?
  2. What is your favourite Indonesian food?
  3. Have you ever cooked for yourself or your family? Can you tell the class the steps?
  4. Have you ever invited your friends to taste your cooking? What did you say to invite them?
  5. What did they think about your cooking?
-

## B.Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



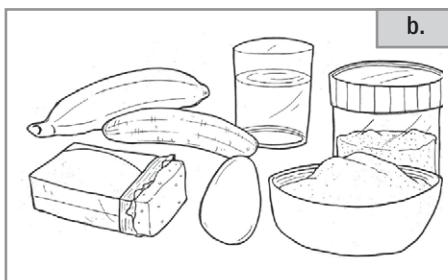
### Task 3

Listen to the steps of preparing fried banana with cheese. Number the pictures according to the steps. Some pictures are already numbered. First, study the words in the box. The listening script is in the Appendix.

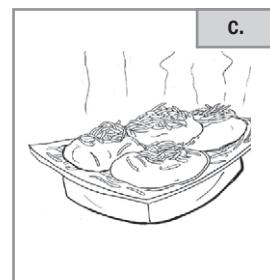
absorbent [əb'zɔ:bənt] (ks)	:	menyerap
cheese [tʃi:z] (kb)	:	keju
drain [dreɪn] (kkt)	:	meniriskan
flour ['flaʊə] (kb)	:	tepung
fry [fraɪ] (kkt)	:	menggoreng
mash [mæʃ] (kkt)	:	melekehkan
mix [mɪks] (kkt)	:	mencampur
recipe ['resipi] (kb)	:	resep



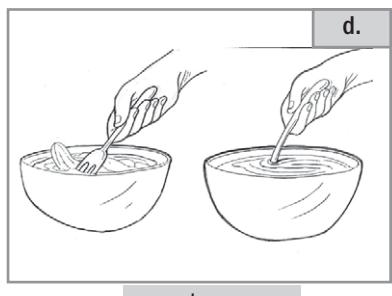
step ...



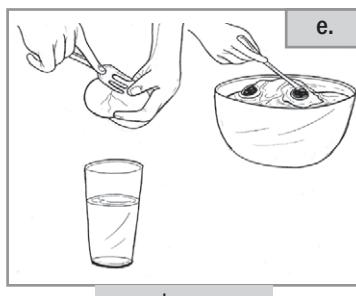
step 1



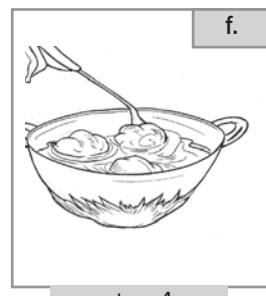
step ...



step ...



step ...



step 4



## Task 4

---

Listen carefully to the dialogue between Ayu and Retno. They plan to practise making fried rice. Then, read the statements. Write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false. Correct the false statements. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	Ayu asks Retno to make her fried rice.	F	Ayu asks Retno to help her make fried rice.
2.	Ayu and Retno are going to make fried rice at Ayu's house.		
3.	Retno refuses to help Ayu because she cannot cook.		
4.	Ayu does not want to tell Retno about the recipe before cooking.		
5.	Retno thinks that making fried rice might be simple.		
6.	They cancel their plan to make fried rice because it sounds easy.		
7.	Ayu will fetch Retno.		

---



## Task 5

---

In pairs, study the following expressions.

In **Task 4** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
That sounds a nice idea.	Accepting an offer/invitation
No, thank you.	Declining an offer/invitation

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>First, prepare the spices, eggs, and cooked rice.</li> <li>Then, cut some onions into very thin pieces.</li> <li>After that, add the egg and scramble them together.</li> <li>Finally, fry them together with the cooked rice until they are well mixed.</li> </ul>	Giving instructions

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
• Thank you. I'd like to.	Accepting an offer/invitation
• I would, very much.	
• That would be very nice.	
• With pleasure.	
• Thank you very much, but ...	Declining an offer/invitation
• I'm not sure I can.	
• I'd like to, but ...	
• That's very kind of you, but ...	
• First, <b>prepare</b> the avocado, some ice cubes, coconut water, and coconut shavings	Giving instructions (The words in bold are used to show actions.)
• Then, <b>cut</b> the avocado into small pieces	
• <b>Put</b> the ice cubes, the coconut water and coconut shavings into the glass	
• After that, <b>put</b> the avocado that is already cut	
• Finally, <b>put</b> the condensed milk on the top of the avocado	



### Cultural Tips

In America, if you are invited to someone's home for dinner or a party, bring flowers, a potted plant, a fruit basket, candy, wine, a book or a small household gift.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## Task 6

---

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Ayu and Retno in **Task 4** you find the word 'cook'. How do you pronounce it?

cook [kuk]

**Note:**

The vowel letter 'o' is pronounced 'oo' when spelt 'oo'. Here are some other examples.

book [buk]

good [gud]

look [luk]

foot [fut]

took [tuk]



## Task 7

---

**Study and practise the following conversation. Then, underline the expressions of accepting/declining an offer/invitation.**

Anita : You look so happy today, Adib.

Ruben : Is there something we don't know?

Adib : Yes, my brother has finished his study in Australia and he'll be home tonight.

Anita : Really?

Adib : Yeah, tonight we're going to have a small welcome party. Would you like to come?

Ruben : I would.

Adib : What about you, Anita?

Anita : I'd like to, but tonight I will have to take care of my little brother and my little sister. My parents will attend their friend's wedding party.

Adib : I see. It's okay. Well, I think I have to go now. See you.

Ruben

& Anita : See you



## Task 8

---

**Study the rule below.**

In the dialogue in **Task 7**, you find an expression:

"Tonight **we're going to have** a small welcome party."

We use **going to (do)** when we say that we have already decided to do; what we intend to do in the future.

For example:

A : Have you made the ginger coffee yet?

B : No, but **I'm going to make** it.



## Task 9

---

**Complete the following dialogues using expressions of accepting/declining an offer/invitation. Look at the example.**

- 1) Arnys : Would you have a glass of *Es Palubutung*?  
Marcell: (accept) That would be very nice.
  - 2) Adib : Shall we have lunch at *Padang Resto*?  
Anita : (decline) ....
  - 3) Anita : Won't you have more *Satay*?  
Virga : (decline) ....
  - 4) Andi : Would you like to have dinner with me tonight?  
Retno : (accept) ....
  - 5) Ayu : Will you have something to drink?  
Ruben : (accept) ....
  - 6) Marcell: Would you like to join me for a coffee?  
Andi : (decline) ....
- 



## Task 10

---

**Have a short dialogue with your classmate with the following situations. Use expressions of accepting/declining an offer/invitation. Look at dialogues in Task 9 as examples.**

- offering your friend the food you cooked by yourself
  - inviting your classmate to dinner at your house
  - asking your classmate to help you practise cooking your favourite Indonesian food
- 



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 11

---

**Read the following invitation letters. Then, choose the right statements by giving a tick (✓). Compare your work with a classmate's.**



You are invited to join us for  
Ruben's 16th birthday party!  
Saturday, 2 August 2008  
7 p.m. – closing time  
Ruben's house, Ahmad Yani street No. 27

(1)

Food, drink, games, and entertainment will be provided.  
Be there to celebrate this momentous occasion!  
RSVP to Ruben at (024) 424 444

Mr & Mrs Priyana would like you to come to dinner to celebrate their 25th wedding anniversary.

Date : Monday, 4 August 2008

Time : 8 p.m. – 10 p.m.

Place : Nusa Wungu Restaurant,  
Pierre Tendean street No. 5

We are looking forward to meeting you.

RSVP to Mr Priyana at (0274) 749 999

Dress code: Back to 70's

(2)



We're having a barbecue party!  
Please come and join in on all the fun.

(3)

Sunday, 3 August 2008, at 3 o 'clock  
Diponegoro street No. 18

Mr Smith and the family

RSVP to Mr Smith at (031) 332 432

#### Note:

The followings are some tips on how to write invitation letters:

- state the occasion, date, time, and place;
- include addresses and a map if necessary;
- include a telephone number for RSVPs;
- if there is a dress code, state the preferred dress in the lower left-hand corner of the card; and
- express that you are looking forward to seeing the person.

RSVP ['a: es vi: 'pi:] is the abbreviation for the French phrase répondez s'il vous plaît, meaning 'please answer' letters printed on an invitation asking the person invited to reply.

#### Tick the correct statements.

1.  Ruben is turning 16 on 2 August 2008.  
 Ruben's birthday is on 16 August 2008.  
 Ruben is invited to join a birthday party.
2.  Ruben's birthday party starts at 16 o 'clock.  
 Ruben's birthday party starts at 2 o 'clock.  
 Ruben's birthday party starts at 7 o 'clock.
3.  Mr & Mrs Smith are celebrating their 25<sup>th</sup> wedding anniversary.  
 Mr Smith is having dinner at Nusa Wungu Restaurant with his family.  
 Mr Smith is holding a barbecue party.
4.  Mr Smith is celebrating his birthday on 2 August 2008.  
 Mr Smith is having a barbecue party on 3 August 2008.  
 Mr Smith is invited to a barbecue party 4 August 2008.
5.  Mr & Mrs Priyana are celebrating their wedding anniversary at the restaurant.  
 Mr & Mrs Priyana are holding a barbecue party at Nusa Wungu Restaurant.  
 Mr & Mrs Priyana are holding a wedding anniversary party at Diponegoro street No. 5.



## Task 12

Study the following pictures. Label each with its name. Consult your dictionary if necessary. Look at the example.

garlic

bay leaf

onion

galangal

lemon grass

candlenut

tamarind

lime leaf

coriander seed

chilli

garlic

1.



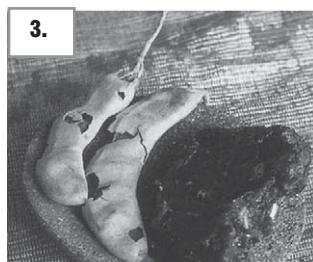
garlic

2.



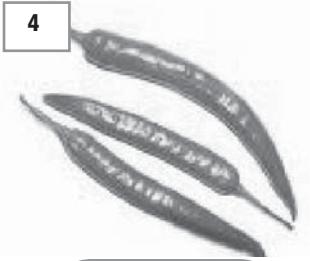
...

3.



...

4.



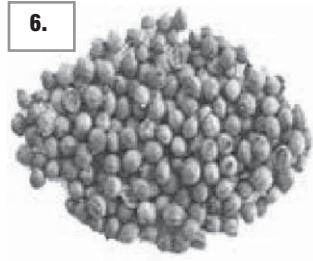
...

5.



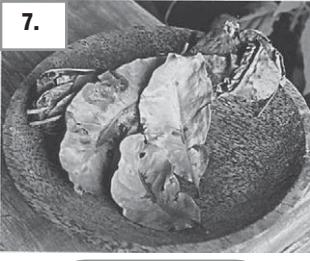
...

6.



...

7.



...

8.



...

9.



10.



...

Pictures: <http://images.google.co.id>



## Task 13

Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text and answer the questions.

bay leaf [beɪ li:f] (kb)	: daun salam
boil [bɔɪl] (kkt)	: didihkan
candlenut ['kændlɪnʌt] (kb)	: kemiri
clove [kləʊv] (kb)	: butir; siung
coriander seed [kɔri'ændə si:d] (kb)	: ketumbar
galangal ['glangeɪl] (kb)	: laos
garlic ['ga:lɪk] (kb)	: bawang putih
green jack fruit [gri:n dʒæk fru:t] (kb)	: nangka muda
pour [pɔ:] (kkt)	: tuang
onion ['ʌnjən] (kb)	: bawang merah
sauté ['səutɛ] (kkt/kki)	: tumis
shrimp cracker [ʃ्रimp 'krækə] (kb)	: kerupuk udang
shrimp paste [ʃ्रimp peɪst] (kkt)	: terasi udang
simmer ['sɪmə] (kkt)	: didihkan (dengan api kecil)
stir [stɔ:] (kkt)	: aduk
tamarind [tæmərɪnd] (kb)	: asam
tender ['tendə] (ks)	: lunak

### Gudeg Jogja (Green Jack Fruit Sweet Stew)

#### Ingredients:

- 5 onions
- 10 candlenuts
- 10 garlic cloves
- 4 bay Leaves
- 1/2 lb. (250g) green jack fruit
- 2-1/2 tsp. (12g) coriander seeds
- 1-1/4 tsp. (6g) cumin
- 1/4 cup (62ml) coconut sugar
- 2 cups (500ml) coconut milk
- 2 tsp. (30g) tamarind
- 2 lb. (1kg) chicken (cut into small pieces with bone)
- 5 cups (1.25l) water
- 2 inches bruised galangal



<http://h1.ripway.com>

**Instructions:**

- First, cut green jack fruit 1 inch thick. Wash and boil until tender.
- Next, ground onions, candle nuts, sauté paste, bay leaves, and galangal until fragrant.
- Add the chicken pieces, stir fry until chicken changes colour.
- Then, pour 4 cups of water and coconut sugar, bring to a boil.
- Add the green jack fruit and simmer until the chicken and vegetables are tender.
- Finally, add coconut milk 5 minutes before it's done, bring back to a boil. Serve hot with rice.

This dish is sweet and usually served with shrimp cracker.

Adapted from: <http://original-indonesian-recipe.blogspot.com>

**Notes:**

tbs	: tablespoon	lb	: pound
tsp	: teaspoon	oz	: ounce
kg	: kilogram	l	: litre
g	: gram	ml	: millilitre

**Questions**

1. What does the text tell you?
2. What ingredients do you need?
3. What equipment do you need?
4. What are the steps to cook it?
5. How do you serve it?

**Task 14****Study the following notes.**

The text in **Task 13** is a procedural text telling you how to do something. It usually includes:

- the goal of the activity;
- any materials needed to achieve the goal; and
- steps to accomplish the goal.

The grammatical features of this procedural text include:

- the use of commands, e.g. 'cut', 'add', 'pour';
- the use of action verbs, e.g. 'wash', 'boil';
- the use of precise vocabulary, e.g. 'fry', 'boil', 'fragrant'; and
- the use of adverbials to express details of time and place, manner and so on, e.g. '1 inch thick', 'until fragrant', 'until the chicken changes colour'.



## Task 15

Fill in the blanks with the suitable words in the box. Compare your work with a classmate's. Look at the example.

<b>first</b>	cook	cut	oil
then	finally	absorbed	stir

### Satay Ayam Madura (Madura Chicken Satay)



#### Ingredients:

- 2 chicken breasts, each 360 g
- 3 tbs vegetable oil
- 1 small onion, peeled and finely chopped
- 1 garlic clove, peeled and finely chopped
- 2 candle nuts, grated
- 2 tbs coconut, desiccated
- 1 tbs coriander
- 1 tbs sambal
- ½ tbs lemon grass, ground
- 1 pea-size dried shrimp paste, softened with 2 tbs water
- 1 tbs brown sugar
- bamboo or metal skewers

#### Instructions:

- First, skin the chicken breasts, if desired, and \_\_\_\_\_ into bite-size cubes and set aside.
- \_\_\_\_\_, heat \_\_\_\_\_ in a saucepan and add all remaining ingredients. \_\_\_\_\_ well and heat through before removing from heat.
- After that, add the chicken cubes to cooked mixture and leave for at least 1 hour to allow strong aromatic spices to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_, skewer marinated meat and \_\_\_\_\_ until well done over charcoal heat. Serve.

Adapted from: <http://www.indolists.com>  
Picture: <http://warunglele.com>



## Task 16

In pairs, match the words in Column A with the synonyms in Column B. Consult your dictionary if necessary. Look at the example.

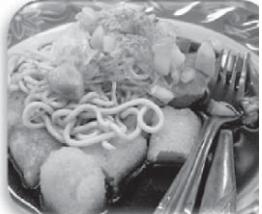
A	B
desiccate	cut
chop	separate
fry	dry
boil	shred
peel	skin
strain	sautē
grate	simmer
steep	soak



## Task 17

To which picture do the steps belong? Look at the example. You may work in pairs.

No.	Pictures		Steps
1.	 Coto Makassar		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Boil one egg and slice it.</li><li>• Boil young cabbage, long beans, and slice them.</li></ul>
2.	 Risoles		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Cut beef into big chunks.</li><li>• Ground onions, garlic, coriander seeds, roasted peanuts, and Holland red pepper to a fine paste.</li></ul>

3.	 <p>Pempek</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Put some dough into your hand and put half boiled egg inside, then boil in water until floating.</li> <li>Drain all the water, deep fry it and add some of the soup.</li> </ul>
4.	 <p>Klepon</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cut beef into big chunks.</li> <li>Ground onions, garlic, coriander seeds, roasted peanuts, and Holland red pepper to a fine paste.</li> </ul>
5.	 <p>Iced Tamarind</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mix 1/2 of the egg with flour and butter.</li> <li>Form thin layer of squares - for wrappers.</li> </ul>
6.	 <p>Gado-gado</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mix 1/2 of the egg with flour and butter.</li> <li>Form thin layer of squares - for wrappers.</li> </ul>

Pictures:

- <http://www.rabbasa.or.id>
- <http://k53.pbase.com>
- <http://farm1.static.flickr.com>
- <http://images.egullet.com>
- <http://bp2.blogspot.com>
- <http://onokinegrindz.typepad.com>

## C. Let's Do More



### Task 18

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box. Then, act the dialogue out.

I'm not sure I can.  
Thank you. I'd like to.  
Would you come?  
Would you like to try it?

- Andi : Den, do you know klepon?  
Denias : No, I don't. What's that?  
Andi : It's a kind of dessert made of flours with brown sugar inside. It is sprinkled with shred coconut. The shape of klepon is like a ball. 1) \_\_\_\_\_. My mother made klepon this afternoon.  
Denias : 2) \_\_\_\_\_.  
Andi : Well, I'll get some for you.  
Denias : Okay.  
Andi : Here you are. Just try it.  
Denias : Hmm ..., it's delicious. Your mum is a good cook.  
Andi : Yes, she is. By the way, tomorrow we're going to have a graduation party for my sister. 3) \_\_\_\_\_.  
Denias : 4) \_\_\_\_\_. Tomorrow I'm going to join a karate competition. I don't know what time it ends.  
Andi : That's okay. Anyway, won't you have more klepon?  
Denias : Yes, thank you.



### Task 19

Read the following text and make the recipe of **Ginger Coconut Coffee**. Compare your recipe with your classmates'.

#### The Sweet Ginger Coconut Coffee (**Bajigur**)

This afternoon I went to my aunt's house. She was making a Ginger Coconut Coffee. I have never drunk this kind of beverage before. I helped her make it. It wasn't difficult to make it. I'll tell you the recipe. First, you have to prepare the ingredients. What you need are 1 inch fresh ginger, sliced thinly, 1/2 tsp. grated fresh nutmeg, 1 stick cinnamon, 2 cloves, 1 inch lemon grass, minced, 4 tbs. Coffee, powdered, 1 cup coconut milk, 2 tbs. palm sugar, 1/2 tsp. salt, 4 tbs young coconut flesh. When those ingredients are already in front of you, you have to heat the

ginger, nutmeg, cinnamon, cloves and lemon grass in 3 cup water. Then, simmer lightly for 10 minutes. After that, turn off the heat, add the ground coffee and allow steeping for a few minutes. Strain the solids from this liquid and add the coconut milk, palm sugar and salt. Simmer gently for 2 minutes. Finally, add the coconut flesh and a sprinkle of nutmeg on top. Well, that's all and you'll have your sweet Ginger Coconut Coffee!



Adapted from:<http://indonesian-street-foods.blogspot.com>

**Ingredients:**

**Instructions:**



## Task 20

Find two Indonesian food recipes. Then, write them down in the boxes.

A large, empty rectangular box with a decorative border consisting of small, repeating diamond shapes. This box is provided for the student to write down two Indonesian food recipes.



### **By the Way...**

Nutmeg is extremely poisonous if injected intravenously.

---

### **D. Let's Check Your Competence**



#### **Task 21**

**Have a dialogue with your classmate in the situations below. Include expressions of accepting/ declining an offer/invitation.**

- You and your classmate are doing a pair work at your house. Your friend seems very thirsty.
  - You are going to have a birthday party next Sunday.
  - Your classmate wants to practise making “pempek”. She needs your help.
  - You need a friend to accompany you to have lunch at the cafeteria.
- 



#### **Task 22**

**Find your favourite Indonesian food recipe. Give the instructions orally on how to cook it. Use the action verbs in giving instructions.**

---

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

1) How to accept an offer/invitation, for example:

- Thank you. I'd like to.
- That would be very nice.
- That sounds a nice idea.

2) How to decline an offer/invitation, for example:

- No, thank you.
- I'd like to, but ...
- That's very kind of you, but ...

3) How to give instructions

The words in bold are used to show actions, for example:

- First, prepare the avocado, some ice cubes, coconut water, and coconut shavings.
- Then, cut the avocado into small pieces.
- Put the ice cubes, the coconut water, and coconut shavings into the glass.
- After that, put the avocado that is already cut.
- Finally, put the condensed milk on the top of the avocado.

4) Procedural texts tell how to do something. It is usually organized to include:

- the goal of the activity;
- any materials needed to achieve the goal;
- steps to accomplish the goal.

The grammatical patterns of this procedural text include:

- the use of commands, e.g. 'cut', 'add', 'pour';
- the use of action verbs, e.g. 'wash', 'boil';
- the use of precise vocabulary, e.g. 'fry', 'boil', 'fragrant';
- the use of adverbials to express details of time and place, manner and so on, e.g. '1 inch thick', 'until fragrant', 'until chicken changes colour'.

5) Going to (do)

We use going to (do) when we have already decided to do, what we intend to do in the future.

# I'M DELIGHTED TO HEAR THAT.





<http://www.e-hon.jp>.

I believe that you often feel happy and want to share your happiness with others. Do you know how to express it? Sometimes you also have to thank others for what they give to you and have to respond if someone thanks you. Do you know how to do them very well?

You must read a lot of texts everyday. The texts that you read may include narrative texts on Indonesian tales. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through fun tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready

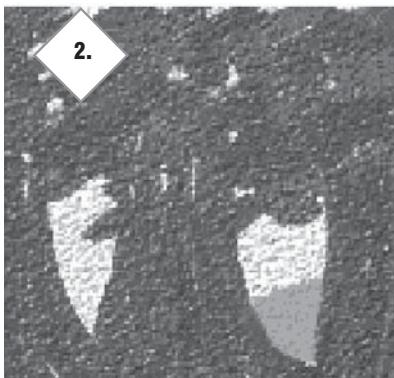


### Task 1

Study the following pictures. Discuss them with your classmate to name the characters and then match them with their origins. Look at the example.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.

- |                   |                                  |                                       |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Nyi Roro Kidul | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Bali                                  |
| 2. .....          | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Java |
| 3. .....          | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/> Central Java    |
| 4. .....          | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/> West Java       |
| 5. .....          | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/> Central Java    |

Pictures: 1. <http://www.moblog.com.sg> 2. <http://esorang.cafe24.com> 3. <http://www.saritaku.com>  
4. <http://www.st.rim.or.jp> 5. <http://www.e-hon.jp>



## Task 2

---

In small groups, answer the following questions.

1. What is the difference among a folktale, myth, and legend?
  2. How many Indonesian folktales have you ever heard? Mention them. What is your favourite one?
  3. What do you think of legends and myths? Do you believe in those stories?
  4. Among the characters in Task 1, who do you think the most interesting?
- 



## Task 3

---

In pairs, study the following expressions. What do they mean?



## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 4

---

**Study the following words and repeat after your teacher. Then, listen to the dialogue carefully and answer the questions. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

- delighted [dr'laitid] (ks) : gembira  
marvellous ['ma:vələs] (ks) : bagus sekali  
mystical ['mɪstɪkl] (ks) : gaib; mistik  
performance [pə'fɔ:məns] (kb): pertunjukan pergelaran  
pleased [pli:zd] (ks) : senang

**Situation: Virga and Ayu are talking about the roles in the school drama they get.**

#### Questions

1. To whom did the role of Ratna Manggali go?
  2. How did Ayu feel after she knew that she got the role of Ratna Manggali? What did she say?
  3. Who got the role of Calon Arang?
  4. What would Virga do to improve her acting?
  5. What would Ayu do to help Virga improve her acting?
- 



### Task 5

---

**In pairs, study the following expressions.**

In the dialogue in **Task 4** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• I'm delighted to hear that.</li><li>• Great!</li></ul>	Saying you are pleased
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Thank you.</li><li>• Thank you very much for your kindness.</li></ul>	Thanking
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Don't mention it.</li></ul>	Responding to thanks

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• I'm very pleased with...</li><li>• It's marvellous!</li><li>• Thank goodness!</li><li>• Thank God for...</li><li>• I'm very glad about ...</li><li>• Fantastic!</li></ul>	Saying you are pleased
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Thank you very much (for...)</li><li>• Thanks.</li><li>• Thanks a lot for...</li><li>• Many thanks.</li></ul>	Thanking
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You're welcome.</li><li>• Not at all.</li><li>• My pleasure.</li><li>• That's OK.</li><li>• That's all right.</li><li>• Any time.</li></ul>	Responding to thanks



## Task 6

**Listen to the following dialogues carefully. Write down the missing expressions. Then, perform the dialogues with your classmate. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

- 1) Andi : Mr Joe likes the story and lets us use it in the next play.  
Denias : .....
- 2) Arnys : .....  
Retno : Any time.
- 3) Virga : .....  
Marcell : Don't mention it.
- 4) Ruben : Thank you very much for lending me your story book.  
Ayu : .....
- 5) Adib : You got A for your writing assignment.  
Anita : .....



## Task 7

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Virga and Ayu in **Task 4** you find the word 'hear'. How do you pronounce it?

hear [hɪə]

**Note:**

The letter 'r' is usually pronounced silent when taking a final position. Here are some other examples.

car [kɑ:]

hair [heə]

door [dɔ:]

year [jə:]

fear ['fɪə]



## Task 8

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box. Then, perform it with your classmate.

Thank you.  
Wow, fantastic!  
My pleasure.

Anita : Hey, Andi could you help me bring these books to Denias's class?

Andi : Yes, sure.

Anita : 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Andi : Any time.

Anita : By the way, have you heard the latest news about our school?

Andi : No, I haven't. What's that?

Anita : We won the first prize in the Drama Competition held by the local government.

Andi : 2) \_\_\_\_\_ I never know we have a good drama club.

Anita : Well, you have to change your perspective. Anyway, thanks for helping me.

Andi : 3) \_\_\_\_\_

Anita : So, let's go to the cafeteria. Let me buy you a drink.

Andi : Really? Thank you so much.



## Task 9

In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate in the following situations.

- Your classmate told you that you passed the test to enter the Drama Club.
- Your classmate told you that she will direct the drama performance next week.
- Your classmate helped you prepare the costume for last night's performance.
- Your classmate gave you a beautiful flower bouquet after you performed in the school drama.



## Task 10

---

Listen carefully to the following story of The Origin of Kesada Ceremony to complete the missing words.

Brawijaya, the king of Majapahit, ... a beautiful daughter named Roro Anteng. Later she got ... to a priest named Joko Seger. Because of an unfortunate situation, they were ... to leave the kingdom. They ... an area in the mountain named Tengger.

They were unhappy because they did not have a child. They ... the peak of the mountain and ... to the gods. Betara Bromo ... them many children with one condition: they would have to sacrifice their youngest child. They finally had twenty-five children. However, they ... their promise to sacrifice the youngest, Kesuma. Suddenly, an eruption ... and Kesuma fell into the crater. His voice was ... saying, "I have to be sacrificed so that you will all live. From now on you should arrange an annual ceremony on the 14th of Kesodo."

Kesuma's brothers and sisters ... the offering ceremony every year by offering fruits, vegetables, rice and meats. This ceremony is still held today as a Kesada ceremony.

Adapted from: <http://www.st.rim.or.jp>



## Task 11

---

Study the rule below.

**In the story of The Origin of Kesada Ceremony in Task 10 you find the following sentences:**

**"This ceremony **is** still held today as a Kesada Ceremony."**

**"They **were** forced to leave the kingdom."**

**Those two sentences are called Passive. The first sentence is the passive form of the present simple and the second sentence is the passive form of the past simple.**

**Present simple                  am/is/are + V3**

**Active : Somebody **holds** a ceremony.**

**Passive : A ceremony **is held** by somebody.**

**Other examples:**

**Some traditional celebrations **are still** celebrated by villagers.**

**Many legends **are told** by old people.**

**Past simple                  was/were + V3**

**Active : The King of Majapahit **built** the castle.**

**Passive : The castle **was built** by the King of Majapahit.**

**Other examples:**

**The village **was destroyed** by a great disaster.**

**The boat **was kicked** by Sangkuriang.**



## Task 12

Ask five of your classmates about their favourite legends and the reasons why. Write down their answers in the table.

No.	Name	Favourite Legends	Reasons
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			



### Cultural Tips

“Please” and “thank you” are very important in America. Say “please” and “thank you” to everyone for even the smallest kindness. Americans say them regardless of rank or how much they are paying for something, and they expect others to do the same.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 13

Read the following announcement. Then, choose the right statement by giving a tick (✓).

#### ANNOUNCEMENT

The school drama club is going to organize the “Sangkuriang” casts audition.

For those who are interested to join the audition, please come to our office on Monday, 4 August, at 2 p.m. to register.

The followings are the requirements:

- your latest photograph of postcard size (2)                    - the registration form (get it in the office)

The audition will be held on Sunday, 10 August, at 9 a.m. The list of the selected candidates will be announced in a week.

We do appreciate your participation. Thank you.

The Committee

p.s.: no charge for the registration form

**Tick the correct statements.**

1.  The school drama club is holding a drama competition.  
 The school drama club is holding an audition for recruiting new members.  
 The school drama club is holding a selection for casts in a drama.
  
2.  The audition will be held on 17 August.  
 The audition will be held on 10 August.  
 The audition will be held on 4 August.
  
3.  The audition will be held at 2 p.m.  
 The audition will be held at 9 p.m.  
 The audition will be held at 9 a.m.
  
4.  The list of the selected candidates will be announced a week after 4 August.  
 The list of the selected candidates will be announced a week after 10 August.  
 The list of the selected candidates will be announced a week after 17 August.
  
5.  To register, they should buy the registration form at the drama club office.  
 To register, they can get the registration form for free at the drama club office.  
 To register, they do not need to fill in the registration form.

**Note:**

The followings are some useful tips in writing an announcement:

- write your announcement to be straightforward and concise so the reader can get the information quickly and be able to refer to it easily;
- if making a positive announcement, keep it short, inviting, and to the point;
- demonstrate your desire to maintain a personal or business relationship, and to build morale, confidence, loyalty, goodwill;
- if announcing or recognizing the achievements of others, you can, if you write correctly, motivate others to achieve the same objectives.
- make the information in your announcement clear and complete, so you are not bombarded with questions later; and
- if you are announcing bad news, make a direct, no-nonsense statement. Temper the announcement with understanding and optimism. Your tone should be considerate and respectful.



## Task 14

---

**Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text entitled *Kyal Jegod* and answer the questions.**

black magician [blæk mæ'dʒɪʃn] (kb)	:	dukun jahat
cattle ['kætl] (kb)	:	ternak
itch [ɪtʃ] (kb)	:	gatal
lumberjack ['lʌmbədʒæk] (kb)	:	penebang pohon

massive ['mæsɪv] (ks)	:	raksasa
meditate ['medɪteɪt] (kki)	:	bersemedi
miracle ['mɪrəkl] (kb)	:	keajaiban
noble ['nəʊbl] (ks)	:	mulia
palace ['pæləs] (kb)	:	istana
pole [pəʊl] (kb)	:	tiang
pond [pɒnd] (kb)	:	kolam
rumour ['ru:mə] (kb)	:	rumor
scabies ['skeɪbi:z] (kb)	:	kudis
stinky [stɪŋkɪ] (ks)	:	bau tidak enak (busuk)
ulcer ['ʌlsə] (kb)	:	bisul

## Kyai Jegod



Once upon a time there was a king who ruled Mataram Kingdom. His name is Amangkurat IV. He was the grandfather of Sultan. He often meditated in a nearby forest, called Garjitarwati.

One day, when a gardener was gathering grass for his cattle in the forest, he looked for some water because it was so hot. He found a

small pond and when he was going to drink some water from it, a dragon came out of the under-water, but it was so friendly to him. The dragon said that if Sultan wanted to build his palace, it was supposed to be located in that forest. Then it disappeared.

Then Sultan started to build the palace in that forest. He demanded strong and old woods and the forest where those woods lied was said to be home of genies and spirits. His lumberjacks could not find anything to eat and the only thing they could have were some rice and water for three days, or sometimes they could not have anything.

Then Sultan ordered that the main pole in the palace's hall had to be built from special wood, which would give strong impression. One night, a servant who was sleeping in the forest heard loud and deep voice. The voice introduced itself as Kyai Jegod. The servant saw that Kyai Jegod was an old, tall, and massive tree. He said that he would voluntarily let himself be cut to make the main pole so that he could stay inside it forever.

The servant told it to Sultan and Sultan let Kyai Jegod stay inside it forever, while Kyai Jegod became the protector of that palace since then.

Adapted from: <http://www.st.rim.or.jp>

### Questions

1. Who is Sultan?
2. What happened to the gardener in the forest?
3. What kind of woods that Sultan wanted to build his palace with?
4. Who is Kyai Jegod? What does it look like?
5. What did Kyai Jegod say to the servant?
6. What has Kyai Jegod done till today?



## Task 15

---

**Study the following notes.**

The text in Task 14 is a narrative text that entertains and instructs the readers. It entertains because it deals with the unusual and unexpected development of events. It instructs because it teaches readers that problems should be confronted, and attempts made to resolve them. The text incorporates patterns of behaviour that are generally highly valued.

The text is organized to include:

- a stage that introduces the main character/s in a setting of time and place;
- a sequence of events, which may begin in a usual pattern, is changed in some way so that the pattern of events becomes a problem for one or more of the characters. The events are evaluated by the character/s, thus making it clear to the reader that a crisis has developed;
- the problem is resolved or attempted to be resolved; and
- a stage which makes explicit how the character has changed and what has been learned from the experience.

The grammatical features include:

- use of particular nouns to refer or to describe the particular people, animals and things that the story is about;
  - use of adjectives to build noun groups to describe the people, animals or things in the story;
  - use of time connectives and conjunctions to sequence events through time;
  - use of adverbs and adverbial phrases to locate the particular events;
  - use of past tense action verbs to indicate the actions; and
  - use of saying and thinking verbs to indicate what characters are feeling, thinking or saying.
- 



## Task 16

---

**Rearrange the jumbled paragraphs of the story entitled *Nyi Roro Kidul* into a good text by numbering the paragraphs. Look at the example.**

Once upon a time, there was a beautiful princess named Kadita. Because of her beauty she was called Dewi Srengenge. It means The Beautiful Sun. Her father was King Munding Wangi. Although he had a beautiful daughter, he was unhappy. It is because he always expected to have a son.

paragraph 1

The poor princess went alone. She did not know where to go. She almost could not cry anymore. But, she had a noble heart. She did not have any bad feeling about her step mother. She always prayed to God. She walked for almost seven days and seven nights. Then, she came to the South Ocean. The ocean was so clean and clear. She jumped into the water and swam.	paragraph ....
Dewi Mutiara called a black magician to curse Kadita. She wanted Kadita's beautiful body full of scabies and itch. The black magician did the order. In the night, Kadita's body was full of scabies and itch. When she woke up, she found her body full of ulcer. It also smelled stinky. The beautiful princess cried. She did not know what to do.	paragraph ....
Suddenly, there was a miracle. The ocean water cured her illness. The scabies and itch were gone. Even, she became more beautiful than before. Not only that, she also had a power to command the whole South Ocean. She became a fairy called Nyi Roro Kidul or The Queen of South Ocean.	paragraph ....
When the King heard the news, he was very sad. No one could cure his daughter's illness. The King did not want her daughter to be a rumour so he agreed to send his daughter away.	paragraph ....
The King decided to marry Dewi Mutiara. He had a son from her. He was very happy. Dewi Mutiara wanted her son to become a king in the future. She asked the King to send his daughter away. However, the King did not agree. He would not let anyone hurt his daughter.	paragraph ....



## Task 17

Match the words in Column A with the antonyms in Column B. Look at the example.

A

- beautiful
- strong
- sad
- clean
- loud
- first
- deep

B

- happy
- last
- quiet
- dirty
- ugly
- weak
- shallow





## Task 18

---

Summarize the text in Task 16.

---



## Task 19

---

Find two stories and write them in your own words. Ask your classmates to give you feedback. Revise your draft and then publish them in the school bulletin.

---

### C. Let's Do More



## Task 20

---

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box.

I'd love to.

That's OK.

Thank you very much.

It's marvellous!

I wish I have the ticket as well.

- Ruben : Hi, Arnys. Guess what? I won two free tickets to watch Nyi Roro Kidul Drama at the town square.
- Arnys : 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- Ruben : Yeah, I won it in the radio quiz.
- Arnys : That's great. Many people eager to watch the drama. However, the tickets are very limited. 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- Ruben : That's why I'm here. I will give you my second ticket.
- Arnys : Really? 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- Ruben : 4) \_\_\_\_\_ Shall we go to the drama tomorrow evening?
- Arnys : 5) \_\_\_\_\_
- 



## Task 21

---

In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate based on the following situations.

1. Your classmate told you that you are chosen to represent your school in the drama held by the local government.
  2. Your classmate allowed you to pick the flowers in her garden to decorate the stage.
  3. Your classmate told you that the teacher loves your performance and recommend you to join her drama club.
  4. Your classmate helped you write the script for the drama competition next month.
-



## Task 22

---

Complete the following story with the words in the box. Make any form changes if necessary.  
Look at the example.

give	hear	propose
come	forgive	learn
grow	find	die
have	want	

### Calon Arang

Calon Arang was a widow of Girah who **gave** birth to a daughter in the jungle. Her daughter ... up to be the famed beauty Ratna Menggali. Calon Arang ... her daughter to marry a prince from Airlangga's palace. However, no prince ... along. Infuriated by this, Calon Arang ... the art of black magic and practised it against the kingdom, causing many people to die.

When the king Airlangga ... of the epidemic in Girah, he consulted his high priest, Mpu Bharadah. The priest then sent his son to ... Ratna Menggali. Calon Arang was pleased, the curse ended, and the couple wed.

Calon Arang inscribed her black magic secret on a *lontar* (palm leaf book). One day, her son-in-law ... it and gave it to his father. When Calon Arang found out that Mpu Bharadah had learned her secrets, she was furious and declared war upon him. The priest ... no choice but to fight and, in a deadly struggle, destroyed the widow by casting a spell. Before she ..., Calon Arang asked forgiveness. Mpu Bharadah ... her and showed her the way to heaven.

Adapted from: <http://www.ball-directory.com>



## Task 23

---

Make a summary of the story entitled *Princess Loro Jonggrang* below.

### The Legend of Princess Loro Jonggrang

Once upon a time in Java Island, especially in Prambanan, there were two Hindu kingdoms, they were Pengging and Kraton Boko. Pengging Kingdom was a prosperous and wealthy kingdom led by a wise king named Prabu Damar Moyo who had a son named Raden Bandung Bondowoso.

Kraton Boko was a part of Pengging Kingdom jurisdiction led by a cruel king that was not a man but a giant who was a man eater, named Prabu Boko. However, Prabu Boko had a very beautiful daughter named Princess Loro Jonggrang. Prabu Boko also had a minister named Patih Gupolo that was a giant too. Prabu Boko had a desire to revolt and had control over Pengging Kingdom. Therefore, together with Patih Boko, they gathered the power by training men to become soldiers and collected goods from civil people as provisions.

After having enough preparation, Prabu Boko and all soldiers went to Pengging Kingdom to revolt. Then the war between Pengging and Boko Soldier happened in Pengging kingdom. A lot of soldiers died from both sides. People of Pengging became poor and suffered from starvation.

Knowing that his people were suffering and there were lots of soldiers died, Prabu Damar Moyo sent his son, Raden Bandung Bondowoso to have a battle with Prabu Boko. The fighting between Raden Bandung Bondowoso and Prabu Boko was very furious. Because of the power of Raden Bandung Bondowoso, Prabu Boko can be defeated, and then he died. When Patih Gupalo found out that his king died, he ran away from the battle. Raden Bandung Bondowoso chased him to Kraton Boko.

After he arrived at Kraton Boko, Patih Gupalo reported to Princess Loro Jonggrang that her father died in the battle, that he was killed by a Pengging knight named Raden Bandung Bondowoso. Then the princess cried, she was very sad because of the death of her father.

Raden Bandung Bondowoso finally arrived at Kraton Boko. He was surprised when he saw Princess Loro Jonggrang. She was very beautiful so he proposed her to become his wife. However, Princess Loro Jonggrang did not want to marry Raden Bandung Bondowoso because he killed her father. To refuse his proposal, Princess Loro Jonggrang had a strategy. She had two requests that should be fulfilled by Raden Bandung Bondowoso so that she would agree to marry him. First, she asked him to make Jalatunda well. Then, she asked him to make 1000 temples in one night.

Raden Bandung Bondowoso accepted the requests. Immediately he started to make Jalatunda well and asked Princess Loro Jonggrang to see it. Then, Princess Loro Jonggrang asked Raden Bandung Bondowoso to go into the well, and after that she ordered Patih Gupolo to pile up the well with stone. Both Princess Loro Jonggrang and Patih Gupolo thought that Raden Bandung Bondowoso already died in the well. However, Raden Bandung Bondowoso was still alive. He meditated and finally he could get out from the well safely.

Raden Bandung Bondowoso was very angry with Princess Loro Jonggrang. However, because of her beauty, he soon forgot about his anger. After that, Princess Loro Jonggrang asked Raden Bandung Bondowoso to do the second request which was to make 1000 temples in one night. Therefore Raden Bandung Bondowoso commanded genies to make the temples immediately. However Princess Loro Jonggrang intended to foil his effort to make the temples. She ordered the girls to pound and burn stubbles, so that the sky looked bright as if the morning had come. That made the cocks crow loudly.

Hearing the cocks crowing, people pounding rice, and seeing the brightness in the east, the genies stopped making temples. Genies reported to Raden Bandung Bondowoso that they could not continue building the temples because the morning had come. Raden Bandung Bondowoso got the feeling that the morning had not come yet. He asked Princess Loro Jonggrang to count the amount of the temples. The total was only 999 temples, so there was still 1 temple left. Therefore, Princess Loro Jonggrang refused to marry Raden Bandung Bondowoso. Feeling deceived, Raden Bandung Bondowoso was very angry and cursed her, "Loro Jonggrang, there is only 1 temple left, let you be the one to make it complete". It was a miracle that suddenly Princess Loro Jonggrang transformed to a stone statue.



Until today, the stone statue of Princess Loro Jonggrang is still in Candi Prambanan and Raden Bandung Bondowoso cursed the girls around Prambanan area to become old virgins because they helped Princess Loro Jonggrang. Based on what is believed by old people, the couple who are dating in Prambanan temple will break up.

Adapted from: <http://www.greatindonesia.com>  
Pictures: <http://www.e-smartschool.com>



---

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 24

---

**In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate in the following situations.**

- Your classmate won the national drama competition in Bandung. He also bought you a nice pair of shoes as a souvenir from Cibaduyut.
  - Your classmate told you that your script was chosen to be used in the next school drama and you will be the director of it. Then, you asked her to be your assistant in that event.
- 



### Task 25

---

**Find and write down any mystical story in Indonesia in this box.**

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to say that you are pleased, for example:
  - I'm very pleased with...
  - I'm really delighted.
  - Thank goodness!
  - I'm very glad about...
- 2) How to thank, for example:
  - Thanks a lot for ...
  - Thanks.
  - Thank you very much (for...)
- 3) How to respond to thanks, for example:
  - You're welcome.
  - My pleasure.
  - That's OK.
- 4). Passive forms

Present simple	am/is/are + V3
Past simple	was/were + V3

- 5). A narrative text is a text that entertains and instructs the readers. It entertains because it deals with the unusual and unexpected development of events. It instructs because it teaches readers that problems should be confronted, and attempts made to resolve them. The text incorporates patterns of behaviour that are generally highly valued.

## **UNIT IV**

# **CAN I SEE YOU AT 11 A.M.?**





<http://www.masuya.com.au>

In your daily life you often make appointments with others. Sometimes, you may also have to approve and cancel some appointments. Do you know how to do them?

It is always fun to find new recipes. At times, you might be interested in practising some of them. In this unit, there will be procedural texts on international food recipes. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Answer the following questions based on your experience. Compare your answers with your partner's.

1. Mention some foods from other countries you know.
2. Did you ever eat any of them?
3. What is your favourite one?



### Task 2

In pairs, study the following international foods. Match each with its name and origin based on your knowledge.



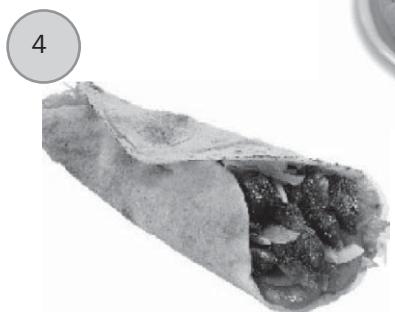
1

3



2

5



4



Kebab; Turkey

Pizza; Italy

Tempura; Japan

Hamburger; Germany

Nasi Lemak; Malaysia

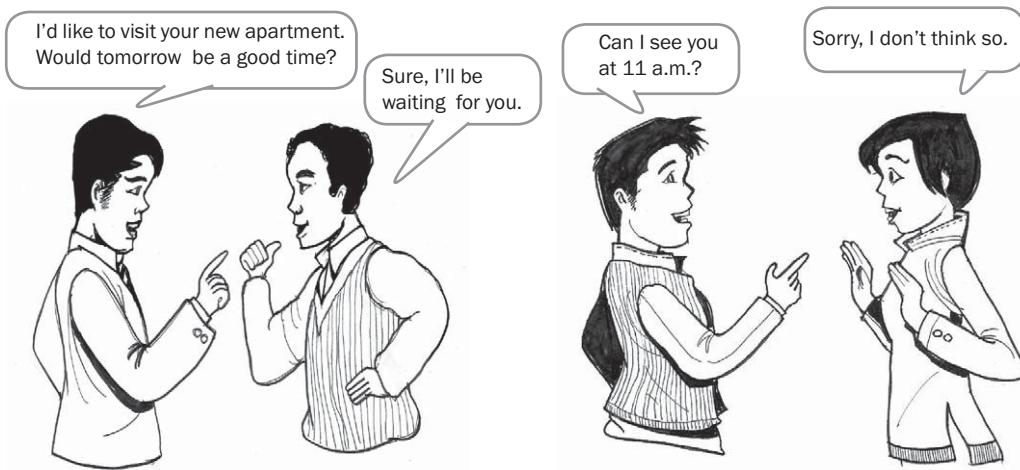
Pictures:

1. <http://www.masuya.com.au>
2. <http://www.resch-frisch.com>
3. <http://farm2.static.flickr.com>
4. <http://jamion.files.wordpress.com>
5. <http://www.cassville.org>



## Task 3

In pairs, study the following expressions.



## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



## Task 4

Listen carefully to the dialogue. Write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false. Correct the false statements. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

Situation: Arnys and Denias are talking about Kebab, a staple food in Turkey.

#### Questions

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	Denias dislikes Kebab.	F	Denias likes Kebab.
2.	Arnys has no idea about what Kebab is.		
3.	Kebab is a staple food in Turkey.		
4.	Kebab is made of meat served with vegetables, bread, and sauces.		
5.	Denias invites Arnys for Kebab.		
6.	Arnys declines Denias's invitation.		



## Task 5

---

### Let's say it right.

In the dialogue between Arnys and Denias in **Task 4** you find the word 'wrap'. How do you pronounce it?

wrap [ræp]

### Note:

The letter 'w' is silent in words in which it is followed by '-r'.

Here are some other examples.

wreath [ri:θ]

wrist [rist]

wreck [rek]

write [rait]

wrinkle ['rɪŋkl]



## Task 6

---

**Listen to the dialogue and answer the questions. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

### Questions

1. Why does Virga invite Ayu to practise making pizza?
  2. Where are they going to practise making pizza?
  3. What does Ayu say when Virga asks her to come at 2 p.m.?
  4. What time will they finally practise making pizza?
- 



## Task 7

---

### Study the following expressions.

In **Task 4** and **Task 6** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
• Would tomorrow be possible?	Making appointments
• So, would tomorrow at 2 p. m. be possible?	
• How about at 4 p.m.?	
• Sure, that will be fine.	Approving appointments
• Great, it's a perfect time.	
• I'm afraid I can't.	Cancelling appointments

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Can I see you at 11 a.m.?</li><li>• Will it be convenient if I come at 3 p.m.?</li></ul>	Making appointments
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sure, I'll be waiting for you.</li><li>• Yes, I think so.</li></ul>	Approving appointments
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sorry, I don't think so.</li><li>• Sorry, I can't.</li><li>• I'm afraid not.</li><li>• No, I can't.</li></ul>	Cancelling appointments



## Task 8

**Study and practise the following dialogues in pairs.**

### Dialogue 1

- Marcell : Do you have a recipe book of making tempura?  
Arnys : Yes, I do.  
Marcell : Great! My sister needs it. May I borrow it?  
Arnys : Of course.  
Marcell : Can I see you at 10 a.m. tomorrow?  
Arnys : Sure, I'll be waiting for you.

### Dialogue 2

- Anita : I found a new recipe on making pizza. It is called fruit pizza.  
Adib : Really? I never heard of it.  
Anita : So, I'd like to invite you to make the fruit pizza together.  
Adib : That sounds nice. Will it be convenient if I come tomorrow at 5 p.m.?  
Anita : Sorry, I don't think so. How about at 7 p.m.?  
Adib : Okay, that will be fine.



### Cultural Tips

When you are doing business in the United States, you must be on time. Americans view someone being late as rude, showing a lack of respect and having sloppy, undisciplined personal habits. Being "on time" in business situations generally means being about five minutes early. Five minutes late is acceptable with a brief apology. Ten to fifteen minutes late requires a phone call to warn of the delay and to apologize.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## Task 9

---

Complete the short dialogues with appropriate expressions to make, approve and cancel an appointment. Look at the example.

- 1) Ayu : Can I see you tomorrow at 8 a.m?  
Retno : (approve) Yes, I think so.
  - 2) Ruben : I'd like you to help me decorate my new kitchen. Would tomorrow be possible?  
Anita : (cancel) .....
  - 3) Retno : (make) .....  
Arnys : I'm afraid I can't.
  - 4) Andi : Let's try the new restaurant at Amarylis Street No.5. How about Tuesday the fifth?  
Denias : (approve) .....
  - 5) Marcell : I need your help to make a chocolate cake. Would tomorrow morning be possible?  
Virga : (approve) .....
  - 6) Adib : Can I see you tomorrow at 5 p.m.  
Ayu : (cancel) .....
- 



## Task 10

---

Ask five of your classmates some of their favourite international foods. Look at the example.

No.	Name	Food
1.	Denias	Kebab, pizza, and hamburger
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		

---



## Task 11

Listen to the following monologue to complete the missing words. The listening script is in the Appendix. Then, list the ingredients and the steps.

### Making Crab Soup

Making crab soup is not difficult. What you need are 2 .... of fish stock, 2 medium-sized ...., 100 gram ...., 50 gram scallions, 50 gram Indonesian parsley, ...., and pepper to taste. First, make fish stock by .... fish bones in 8 cups of water. Then .... these bones after a few minutes. .... the crabs, split into several parts. .... ginger into very thin slices, the scallions and Indonesian parsley. After that, .... stock for about 5 minutes, put everything into the stock. Finally, .... salt and pepper to taste.

Ingredients:

1. .....
2. .....
3. etc.

Steps:

1. .....
2. .....
3. etc.



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 12

Put the steps in making pizza in the right order. You may work in pairs.



- Enjoy your Pizza
- Put pizza toppings
- Make pizza dough
- Put pizza sauce

Adapted from:  
<http://www.recipepizza.com>



## Task 13

Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text and answer the questions.

crisp [krɪsp] (ks)	:	renyah
dough [dəʊ] (kb)	:	adonan
gravy ['greɪvi] (kb)	:	kuah daging
sauce [sɔ:s] (kb)	:	saus
slice [slais] (kb)	:	irisin, potongan
squeeze [skwi:z] (kkt)	:	memeras
topping ['tɒpɪŋ] (kb)	:	cream, keju, dll yang diletakkan diatas makanan

### Nasi Lemak



<http://farm1.static.flickr.com>

#### Ingredients:

1 cup rice	salt to taste
3 screw pine leaves	1 grated coconut

#### Method:

- First, clean the rice and drain.
- Then, squeeze out 2 cups of thick coconut milk with screw pine leaves. Add in salt.
- If you desire, you can also add in some sliced onions and ginger.
- Finally, serve this rice with sliced hard-boiled eggs, cucumber, and Sambal Ikan Bilis.

#### Note:

Nasi Lemak is usually served with Sambal Ikan Bilis.

Sambal Ikan Bilis is made of dried ikan bilis (anchovies), bombay onion, onion, garlic, tamarind juice, dried chilies, shrimp paste, salt and sugar.

## Sambal Ikan Bilis

### Ingredients:

1 bombay onion  
1/2 cup dried ikan bilis (anchovies)  
1 clove garlic  
2 tbs tamarind juice  
4 onions  
8 dried chillies  
shrimp paste (belacan) (optional)  
salt and sugar to taste



### Method:

- First, fry the ikan bilis until crisp and put aside.
- Then, grind the shrimp paste together with onion, garlic, dried chilies. Slice the bombay onion into rings.
- After that, heat 2 tbs oil in a pan and fry the ground ingredients until fragrant. Add in the onion rings.
- Add tamarind juice, salt, and sugar.
- Cook, stirring occasionally until the gravy thickens.
- Add in the ikan bilis and mix well.
- Finally, serve with steaming hot Nasi Lemak.

Adapted from: <http://www-ieee.eecs.berkeley.edu>  
Picture: <http://feastmalaysia.blogspot.com>

### Notes:

As explained in Unit 3, a procedural text is a text that tells you how to do something. It is usually organized to include:

- the goal of the activity;
- any materials needed to achieve the goal; and
- steps to accomplish the goal.

The grammatical patterns of this procedural text include:

- the use of commands, e.g. 'cut', 'add', 'pour';
- the use of action verbs, e.g. 'wash', 'boil';
- the use of precise vocabulary, e.g. 'fry', 'boil', 'fragrant'
- the use of adverbials to express details of time and place, manner and so on, e.g. '1 inch thick', 'until fragrant', 'until chicken changes colour'.

## Questions

1. What do the texts tell you?
  2. What ingredients do you need to make Nasi Lemak?
  3. What are the steps to cook it?
  4. What ingredients do you need to make Sambal Ikan Bilis?
  5. What are the steps to cook it?
  6. How do you serve Nasi Lemak?
- 



## Task 14

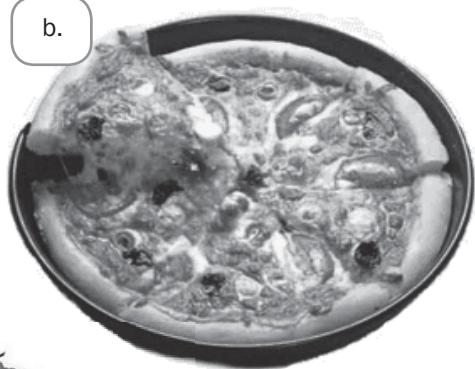
---

In pairs, write the recipe on one of the following international foods.

a.



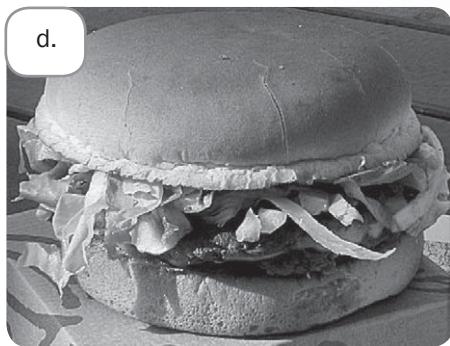
b.



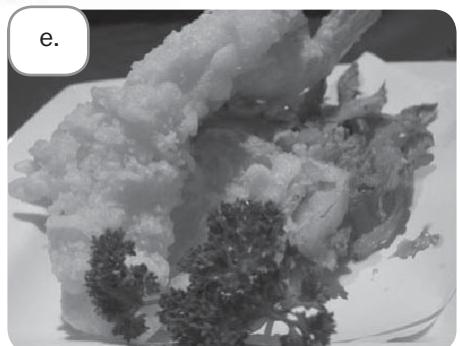
c.



d.



e.



**Pictures:**

- a. <http://upload.wikimedia.org> b. <http://aniveldemyself.files.wordpress.com>  
c. <http://www.about-losangelesca.com> d. <http://plus.maths.org> e. <http://www.jenius.com.au>
-



## Task 15

Answer the questions and then find the answers in the box by circling them. Compare your answers with your partner's. Look at the example.

1. room where you cook food
2. large nut from a type of palm tree
3. The biscuits are not ..... any more, they have gone soft.
4. ..... originated in Hamburg.
5. material which goes to make something
6. the synonym of to "blend"
7. sauce from meat during cooking
8. thin piece cut off something to eat
9. substance that you use to make food sweet
10. "tsp" stands for .....
11. cream, melted cheese, etc., put on the top of food such as cakes, pizzas, ice cream, etc.

K	I	T	C	H	E	N	U	Z	C	R	I	S	P	V
A	I	R	T	X	F	M	V	A	I	R	C	B	W	P
R	J	S	M	I	X	N	T	B	J	S	I	B	E	G
G	K	H	U	Y	G	O	O	C	K	T	R	C	Y	X
O	R	A	V	Y	H	P	P	D	L	U	E	L	C	T
B	L	M	V	Z	I	Q	P	E	M	V	N	K	O	L
C	M	B	W	A	S	L	I	C	E	W	G	H	C	M
D	N	U	S	B	J	R	N	F	N	X	H	V	O	I
E	O	R	U	C	I	N	G	R	E	D	I	E	N	T
F	P	G	G	D	K	S	W	G	O	Y	H	I	U	R
G	T	E	A	S	P	O	O	N	P	Z	Y	D	T	G
H	Q	R	R	E	L	T	X	H	Q	A	J	J	M	A

## C. Let's Do More



### Task 16

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box.

Would Saturday at 3 p.m. be possible?

I'm afraid, I can't

how about Sunday at 10.30 a.m.?

Great, it's a perfect time.

Andi : Retno, have you tried Japanese tempura at Diponegoro street?

Retno : No, I haven't.

Andi : Will you accompany me to go there?

Retno : Sure, when?

Andi : 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Retno : Umm ... 2) \_\_\_\_\_ I have a dancing class next Saturday.

Andi : I see. So, 3) \_\_\_\_\_

Retno : 4) \_\_\_\_\_

Andi : Okay, see you next Sunday.

Retno : See you.



### Task 17

Complete the following recipe of making **Chinese Fried Rice** with words in the box.

heat

egg

fork

pan

brown

#### Chinese Fried Rice

##### Ingredients:

2 eggs -- beaten

1 red or green pepper -- chopped

2 large onions -- chopped

10 ml garlic -- minced

2 tsp corn oil

3 green onions -- chopped

1/4 cup soy sauce -- optional

1 cup instant rice

3 stalks celery -- chopped

1 cup water -- boiling

**Directions:**

1. Cook the eggs in a large ... over low heat until set.  
Break up with a ... Remove from pan.
2. Combine the onions, oil, and 2 tsp of the soy sauce in the pan. Cook and stir until onion is ... Add remaining ingredients and ... to boiling.
3. Reduce heat, simmer 1 minute. Stir in reserved ...  
Remove from heat, cover tightly, let stand 5 minutes.  
Stir before serving.



Adapted from: <http://www.recipeatlas.com>

Picture: <http://www.dkimages.com>



### **Task 18**

**Write down your favourite food recipe from another country.**

---



### **Task 19**

**Find two recipes from other countries and present them to the class.**

---

## **D. Let's Check Your Competence**



### **Task 20**

**In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate. Include expressions of making, approving, and cancelling appointments.**

- You and your classmate plan to visit a new Kebab restaurant.
  - You want to practise making Spaghetti. You need your friend's help.
  - You want to borrow some cooking stuffs from your friend.
-



## Task 21

**Find two international food recipes. Then, write them down in the boxes.**

1)

2)

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

1) How to make appointments, for example:

- Would tomorrow be possible?
- Can I see you at 11 a.m.?

2) How to approve appointments, for example:

- That will be fine.
- Great, it's a perfect time.

3) How to cancel appointments, for example:

- I'm afraid I can't.
- Sorry, I don't think so.

4) Procedural texts

A procedural text is a text that aims to tell you how to do something. It is usually organized to include:

- the goal of the activity
- any materials needed to achieve the goal
- steps to accomplish the goal

# UNIT REVIEW SEMESTER 1

I. Listen to short conversations between two people. Choose the best answer to each question.  
The listening script is in the Appendix.

1. What is the intention of Anita's expression?
  - a. to ask how Denias is
  - b. to greet Denias
  - c. to say how she is
  - d. to say goodbye
  - e. to state how she is
2. What is Virga's intention?
  - a. to introduce Retno
  - b. to introduce herself
  - c. to ask how Retno is
  - d. to state how she is
  - e. to greet Retno
3. What does Arnys mean?
  - a. She says that she is pleased.
  - b. She wants to borrow the novel.
  - c. She will lend Ruben the novel.
  - d. She responds to Ruben's thanks.
  - e. She would like to thank Ruben for the novel.
4. What does Andi mean?
  - a. He wants to ask about Adib's condition.
  - b. He wants Ayu to know that Adib got an accident.
  - c. He shows his sympathy.
  - d. He knew that Adib got an accident.
  - e. He wants to apologize to Adib.
5. What does Ayu mean?
  - a. She wants to make a chocolate pudding with Retno.
  - b. She does not want to make a chocolate pudding.
  - c. She wants Retno to make her a chocolate pudding,
  - d. She accepts Retno's invitation.
  - e. She declines Retno's invitation.

6. What does Arnys imply?
  - a. She accepts Adib's invitation.
  - b. She declines Adib's invitation.
  - c. She wants to have dinner at another place.
  - d. She wants to have dinner with somebody else.
  - e. She asks Adib to have dinner at another restaurant.
7. What does Virga mean?
  - a. She does not have time tomorrow.
  - b. She will not go to the market tomorrow.
  - c. She asks Anita to buy some fruits.
  - d. She declines an appointment.
  - e. She approves an appointment.
8. What does Retno imply?
  - a. She really wants to win the poetry reading competition.
  - b. She wants to express that she is pleased.
  - c. She wants to join the poetry reading competition.
  - d. She wants to thank Marcell.
  - e. She wants to tell Marcell that she won the competition.

**II. Choose the best expressions to complete each of the following dialogues.**

9. Ruben : Can I see you at 9 a.m. tomorrow?  
Ayu : \_\_\_\_\_ I have a class at 9 a.m.
  - a. Sorry, I don't think so.
  - b. Sure, that will be fine.
  - c. I'll be waiting for you.
  - d. Yes, I think so.
  - e. Great. It's a perfect time.
10. Arnys : Marcell promised to take me to the boutique, but he did not come. He didn't tell me why he couldn't make it.  
Adib : \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. How upsetting.
  - b. How marvellous.
  - c. That sounds nice.
  - d. That's great!
  - e. That's fantastic!

11. Denias : My uncle will be directing a drama for a TV programme. He would like to ask you to play in it.

Ayu : \_\_\_\_\_

- a. I'm delighted to hear about that.
- b. How annoying.
- c. I'm sorry to hear that.
- d. That's a pity.
- e. Don't mention it.

**Questions 12 - 16 are based on the following text.**

### The Football Match

My brother and I went to a football match yesterday. Our school team was playing against another High School team. Our team wore red and white shirts, white shorts, and red stockings. The other team wore orange and black shirts, orange shorts, and black stockings. "They look like bees", my brother said, and we laughed.

They played like bees too. They ran very fast, attacked very hard, and passed the ball to each other very fast. Soon they scored their first goal. My brother and I shouted and shouted, "Come on, Valley School! Come on, the Valleys!" Our headmaster was near us and he was shouting too. He seemed very enthusiastic. However, the high school scored another goal. We were very sad.

Then, one of the "bees" stopped the ball with one of his hands, so our team got the free kick. Our captain took it and scored a goal. We shouted, "Hooray!" The score was now 2:1. That was better.

Now our team began to play better—or the "bees" were getting tired. Our team scored another goal before half-time. In the second half of the match, both teams tried very hard, but neither scored, so at the end the score was still two all.

Adapted from: L.A. Hill, 1963

12. The text tells about ...

- a. joining a football match
- b. winning a football match
- c. attending a football match
- d. the school football team
- e. playing football

13. What did the writer and his brother do after the rival team scored the first goal?

- a. They shouted to support their school team.
- b. They shouted to the headmaster.
- c. They laughed at their school team.
- d. They ran very fast.
- e. They played like bees.

14. Which statement is true according to the text?
- The writer and his brother will watch a football match.
  - The writer's school team wore orange and black shirts.
  - The writer called his school team the "bees".
  - The writer's school team scored the first goal.
  - The opponent scored the first goal.
15. A word in the text which has the same meaning as "leader" is ...
- brother
  - goal
  - captain
  - team
  - score
16. "He seemed very enthusiastic." The antonym of the underlined word is ...
- energized
  - excited
  - eager
  - apathetic
  - impatient

**Questions 17 - 20 are based on the following text.**

### Pempek Palembang

#### Ingredients

Main Ingredients:

- 250 gr cod or any white meat fish
- 125 gr tapioca or corn flour
- 2 tbsp light soya sauce
- Salt and pepper
- 1 tbsp oil (to prevent the dough sticky)
- For type *Kapal selam*, you need 3 hard boiled eggs slice half

Soup Ingredients:

- 5 chillies
- 100 gr palm sugar
- 2 tbsp sugar

- Salt and pepper
- 2 tbsp light soya sauce
- 2 tbsp *ebi* (dried prawn)
- Handful diced cucumber
- 4 tbsp rice vinegar
- 1 tsp tamarind
- 250 ml water

### **Method**

Soup Method

Boil all soup ingredients into sauce pan

Serving:

1. Blend all the ingredients into food processor until the smooth like a dough, you could put splash of water if you need it.
2. Put enough fish cake into your hand and put half boiled egg in the middle and cover it with the dough and put into boiled water until floating.
3. Drain all the water, deep fry it and add some of the soup.

*Adapted from: www.cest-ma-maison.net*

17. The text tells you about ...
  - a. how to make Pempek Palembang
  - b. how to eat Pempek Palembang
  - c. the soup ingredients to make Pempek Palembang
  - d. how to prepare the ingredients to make Pempek Palembang
  - e. the equipment needed to make Pempek Palembang
18. The followings are the main ingredients you need to make Pempek Palembang, except ...
 

...

  - a. pepper
  - b. sugar
  - c. corn flour
  - d. soya sauce
  - e. salt
19. What is the use of the food processor?
  - a. to boil the ingredients
  - b. to measure the ingredients
  - c. to fry the ingredients
  - d. to blend the ingredients
  - e. to heat the ingredients

20. Why is oil needed to prepare the dough?
- to fry the dough
  - to clean the dough
  - to heat the dough
  - to make the dough softer
  - to prevent the dough from being sticky

**Questions 21 - 30 are based on the following text.**

### **Queen Aji Bidara Putih**

Muara Kaman lies along the Mahakam River, in eastern Borneo. In the past the area was a kingdom ruled by Queen Aji Bidara Putih. She was a typical queen of myths: beautiful, wise, and sensitive. Many princes and kings proposed to her but she always refused them because she was more concerned with ruling her country and guarding her people.

One day, a Chinese boat came to eastern Borneo. First, the people thought it was a merchant ship but the boat was loaded with trade goods and highly trained soldiers. Their envoys brought gold and porcelain to announce the marriage proposal from a prince of China. The queen didn't refuse instantly and replied that she had to ponder the proposal first. After the envoys left the palace, the queen called a court officer and ordered him to infiltrate the Chinese boat to gather information on the prince.

When night fell the officer sneaked onto the boat, got by all the guards, and finally found the prince's room. The large door would not open and he couldn't find a peek hole, so the officer put his ear to the wall, trying to catch sounds from inside. He heard that the prince was having his dinner and the noise of his chewing and slurping surprised the officer. It was like a boar that he had once heard when he was hunting.

He quickly left the boat and returned to the palace. He reported that the prince must have been a phantom, not a human. He believed that the phantom could be in a human's form only during the daytime. The queen was so surprised and got angry. On the next day, she refused his proposal.

The enraged prince ordered his troops to raid Muara Kaman. The battle was won by the prince's huge band of troops. As they drew near to the palace, Queen Aji Bidara Putih chewed a leaf of betel vine and sang a mantra while holding it. When she threw it at the Chinese troops, it turned to giant centipedes. The Chinese troops started to retreat but three centipedes chased them and sank the boat. The site of the sunken ship is now known as Danau Lipan (Lake of Centipedes), with Chinese treasures hidden on the lake's bed.

Adapted from: [www.st.rim.or.jp](http://www.st.rim.or.jp)

21. The text tells about ...
- Queen Aji Bidara Putih
  - The Mahakam River
  - The Prince's Proposal
  - The Sunken Ship
  - The Chinese Troops

22. Where did the story take place?
- in a kingdom in China
  - in western Borneo
  - in the area that is now called Muara Kaman
  - in a sunken ship
  - in the Lake of Centipedes
23. How was Queen Bidara Putih like?
- beautiful, sensible, and sensitive
  - beautiful, uncaring, and sensitive
  - pretty, wise, and indifferent
  - pretty, sensible, and indifferent
  - beautiful, wise, and unconcerned
24. Why did the envoys bring gold and porcelain?
- to trade them for stocks
  - to announce the marriage proposal from a prince of China
  - to load their ship
  - to share them with the residents
  - to sell them to the queen
25. How did Queen Aji Bidara Putih respond to the proposal?
- She agreed with the proposal instantly.
  - She approved the proposal right away.
  - She did not refuse the proposal immediately.
  - She did not reply the proposal.
  - She refused the proposal.
26. Why did the prince raid Muara Kaman?
- because the queen was spying on the prince
  - because the queen did not accept his proposal
  - because the queen attacked the prince's kingdom
  - because the queen returned the prince's gifts
  - because the queen chased the prince away
27. Which statement is not true according to the text?
- The prince wanted to marry the queen.
  - The prince had gold and porcelain to announce the marriage proposal.
  - The prince ordered his troops to attack Muara Kaman.
  - The prince won the battle.
  - The prince turned into a giant centipede.

28. The word “he” (paragraph 3, sentence 3) refers to ...
- a. the court officer
  - b. the prince
  - c. the envoy
  - d. the phantom
  - e. the giant centipedes
29. “Their envoys brought gold and porcelain to ...” The synonym of “envoy” is ...
- a. team
  - b. messenger
  - c. troop
  - d. advocate
  - e. squad
30. “... prince ordered his troops to raid Muara Kaman.” The synonym of “raid” is ...
- a. establish
  - b. ascertain
  - c. attack
  - d. expand
  - e. enlarge

# **IT WAS THE LEAST I COULD DO.**





<http://www.sunkisvillas.com>

You thank others for what they give to you and you may also have to respond when someone thanks you. Do you know how to do them very well?

Stories generally interest us. Many are from overseas. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Work in pairs to answer the following questions based on your knowledge.

1. Do you know some overseas folktales? Mention them.
2. What is your favourite one?
3. Mention the characters of the story.
4. What does the story tell you?



### Task 2

The followings are characters of some overseas folktales. Match each with the suitable title of the folktale.

Cinderella

Mermaid

Bloody Mary

Vampire

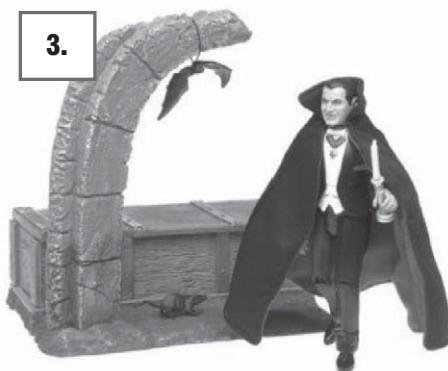
1.



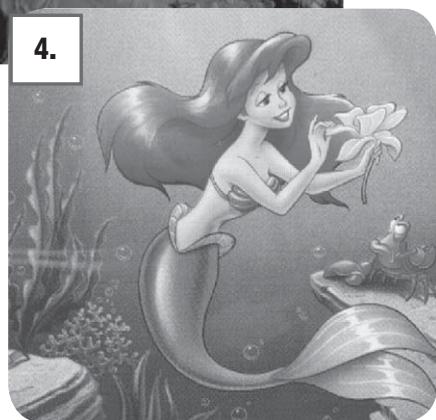
2.



3.



4.



Pictures:

1. <http://www.michaelspronanimation.com>
2. <http://www.worth1000.com>
3. <http://www.shadowlandtoys.com>
4. <http://www.disney-vacation-time.com>

## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 3

---

Listen to the dialogue carefully. Then, answer the following questions. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Situation:** Adib is at Retno's house. He has bought her a novel.

#### Questions

1. What did Adib bring for Retno?
  2. What did Retno feel about the present? What did she say to Adib?
  3. Why did Retno need it badly?
  4. What did Retno promise when she was finished with her writing?
  5. What did Adib say to show his gratitude to Retno?
- 



### Task 4

---

In pairs, study the following expressions.

In Task 3 you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Thank you very much for your kindness.</li><li>• Thank you.</li></ul>	Thanking
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It was the least I could do.</li><li>• Don't mention it.</li></ul>	Responding to thanks

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Function
• That was really nice of you.	Thanking
• Thanks a million (for...)	
• I'm very grateful to you.	
• I'm much obliged.	
• You're welcome.	Responding to thanks
• It's no trouble at all.	
• Delighted I was able to help.	

---



## Task 5

### Let's say it right.

In the dialogue between Adib and Retno in Task 3 you find the word ‘because’. How do you pronounce it?

because [br'kɒz]

### Note:

The letter ‘s’ is pronounced ‘z’ when in the final syllable preceded and/or followed by a vowel symbol. Here are some other examples.

choose [tʃu:z]

refuse ['refju:z]

please [pli:z]

surprise [sə'praɪz]

present ['prezənt]

use [ju:z]



## Task 6

**Listen carefully to the following dialogues. Complete the missing expressions. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

- 1) Arnys : Thank you very much for your kindness. I wouldn't be able to do that by myself.  
Ruben : \_\_\_\_\_ You can call me any time you need me.
- 2) Marcell : I got A for my story telling assignment. You're the one who gave me the idea about the story I told the class. \_\_\_\_\_  
Anita : I'm glad it's helpful.
- 3) Adib : I have given the story book we bought yesterday to my sister. She loves the book you have chosen. That was really nice of you.  
Ayu : \_\_\_\_\_ You know, most girls love to read romantic stories.
- 4) Retno : Thank you very much for lending me all of your story books. I have my niece stay at home all day long.  
Virga : \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) Andi : I was blessed for having you as my friend. You are always there when I need your help. \_\_\_\_\_  
Denias : It was the least I could do. That's what friends are for.



### Cultural Tips

In the United Kingdom, whenever you have been a guest in a home, you should definitely send a hand-written thank-you note. Indeed, it is a thoughtful gesture to thank your hosts in writing for any hospitality, even a short drinks party.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## Task 7

In pairs, have a short dialogue with your classmate. Use expressions of thanking and responding to thanks.

- You thank your classmate for picking you up while your brother was still working.
- You thank your mother for cooking your favourite cake.
- You thank your classmate for accompanying you to buy a book of foreign folktales.
- You thank your sister for helping you take care of your novel collection.



## Task 8

Listen to the following monologue to complete the missing information. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Blue Hen's Chicks**  
retold by  
**S. E. Schlosser**

A Delaware man ... to war during the American Revolution. For entertainment, he ... with him two fighting cocks. When asked about these chickens, the soldier ... slyly: "They are the chick's of a blue hen I have at home."

Well, these cocks ... fight! They were so fierce, they ... quite a stir among the men. It did not take long for the Delaware troops to begin boasting among the troops from the other states that they could out-fight anyone, just like those famous fighting cocks. "We're the Blue Hen's Chickens. We will fight to the end!" ... the theme of the Delaware troops. The other troops ... to calling the men from Delaware "The Blue Hen's Chicks", and to this day, Delaware is known as the Blue Hen State.

Adapted from: <http://www.americanfolklore.net>



## Task 9

Tell the class about your favourite overseas story. Look at Task 8 as a model.



### By the Way...

One of the popular overseas stories is Cinderella. The word "Cinderella" means one who unexpectedly achieves recognition or success after a period of obscurity and neglect.

Adapted from: <http://wikipedia.org>



## 2. Read and Write



### Task 10

---

**Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text and answer the questions.**

barn [bɑ:n] (kb)	:	gudang
cloak [kləʊk] (kb)	:	mantel; jubah
commotion [kə'məʃən] (kb)	:	keributan
enchant [ɪn'tʃa:nt] (kkt)	:	memikat
frantic ['fræntɪk] (ks)	:	kalut
hut [hʌt] (kb)	:	pondok
murmur['mə:mə] (kki)	:	berbisik
pellet ['pelɪt] (kb)	:	butiran
rattle['rætl] (kkt)	:	menderak-derakkan
rein [reɪn] (kb)	:	tali kekang
soothe [su:ð] (kkt)	:	menenangkan
spear ['spiə] (kb)	:	tombak
stalk [stɔ:k] (kkt)	:	mengikuti
suspicious [sə'spiʃəs] (ks)	:	curiga
wicked ['wɪkɪd] (ks)	:	jahat

### The Snow Bride



Many years ago, when great forests still covered the hills of Japan, a samurai named Hikaru lost his way in a sudden winter storm. Snow pellets sharp as spears pierced his cloak and drove him blindly into the deep woods.

Cold stalked him, and he had no weapon to battle this invisible enemy. Finally his horse burst into a clearing. The wind rattled the tree limbs, but no snow fell here. A wooden house squatted beside a huge camphor tree. The snow was a smooth white carpet. This quiet place seemed peaceful enough, but he sensed someone watching, waiting in silence.

A door opened. A white-haired woman studied him. Holding out her arms, she murmured, "Welcome, my lord. Enter and feel no fear."

Hikaru smiled. He had killed fear long ago. But his horse ran away from the tiny hut. The samurai pulled the reins and drove it forward until the horse reluctantly moved forward. He found a lean-to built on the side of the hut, sheltered on one side by the hut and on the other by the tree. When his mount discovered some hay, its hunger drove out all fear. He left the animal peacefully grazing and went to find his hostess.

The hut was simply furnished, though firelight created a golden sparkle off the dishes and cups she set before him. Where had this woman found such luxuries, he wondered as she silently served him.

After he had eaten, he fixed his eyes on her. "Who are you?"

She kept her gaze modestly lowered. "I am called Yuki, my lord. This place is my home."

Yuki glided around the room in a silken whisper. Gradually he became aware of how quiet the woods had become. "Are you not lonely here?"

Her lips quirked in a shadow of a smile. "You are here, my lord. As long as you are pleased with me, how could I be lonely?"

Time passed, but it was always winter. Hikaru forgot everything but the lovely woman who anticipated his wants. As soon as he thought, "I want – " Yuki was there, offering food and drink to fill his belly or song to soothe his soul. Yet men are never content. For a warrior, even an earthly paradise can become a wicked prison.

One day, Hikaru woke with anger. Nothing Yuki said or did pleased him.

Dashing dishes off the table, the tiny crashes echoed how he'd destroyed his enemies in the past. The memory inflamed his temper. Enough of this quiet and inaction! He could find that in death.

"My lord, tell me how I have displeased you. I – "

"You, woman!" he snapped. "You've kept me prisoner in this place far too long!"

He rushed to the door and flung it open. A cold breeze brushed his cheek. Yuki grasped his sleeve. "My lord! Do not leave!"

"Enough!" The samurai jerked from her grip. Rage boiled in his heart as he backhanded her. "Out of my way, woman!"

"As you wish." The mark of his hand seemed a dark bruise on her pale skin. "I will bother you no more." Head bowed, Yuki stepped aside. The door swung shut between them.

A low moan shuddered amongst the trees. Wind whipped his helm from his head and his cloak off his shoulders. Cold knifed his body, just beneath the heart.

"Yuki?" Blinded, Hikaru stumbled backwards, but tree bark scraped his questing hands. Where was the hut? It was cold, so cold.

Spring came late that year. Birdsong welcomed the sun's return. The golden fingers of the goddess Amateratsu caressed the still alabaster face of the sleeping man. But he never wakened. As she continued her journey across the sky, cherry trees covered the silken clad form with tiny pink-edged petals, a living blanket of snow.

Adapted from: <http://mariannh.com>

## Questions

1. Where does the story come from?
2. Who is Hikaru?
3. What happened to him?
4. How was the weather then?
5. What happened to Hikaru after she met Yuki?
6. What made Hikaru want to leave Yuki's hut?
7. What happened to Yuki when she tried to restrain Hikaru's anger?
8. What happened after Yuki stepped aside?
9. Do you think this story has a happy ending or sad ending? Why?

**Note:**

The text in Task 10 is a narrative text. As explained in Unit 5, a narrative text is a text that entertains and instructs the readers. It entertains because it deals with the unusual and unexpected development of events. It instructs because it teaches readers that problems should be confronted, and attempts made to resolve them. The text incorporates patterns of behaviour that are generally highly valued.

---



## Task 11

---

**Find words in the story which mean the opposite to the following words. Compare your answers with a classmate's. Look at the example.**

- (a) blunt : sharp
  - (b) visible : ....
  - (c) violent : ....
  - (d) willingly : ....
  - (e) unconscious : ....
  - (f) coarse : ....
  - (g) rouse : ....
  - (h) excite : ....
  - (i) ineffective : ....
  - (j) bright : ....
- 



## Task 12

---

**Rearrange the jumbled paragraphs of the story of *Bloody Mary from Pennsylvania* into a good text by numbering the paragraphs. Look at the example.**

Once upon a time, there was a maiden lived deep in the forest in a tiny cottage. She sold herbal remedies for a living. Folks living in the town nearby called her Bloody Mary, and said she was a witch. None dared cross her cottage for fear that their cows would go dry, their food-stores rot away before winter, their children take sick of fever, or any number of terrible things that an angry witch could do to her neighbours.	paragraph 1
---	-------------

<p>The desperate cries of the miller and his wife woke the neighbours. They came to assist the frantic couple. Suddenly, a sharp-eyed farmer gave a shout and pointed towards a strange light at the edge of the woods. A few townsmen followed him out into the field and saw Bloody Mary standing beside a large oak tree, holding a magic stick that was pointed towards the miller's house. She was glowing with an unearthly light as she set her evil spell upon the miller's daughter.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>Then came the night when the daughter of the miller rose from her bed and walked outside, following an enchanted sound no one else could hear. The miller's wife had a toothache and was sitting up in the kitchen treating the tooth with an herbal remedy when her daughter left the house. She screamed for her husband and followed the girl out of the door. The miller came running in his nightshirt. Together, they tried to restrain the girl, but she kept breaking away from them and heading out of town.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>As she burned, Bloody Mary screamed a curse at the villagers. If anyone mentioned her name aloud before a mirror, she would send her spirit to revenge herself upon them for her terrible death. When she was dead, the villagers went to the house in the wood and found the unmarked graves of the little girls the evil witch had murdered. She had used their blood to make her young again.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>Then the little girls in the village began to disappear, one by one. No one could find out where they had gone. Grief-stricken families searched the woods, the local buildings, and all the houses and barns, but there was no sign of the missing girls. A few brave souls even went to Bloody Mary's home in the woods to see if the witch had taken the girls, but she denied any knowledge of the disappearances. Still, it was noted that her haggard appearance had changed. She looked younger, more attractive. The neighbours were suspicious, but they could find no proof that the witch had taken their young ones.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>From that day to this, anyone foolish enough to chant Bloody Mary's name three times before a darkened mirror will summon the vengeful spirit of the witch. It is said that she will tear their bodies to pieces and rip their souls from their mutilated bodies. The souls of these unfortunate ones will burn in torment as Bloody Mary once was burned, and they will be trapped forever in the mirror.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>The townsmen grabbed their guns and their pitchforks and ran toward the witch. When she heard the commotion, Bloody Mary broke off her spell and fled back into the woods. The far-sighted farmer had loaded his gun with silver bullets in case the witch ever came after his daughter. Now he took aim and shot at her. The bullet hit Bloody Mary in the hip and she fell to the ground. The angry townsmen leapt upon her and carried her back into the field, where they built a huge bonfire and burned her at the stake.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>

Adapted from: <http://www.americanfolklore.net>



## Task 13

---

After you arrange the jumbled paragraphs in Task 12, summarize the story in your own words.

---



## Task 14

---

Find two stories from overseas and write them down in your own words. Present them to the class.

---

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 15

---

Complete the following conversation with the expressions in the box. Then, act it out with your partner.

Thanks a million for this.  
What are you doing here?  
Delighted I was able to help.  
See you later.  
How many stories have you got so far ?  
Of course.

- Marcell : Hi, girls!
- Arnys & Anita : Hi, Marcell!
- Marcell : 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- Arnys : As you see, we're collecting the fairytales from around the world.
- Anita : Yeah, Ms Hana asked us to work in pairs to make a clipping about it.
- Marcell : It sounds interesting. 2) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Anita : Only some. We have The Tooth Fairy, The Piskies, Black Annis, Berguess and The Spriggans. They are all the fairies from British Isles.
- Marcell : That's pretty good. By the way, my sister has a complete collection of folktales. Maybe some of them are fairy tales, who knows.
- Anita : Really? Can we borrow them?
- Marcell : 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- Arnys : I'm very grateful to you.
- Marcell : 4) \_\_\_\_\_
- Arnys : Anyway, is she free this afternoon?

Marcell : Well, I think so. She said to me this morning that she would try the new cake recipe. However, I can help you if she is too busy.

Anita : 5) \_\_\_\_\_

Marcell : Don't mention it. It's good to know that I can do something for you.

Arnys : That's great. So we can finish this assignment soon.

Marcell : Yeah, good luck for you!

Arnys

& Anita : Thank you.

Marcell : Well, I'm afraid I must go now. 6) \_\_\_\_\_

Arnys

& Anita : See you.

---



## Task 16 —

Make a summary of the story below.

### Cinderella

Once upon a time, there lived an unhappy young girl. She was unhappy because her mother was dead, and her father had married another woman, a widow with two daughters. Her stepmother didn't like her. All the nice things, kind thoughts and loving touches were for her own daughters. Not just the kind thoughts and love, but also dresses, shoes, delicious food, comfy beds, as well as every home comfort. All this was laid on for her daughters. For the poor unhappy girl, there was nothing at all. No dresses, only her stepsisters' hand-me-downs. No lovely dishes, nothing but scraps. No nice rests and comfort. For she had to work hard all day, and only when evening came was she allowed to sit for a while by the fire, near the cinders. That is how she got her nickname, for everybody called her Cinderella. Cinderella used to spend long hours all alone talking to the cat. The cat said,

"Meow", which really meant, "Cheer up! You have something neither of your stepsisters have and that is beauty."

It was quite true. Cinderella, even dressed in rags with a dusty gray face from the cinders, she was a lovely girl. While her stepsisters, no matter how splendid and elegant their clothes, were still clumsy, lumpy and ugly and always would be.

One day, beautiful new dresses arrived at the house. A ball was to be held at Court and the stepsisters were getting ready to go to it. Cinderella, didn't even dare ask, "What about me?" for she knew very well what the answer to that would be:

"You? My dear girl, you're staying at home to wash the dishes, scrub the floors and turn down the beds for your stepsisters. They will come home tired and very sleepy." Cinderella sighed at the cat.

"Oh dear, I'm so unhappy!" and the cat murmured "Meow".

Suddenly something amazing happened. In the kitchen, where Cinderella was sitting all by herself, there was a burst of light and a fairy appeared.

"Don't be alarmed, Cinderella," said the fairy. "The wind blew me your sighs. I know you would love to go to the ball. And so you shall!"

"How can I, dressed in rags?" Cinderella replied. "The servants will turn me away!" The fairy

smiled. With a flick of her magic wand, Cinderella found herself wearing the most beautiful dress, the loveliest ever seen in the realm.

"Now that we have settled the matter of the dress," said the fairy, "we'll need to get you a cart. A real lady would never go to a ball on foot!" "Quick! Get me a pumpkin!" she ordered.

"Oh of course," said Cinderella, rushing away. Then the fairy turned to the cat.

"You, bring me seven mice!"

"Seven mice!" said the cat. "I didn't know fairies ate mice too!"

"They're not for eating, silly! Do as you are told! And, remember they must be alive!"

Cinderella soon returned with a fine pumpkin and the cat with seven mice he had caught in the cellar.

"Good!" exclaimed the fairy. With a flick of her magic wand... wonder of wonders! The pumpkin turned into a sparkling cart and the mice became six white horses, while the seventh mouse turned into a coachman, in a smart uniform and carrying a whip. Cinderella could hardly believe her eyes.

"I shall present you at Court. You will soon see that the Prince, in whose honour the ball is being held, will be enchanted by your loveliness. But remember! You must leave the ball at midnight and come home. For that is when the spell ends. Your cart will turn back into a pumpkin, the horses will become mice again and the coachman will turn back into a mouse and you will be dressed again in rags and wearing clogs instead of these beautiful slippers! Do you understand?" Cinderella smiled and said, "Yes, I understand!"

When Cinderella entered the ballroom at the palace, a hush fell. Everyone stopped in mid-sentence to admire her elegance, her beauty and grace.

"Who can that be?" people asked each other. The two stepsisters also wondered who the newcomer was, for never in a month of Sundays, would they ever have guessed that the beautiful girl was really poor Cinderella who talked to the cat!

When the prince set eyes on Cinderella, he was struck by her beauty. Walking over to her, he bowed deeply and asked her to dance. And to the great disappointment of all the young ladies, he danced with Cinderella all evening.

"Who are you, fair maiden?" the Prince kept asking her. But Cinderella only replied:

"What does it matter who I am! You will never see me again anyway."

"Oh, but I shall, I'm quite certain!" he replied.



Cinderella had a wonderful time at the ball. But, all of a sudden, she heard the sound of a clock: the first stroke of midnight! She remembered what the fairy had said, and without a word of goodbye she slipped from the Prince's arms and ran down the steps. As she ran she lost one of her slippers, but not for a moment did she dream of stopping to pick it up! If the last stroke of midnight were to sound... oh... what a disaster that would be! Out she fled and vanished into the night.

The Prince, who was now madly in love with her, picked up her slipper and said to his ministers,

"Go and search everywhere for the girl whose foot this slipper fits. I will never be content until I find her!" So the ministers tried the slipper on the foot of all the girls and on Cinderella's foot as well. Surprise! The slipper fitted perfectly.

"That awful untidy girl simply cannot have been at the ball," snapped the stepmother. "Tell the Prince he ought to marry one of my two daughters! Can't you see how ugly Cinderella is! Can't you see?"

Suddenly she broke off, for the fairy had appeared.

"That's enough!" she exclaimed, raising her magic stick. In a flash, Cinderella appeared in a splendid dress, shining with youth and beauty. Her stepmother and stepsisters gaped at her in amazement, and the ministers said,

"Come with us, fair maiden! The Prince awaits to present you with his engagement ring!" So Cinderella joyfully went with them, and lived happily ever after with her Prince. And as for the cat, he just said "Meow"!

Adapted from: <http://ivyjoy.com>

Pictures: 1. <http://images.amazon.com> 2. <http://www.mailorder2000.co.uk>

3. <http://www.sunkissvillas.com>



## Task 17

---

**Study the rule below.**

In the story of Cinderella in **Task 16** you find sentences:

"Now that **we have settled** the matter of dress, ..."

" ... and her father **had married** another woman, ..."

The first sentence is called Present Perfect and the second sentence is called Past Perfect.

**Present Perfect have/has + V3**

We use the present perfect to give new information or to announce a recent happening.

For example:

Denias **has lived** in Jakarta for seven years.

The students **have not cleaned** the classroom for days.

**Past perfect had + V3**

We use the past perfect to say something had already happened before this time.

For example:

Arnys **had just got** home when Virga phoned her.

Retro **had seen** The Calon Arang drama twice.

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 18

In pairs, have dialogues with your classmate based on the following situations. Include the expressions of thanking and responding to thanks.

- You thank your classmate for telling you the story of The Tooth Fairy.
- You thank your classmate for helping you make the clipping of American myths.
- You thank your classmate for preparing the Vampire costume for the Halloween party.
- You thank your classmate for giving you a good book of fairytales.
- You thank your classmate for helping you compile the versions of Cinderella story from around the world.



### Task 19

Recall one of the stories from overseas that you are already learnt and write it down in your own words.

## Music Corner

### Thank You by Dido

My tea's gone cold  
I'm wondering why  
I got out of bed at all  
The morning rain clouds up my window  
and I can't see at all  
And even if I could it'd all be grey  
but your picture on my wall it reminds me that  
it's not so bad  
it's not so bad  
  
I drank too much last night got bills to pay  
My head just feels in pain  
I missed the bus and there'll be hell today  
I'm late for work again  
And even if I'm there  
There'll all imply that  
I might not last the day  
And then you call me  
And it's not so bad  
It's not so bad

I want to thank you  
For giving me the best day of my life  
Oh just to be with you  
Is having the best day of my life  
  
Push the door, I'm home last  
And I'm soaking through and through  
Then you handed me a towel and all I see is you  
And even if my house falls down now,  
I wouldn't have a clue  
Because you're near me and



Taken from: <http://www.lyrics007.com>

Picture: <http://www>

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---



---



---

What I don't like in this unit:

---



---



---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---



---



---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

1) How to thank someone, for example:

- That was really nice of you.
- Thanks a million (for...)
- Thank you very much for your kindness.

2) How to respond to thanks, for example:

- You're welcome.
- It's no trouble at all.
- Don't mention it.

3) Past Perfect and Present Perfect

Present Perfect      have/has + V3

Past Perfect      had + V3

4) Narrative texts

A narrative text is a text that entertains and instructs the readers. It entertains because it deals with the unusual and unexpected development of events. It instructs because it teaches readers that problems should be confronted, and attempts made to resolve them.

# **WHAT A NICE HAIR CUT!**





<http://www.exposay.com>



<http://genasik.telkomsel.com>

You often compliment and congratulate others in many ways. When they do the same to you, you also respond to them. Do you know how to do them very well?

Reading and writing are very important skills. The texts that you read and write may include descriptive texts on people. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Look at the following photos of celebrities. Do you recognize them? In pairs, write down their names. Look at the example.



Number	Celebrity Name	Number	Celebrity Name
1	Drew Barrymore	5	.....
2	.....	6	.....
3	.....	7	.....
4	.....	8	.....

Pictures:

1. <http://www.poster.net>
2. <http://redlights.files-wordpress.com>
3. <http://www.suaramerdeka.com>
4. <http://www.batamevent.com>
5. <http://upload.wikimedia.org>
6. <http://www.aolcdn.com>
7. <http://office.indonesiacelebriti.com>
8. <http://www.wallpaperbase.com>



## Task 2

Based on Task 1, answer the following questions. The words in the box below may help you answer the questions. Then, compare your answers with your partner's.

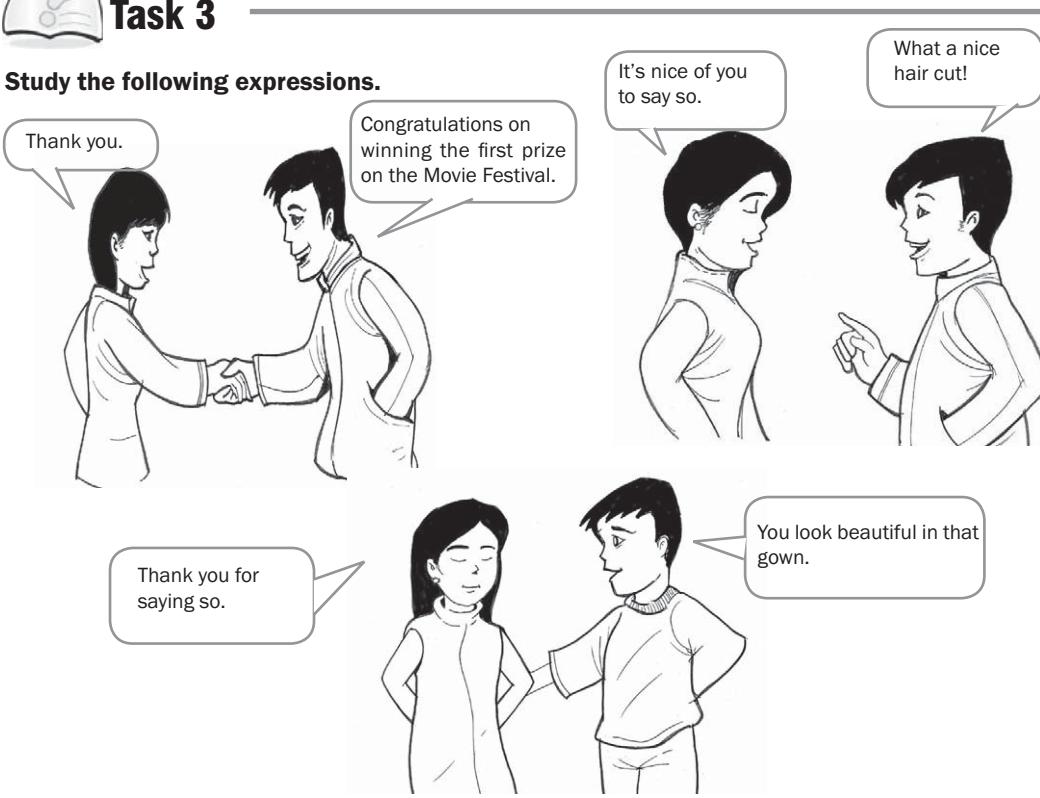
bearded ['bi:ədɪd] (ks)	:	berjenggot
charming ['tʃa:min] (ks)	:	mempesona
cute [kjut:] (ks)	:	manis
gorgeous ['gɔ:dʒəs] (ks)	:	menawan
gown [gaun] (kb)	:	gaun
slim [slɪm] (ks)	:	ramping
wavy ['weɪvi] (ks)	:	bergelombang

1. Is any of them your favourite actor or actress?
2. If none of them is your favourite actor or actress, who is your favourite actor/actress?
3. What makes you adore him/her?
4. What do you know about him/her?
5. Do you want to be like him/her?



## Task 3

Study the following expressions.



## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 4

---

Listen carefully to the dialogue. Write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false. Correct the false statements. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Situation:** Ayu won tickets to watch a movie in the cinema.

#### Questions

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	Ayu is wearing a cute hat.	F	Denias is wearing a cute hat.
2.	Ayu won a free ticket from the radio.		
3.	Ayu asks Denias to go to the cinema with her.		
4.	Denias refuses Ayu's invitation.		
5.	Denias cannot come at 7.		
6.	Ayu and Denias are going to the cinema tomorrow evening.		

---



### Task 5

---

#### Study the following expressions.

In the dialogue in **Task 4** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions.

Expressions	Functions
• You look cute with that hat.	Complimenting
• Congratulations!	Congratulating
• Thank you for saying so. • Thank you.	Responding to compliments and congratulations

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• What a ...!</li><li>• That's a very nice ...</li><li>• I like your ...</li><li>• You're looking good!</li></ul>	Complimenting
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Congratulations on winning ...</li><li>• I'd like to congratulate you on ...</li><li>• I must congratulate you on your ...</li><li>• Well done.</li></ul>	Congratulating
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Thanks.</li><li>• Oh, not really.</li><li>• It's nice of you to say so.</li><li>• How kind of you to say so.</li></ul>	Responding to compliments and congratulations



## Task 6

Listen to the dialogues to complete the missing expressions. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

- 1) Ruben : Congratulations on getting a free coupon to borrow movies from 'Nemo' DVD rental.  
Anita : Thank you.
- 2) Adib : I like your shoes.  
Denias : ....  
Adib : Where did you buy them?  
Denias : I bought them in the new department store near my house.
- 3) Arnys : .... Everybody in the club loves your work.  
Marcell : Thank you.  
Arnys : Where did you get the idea?  
Marcell : A scene in The Lord of The Rings inspired me.
- 4) Retno : I saw your performance on TV yesterday. .... You have impressed the jury.  
Andi : Thanks. I worked hard to prepare everything.
- 5) Virga : It seems that your diet programme works on you. You're looking good.  
Ayu : ....
- 6) Anita : ....  
Retno : Oh, not really.  
Anita : Where did you get it?  
Retno : I made it myself.



## Task 7

---

In pairs, complete the following conversation with the expressions in the box. Then, perform it with your partner.

You look charming in that white gown.  
What a gorgeous boy!  
Congratulations on your birthday.  
Thank you.

- Arnys : Congratulations on your 16th birthday.  
Retno : Thank you.  
Anita : 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
Retno : Thank you for saying so. You look so sweet in that red vest.  
Anita : Thanks. Look, Denias is coming! 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
Arnys : He looks so cute with his new hair cut.  
Retno : Yes, you're right.  
Denias : Hi, Retno. 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
Retno : Thanks. By the way, congratulations on winning the first prize on Photography Competition.  
Denias : 4) \_\_\_\_\_  
Anita : Your idea was brilliant. I think you're a genius.  
Denias : Oh, not really.  
Retno : Anyway, let's start the party.
- 



## Task 8

---

### Let's say it right.

In the conversation in Task 7 you find the word 'gown' and 'gorgeous'. How do you pronounce it?

gown [gaʊn]                  gorgeous ['go:dʒəs]

### Note:

The letter 'g' is pronounced 'g' when followed by 'o'. Here are some other examples.

goal [gəʊl]                  gossip ['gɒsɪp]  
golf [gɔlf]                  govern ['gʌvən]  
goose [qu:s]

---



## Task 9

---

Have dialogues with your partner based on the following situations.

- Your classmate got the best mark on the Drama class.
  - Your classmate wears a brown sweater. He looks great in it.
  - You and your classmate attend a birthday party. Your classmate wears a nice suit.
  - Your classmate won a free ticket to watch Hillary Duff's concert in Singapore.
- 



## Task 10

---

Listen to the following monologue and fill in the missing words. The listening script is in the Appendix.

### My Favourite Actor

My favourite 1) \_\_\_\_\_ is Ringgo Agus Rahman. I like him because he is a good actor. He is also very 2) \_\_\_\_\_. Moreover, he is 3) \_\_\_\_\_. He has bright 4) \_\_\_\_\_ and slanting 5) \_\_\_\_\_. His facial expression makes him look funny. If I had a chance to meet him, I would ask him to sign my photograph.

---



## Task 11

---

Tell the class your favourite celebrity and his or her physical appearance. Look at Task 10 as a model.

---



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 12

---

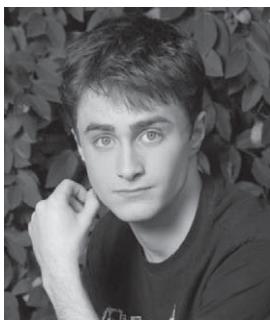
Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text and fill in the table. Look at the example. Compare your answers with a partner's.

active ['æktrɪv] (ks)	:	aktif
bald [bɔ:lд] (ks)	:	botak
careful ['keəfʊl] (ks)	:	hati-hati; teliti
careless ['keələs] (ks)	:	sembrono
cheerful ['tʃi:əfʊl] (ks)	:	ceria

confident ['kɒnfɪdənt] (ks)	:	percaya diri
determined [dɪ'tə:mɪnd] (ks)	:	tegas
diligent ['dɪlɪdʒənt] (ks)	:	rajin
energetic [enə'dʒetɪk] (ks)	:	enerjik
extrovert ['ekstrəvə:t] (ks)	:	ekstrovet
friendly ['frendli] (ks)	:	ramah
generous ['dʒenərəs] (ks)	:	dermawan; murah hati
humorous ['hju:mərəs] (ks)	:	humoris
intelligent [ɪn'telɪdʒənt] (ks)	:	pintar
introvert ['intrəvə:t] (ks)	:	introvet
lazy ['leɪzɪ] (ks)	:	malas
muscular ['mʌskjʊlə] (ks)	:	berotot
sensitive ['sensɪtɪv] (ks)	:	sensitif
shy [ʃaɪ] (ks)	:	malu
skinny ['skɪni] (ks)	:	kurus
slanting ['slæntɪŋ] (ks)	:	sipit
stingy ['stɪndʒɪ] (ks)	:	pelit
stubborn ['stʌbən] (ks)	:	keras kepala
stupid ['stju:pɪd] (ks)	:	bodoh
wrinkle ['rɪŋkl] (ks)	:	keriput

### The Rising Stars

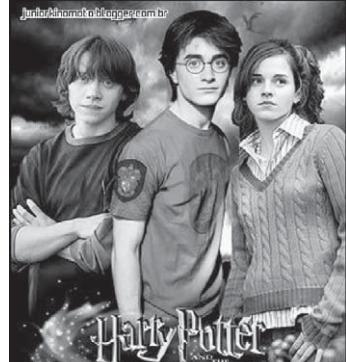
The success of Harry Potter movies has made Daniel Radcliffe, Emma Watson, and Rupert Grint the centre of public attention. The three rising stars have grown up on screen and grown into his or her role as an actor.



<http://www.enjoyfrance.com>

Daniel Jacob Radcliffe was born in Fulham, London, 23 July 1989. His nickname is Dan. He is the only child of Alan Radcliffe and Marcia Gresham. Dan has dark brown hair and blue eyes. His height is about 168 cm. He is a loyal, shy, down-to-earth, and humorous person. He is also intelligent and somewhat mysterious. He loves football, Formula One racing and gymnastics.

Emma Charlotte Duerre Watson was born in Paris, France, 15 April 1990. Her nickname is Emma. She is the daughter of Chris Watson and Jacqueline Luesby. She lived in Paris until the age of five before she moved with her mother and younger brother Alexander to Oxford, England. Emma has wavy brown hair. Her height is 165 cm. She is a generous, friendly, and determined person. She also said that she is a little bit stubborn. Emma loves dancing, singing, tennis and art.



<http://data1.blog.de>



<http://readingharry.com>



<http://images.google.co.id>

Rupert Alexander Grint was born in Hertfordshire, England, 24 August, 1988. His nickname is Rupert. He is the oldest son of Nigel Grint and Jo Parsons. Rupert has bright red hair.

His height is 180 cm. He is an active and humorous person. He's also very humble. However, he is the shyest of the three Harry Potter co-stars. Rupert is arachnophobic. It means that he is afraid of spiders. He likes all kinds of music, but his favourite is classic rock and roll. His favourite school subject is Chemistry.

These Hogwarts trio have been really good friends, not only on screen but also in real life. Their secret of friendship is that they always understand each other although they have different backgrounds and personalities.

Adapted from: <http://www.wikipedia.org>

**Complete the column below based on the text.**

Names	Physical Appearance	Characters
Daniel Radcliffe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hair : brown</li><li>• Eyes : blue</li><li>• ...</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• loyal</li><li>• shy</li><li>• down-to-earth</li><li>• ...</li><li>• ...</li><li>• ...</li></ul>
Emma Watson		
Rupert Grint		



## Task 13

**Study the following note.**

The text in Task 12 is a descriptive text. Basically, the aim of a descriptive text is to give information to the readers by making them see, hear, feel, etc. what is described in the text.

A descriptive text focuses on the characteristic features of a person, an animal, or a particular thing. Descriptive texts often use neutral and objective language. The present tense is mostly used in descriptive texts. The past tense is also used to describe an object that does not exist anymore.



## Task 14

**In pairs, study the following explanation.**

- To describe a person's physical appearance, you can use the following words.

Physical Appearances					
Height	Body	Age	Hair	Face	Eyes
tall	slim	young	long	round	big
short	thin	old	short	oval	round
	plump	teenager	bald	square	blue
	fat	in 20s, 30s,	straight	wrinkles	brown
	skinny	40s	curly	pale	green
	muscular		wavy	bearded	slanting
			black	shaved	
			red		
			brown		

- To describe a person's characters (qualities & habitual behaviour), you can use the following words.

Characters	
careful	careless
intelligent	stupid
confident	shy
extrovert	introvert
generous	stingy
diligent	lazy

Characters	
active	
cheerful	
determined	
energetic	
friendly	
humble	
humorous	
sensitive	
stubborn	



## Task 15

Complete the following text about Mike Mohede with the words in the box. Look at the example.

### The Cute Mike



Michael Prabawa Mohede was born on November 7, 1983. He is better known as Mike. He has a beautiful voice. He is the winner of the second season of Indonesian Idol. He also represented Indonesia in Asian Idol.

Mike has a ... smile. His body is ... His ... cheeks make him cute. Mike is a nice and ... person. He is very friendly to everyone. Some of his fans call him "Teddy Bear" because of his plump body and nice character.

Picture: <http://yance.files.wordpress.com>

cheerful      chubby      nice      plump      beautiful



## Task 16

Look at the following celebrities. In pairs, describe their physical appearances. Look at the example.

1.



Sherina Munaf

#### Physical appearance:

- She is tall.
- Her body is slim.
- She is a teenager.
- She has black straight hair.
- Her face is oval.
- She has round eyes.

2.



Tobey Maguire

Physical appearance:

3.



Hillary Duff

Physical appearance:

4.



David Beckham

Physical appearance:

5.



Kirsten Dunst

Physical appearance:

6.



Ade Rai

Physical appearance:

7.



Jang Nara

Physical appearance:

**Pictures:** 1. <http://corefight.or.id> 2. <http://www.boxofficepsychics.com> 3. <http://www.wallpapergate.com>  
 4. <http://img2.timeinc.net> 5. <http://www.image-search.com> 6. <http://www.yarisgroovy.com> 7. <http://english.kbs.co.kr>



## Task 17

Ask three of your classmates to describe the physical appearance of their idols. Then, record them in this table.

No	Your classmates	Their idols	Physical appearances
1			
2			
3			



## Task 18

---

Based on the data in Task 17, write descriptions of two idols. Ask your classmates to give you feedback to revise your descriptions. Put your revised drafts in the school magazine.

---

### C. Let's Do More



## Task 19

---

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box.

Congratulations!  
What a nice red sweater!  
You're looking good.  
I like your ribbon.

Retno : Hi, Anita. 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Anita : It's nice of you to say so.

Retno : I've never seen you in that sweater. Is that new?

Anita : Well, my sister bought me this sweater yesterday.

Retno : I see.

Anita : Anyway, 2) \_\_\_\_\_ It makes you look sweet.

Retno : Oh, not really. Look, Virga is coming!

Anita : Hi, Virga. 4) \_\_\_\_\_ Who did your haircut?

Virga : Thanks. My Mom did it.

Retno : By the way, I heard you won a quiz on the radio yesterday.

5) \_\_\_\_\_

Virga : Thank you.

---



### Cultural Tips

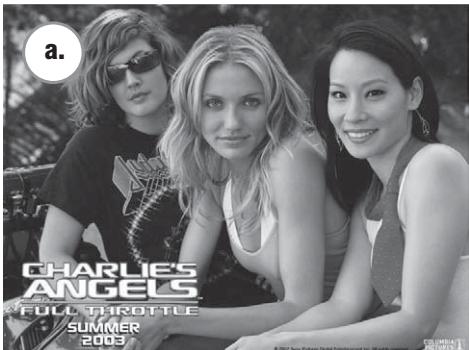
#### The Way They Dress in America

- Men: socks should match your suit. No leg should show between pant hem and shoe. Remove your hat when indoors.
- Women: do not overdress for daytime or wear noisy jewellery. American women do not wear a lot of make-up to the office. Low-cut blouses, short skirts, and tight clothing are not appropriate office attire.



## Task 20

Work in groups of three. Describe the physical appearance of each character of the following movies.



**CHARLIE'S ANGELS**  
<http://wallpaper.diq.ru>



**NUTTY PROFESSOR II**  
<http://www.klumps.com>



**PRINCESS HOURS**  
<http://jadehwang.files.wordpress.com>

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 21

Find two texts describing celebrities. Then, write them down in your own words.



### Task 22

Have a dialogue with your partner. Include expressions of complimenting, congratulating, and responding to compliments/congratulations.

- Your classmate wears a cute bracelet. She made it herself.
- Your classmate has just joined a singing competition. He won the second place.
- Your classmate has just been chosen as the captain of the class.
- You and your classmate are going to the cinema to watch Aming's new movie. You wear a new shirt. Your classmate wears a nice blue skirt.



### Task 23

Work in pairs. Write down a description of somebody you know. Let your classmate guess who he or she is.



### Task 24

Write a short text about your idol.

## Music Corner

You can find expressions of compliment in many songs. One of those songs is entitled *You Are So Beautiful* by Westlife.

### *You Are So Beautiful*

You are so beautiful  
To me  
You are so beautiful  
To me  
Can't you see  
You're everything I hoped for  
You're everything I need  
You are so beautiful to me



Taken from:  
<http://www.lyricsandsongs.com>

You are so wonderful  
To me  
You are so wonderful  
To me  
Can't you see  
You're everything I hoped for  
You're everything I need  
You are so beautiful (3x)  
To me

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to compliment someone, for example:
  - What a ...!
  - That's a very nice ...
  - I like your ...
  - You're looking good!
- 2) How to congratulate someone, for example:
  - Congratulations!
  - I'd like to congratulate you on ...
  - I must congratulate you on your ...
  - Well done.
- 3) How to respond to compliments and congratulations, for example:
  - Thanks.
  - Oh, not really.
  - It's nice of you to say so.
- 4) Descriptive text is a text which is telling about the characteristics of a particular thing, such as person's characteristics or description.

## UNIT VIII

I FIND IT VERY  
INTERESTING.





<http://img.dailymail.com>

At times, you feel excited and you want to express it.

Do you know how to express it appropriately?

Do you sometimes read and/ or write descriptions of animals? Can you read and write such texts effectively? Let's explore descriptive texts and more in this unit.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Work in pairs to answer the following questions.

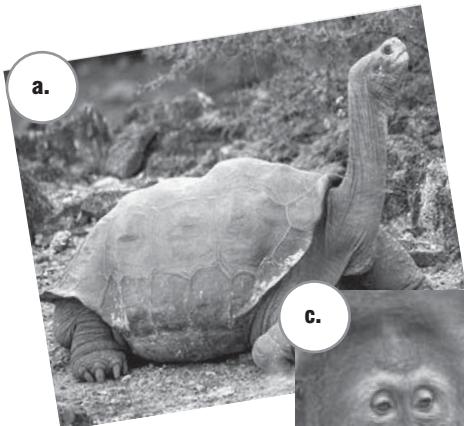
1. What is your favourite animal?
2. Do you own one? What is its name?
3. Describe it. Use the points below to help you describe your pet (animal).
  - a. size (length and height)
  - b. weight
  - c. colour
  - d. special body part and its use
  - e. how it moves



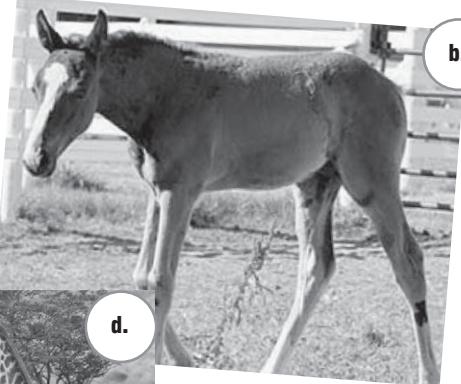
### Task 2

Look at the following animals. Name each according to its description.

a.



b.



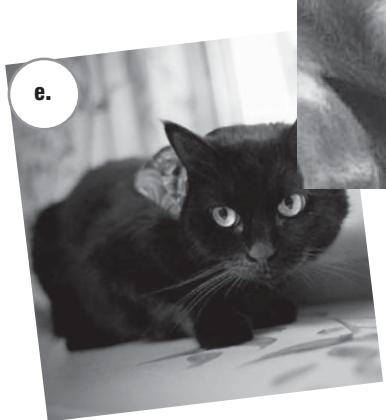
c.



d.



e.



f.



Picture:

- a. <http://www.raskraska.ru>   b. <http://wwwimage.cbsnews.com>   c. <http://images.jupiterimages.com>  
d. <http://animals.nationalgeographic.com>   e. <http://blogs.kansascity.com>   f. <http://img.dailymail.co.uk>

	Ah Meng is a female Orangutan. She belongs to the rare Sumatran Orangutan species. She is a tourism icon of Singapore.
	Harriet is a Galápagos tortoise. She was born in 1830. Harriet spends a majority of her day napping at her home pond. Her favourite food is hibiscus flowers.
	Gemina is a giraffe who lives in the Santa Barbara Zoo. She becomes notable for the peculiar deformity in her neck, which is bent by almost ninety degrees.
	The mule Idaho Gem was born on 4 May 2003. It is the first clone born in the horse family.
	Nora is a gray tabby cat. Nora was named after the artist Leonora Carrington. She is famous for “playing” the piano.
	India “Willie” Bush is US President’s George W. Bush’s and Laura Bush’s black cat. He has lived with the Bush family for more than ten years.

## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 3

Listen to the following monologue about Andi's pets and then fill in the table with correct information. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

Andi's Pets	Descriptions		
Felix (cat)	colour weight habit	black and white 4 kg It likes to sleep for hours.	
Deborah (cat)	colour weight habit	...	
Brandy (Dog)	colour height habit	...	
Bora (Hamster)	colour habit	...	



## Task 4

---

### Let's say it right.

In the monologue in Task 3 you find the word 'male'.

How do you pronounce it?

male [meɪl]

### Note:

The vowel letter 'a' is pronounced 'eɪ' when followed by a consonant plus '-e'. Here are some other examples.

came [keɪm] same [seɪm]

change [tʃeɪndʒ] take [teɪk]

game [geɪm] tame [teɪm]

---



## Task 5

---

Tell the class your favourite pet. Refer to the monologue in Task 3 as a model.

---



## Task 6

---

Listen to the following dialogue between Anita and Denias. Then, choose the right statements by circling the letter a, b, c, or d. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Situation: Anita and Denias are talking about a famous piano playing cat.**

1. a. Denias has read the article in the latest school magazine.  
b. Denias hasn't read the article in the latest school magazine.  
c. Denias has read all the articles in the latest school magazine.  
d. Denias hasn't bought the school magazine.
2. a. Anita asks Denias to write an article in the school magazine.  
b. Anita asks Denias to read an article in the school magazine.  
c. Anita asks Denias whether he has read an article in the school magazine.  
d. Anita asks Denias whether he has an article about the school magazine.
3. a. The article is about a strange tabby cat.  
b. The article is about a cat playing the piano.  
c. The article is about a strange piano.  
d. The article is about a singing cat.

4. a. Nora is a cat who rarely plays the piano.  
b. Nora is a gray tabby cat who plays the piano.  
c. Nora is a tabby cat who has the gray piano.  
d. Nora is a gray cat who does not like piano.
  5. a. Denias is going to search information about Nora on the internet.  
b. Denias is going to promote Nora on the internet.  
c. Denias is going to write an article about Nora on the internet.  
d. Denisa is going to search information about Nora's cat on the internet.
- 



## Task 7

---

**In pairs, study the following expressions.**

### Saying You Are Excited

In the dialogue in **Task 4** you find some expressions used to say that you are excited, such as:

- Really? That's wonderful.
- I find it very interesting.

Here are some other expressions.

- Fantastic!
  - That's terrific!
  - (How) exciting!
  - I'm very enthusiastic!
  - I cannot deny my enthusiasm for ...
- 



## Task 8

---

**What do you say in the following situations?**

- Your classmate tells you that he will give you one of her kittens.
  - Your classmate tells you that he will invite you to see his new pet.
  - Your classmate asks you to go with him to watch an animal contest.
- 



## Task 9

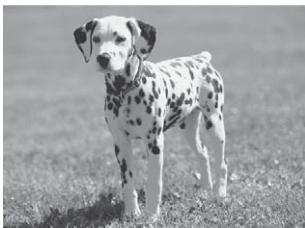
---

**Have dialogues with your partner based on the situations below. Include the expressions to show that you are excited.**



<http://www.thejessicawells.com>

You have just found a cute hamster at the backyard of your classmate's house. It is a white and brown hamster. It has a very small nose. It runs very quickly. You really want to keep it.



<http://4simpsons.files.wordpress.com>

Your classmate has a Dalmatian. It is 0.5 m tall. It has a red ribbon around on its neck. It is very smart and tame. One day your classmate took his Dalmatian to join a dog contest in your town. His Dalmatian was chosen as the Most Favourite Pet.



<http://www.desktoprating.com>

You had wanted to have a pet for a long time. One day your father bought you a parrot. It is a lovely one. It is quite colourful. It has six colours on its body: red, blue, green, yellow, white, and black. It also sings beautifully. You tell your classmate about the good news.



<http://www.gotthelookpersiancats.com>

Your classmate was given a cat for his birthday present. When you visit his house, he shows you his cat. It is a big white cat of 8 kg. It has soft thick fur. It looks beautiful. Your classmate tells you that you may keep it for two days. You are very excited.



## Read and Write



## Task 10

**Read the following advertisements on animals for sale on the internet. Then, in pairs, answer the questions.**



<http://upload.wikimedia.org>



<http://www.cat-domain.com>

### Beautiful Golden Retriever

I have a beautiful 2 year old Golden Retriever with silky light brown hair. I have named her Goldie. She is about 0.5 m tall, and weighs 20 kg. She is a very good pet. She is great with kids and other dogs. If you are interested in my dog, please call Aji at (021) 532 444, or email ajipurnomo@yahoo.com.

### Exotic Shorthair

I have an exotic brown female cat. Her name is Ruby. She is one year old. She weighs about 8 kg. She is extremely affectionate and playful. If you are interested in my cat, please call Dina at (031) 332 222, or email dina05@yahoo.com.



<http://www.horseclassified.com>

### Amarillo

“Amarillo” is a dark brown stallion (adult male horse) of 6 years old. He is 153 cm tall, and weighs 1200 lbs. He is quiet in nature. If you are interested, please visit 9107 Ridge Road, Castorland, New York, or call 315 376 5915.

## Questions

1. Describe the dog in the first ad.

name	:	...
type	:	...
age	:	...
colour	:	...
height	:	...
weight	:	...
other characteristics	:	...

2. If you are interested in the dog in the first advertisement, how can you get it?

3. Describe the cat in the second advertisement.

name	:	...
type	:	...
age	:	...
colour	:	...
height	:	...
weight	:	...
other characteristics	:	...

4. If you are interested in the cat in the second advertisement, how can you get it?

5. Describe the horse in the third advertisement.

name	:	...
type	:	...
age	:	...
colour	:	...
height	:	...
weight	:	...
other characteristics	:	...

6. If you are interested in the horse in the third advertisement, how can you get it?

---

### Note:

- advertisement [əd've:tɪzment] (kb)
  - advertisement is announcement which tries to make sure that people know that something is for sale, that something is going to happen, that a show is on.
  - advertisement is commonly abbreviated as “ad”.
-



## Task 11

Read the following information about celebrities and their pets and then complete the statements. First, study the following words.

curlie [ˈkʌdl̩] (kkt)	:	memeluk
fierce [ˈfɪəs] (ks)	:	galak
fur [fə:] (kb)	:	rambut binatang
marking [ˈmɑ:kɪŋ] (kb)	:	tanda
poodle [ˈpu:dł] (kb)	:	anjing pudel (berambut keriting)
pug [pʌg] (kb)	:	jenis anjing kecil berhidung pesek
puppy [ˈpʌpi] (kb)	:	anak anjing
shepherd [ˈʃepəd] (kb)	:	anjing gembala



### Jessica Alba and Her Pets

Jessica Alba looks very cheerful with her two pugs. She named them Sid and Nancy. The two dogs look similar. Both have white fur and brown markings. They also wear the same red ribbon around their necks.



### Hilary Duff and Her Pet

Hilary takes a few moments to get down with her little dog. She named it Lola. Lola is a cute Chihuahua. Its colour is light brown. It looks pretty in pink.



### Jake Gyllenhaal and His Pet

Jake has a German shepherd. Its name is Atticus. It is mostly brown with large black marking. Its height is around 75 cm. It looks fierce.



### Joss Stone and Her Pet

Joss Stone really loves to cuddle his poodle puppy. Its name is Dusty. It is white. The hair is a bit curly and covers half of its eyes. It looks cute in the pink clothes.

Adapted from: <http://pets.aol.com/>

#### Questions

1. Sid and Nancy are ...'s pets. They have ... fur and ... markings.
2. Hillary Duff's chihuahua is named ... Its colour is ...
3. Atticus is of .. type. Its colour is ... It is around ... tall.
4. Jake Gyllenhaal's dog looks ....
5. Dusty is a ... It belongs to ....

---

#### Note:

The text in Task 11 is a descriptive text. As explained in Unit 7, a descriptive text is basically aimed at giving information to the readers about characteristic features of a thing, person, or animal. Descriptive texts often use neutral and objective language. The present tense is mostly used in descriptive texts. The past tense is also used to describe an object that does not exist anymore.

---



### Task 12

---

Match the words with their definitions. Compare your answers with a classmate's.

curlie

way of doing things

fierce

striped black, brown, and grey cat

marking

very angry and likely to attack

fur

coloured patterns

tabby

soft coat of an animal

tame

to hug someone or something

behaviour

not wild



## Task 13

Describe the following animals.



Descriptions

<http://www.cfasouthwest.org>



Descriptions

<http://www.goodbyecitylife.com>



Descriptions

<http://www.fuzzypups.com>



Descriptions

<http://www2.mcdaniel.edu>



Descriptions

<http://r306.files.wordpress.com>



### By the Way...

Surveys say that nearly 10 % of American households dress their pets in Halloween costumes.



## Task 14

Write a short paragraph about your pet or an animal that you like most. Use the following guidelines.

- What is your pet's name?
- What is it?
- How old is it?
- Describe it.
  - size
  - height
  - colour
  - weight
  - habit

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 15

Complete the following dialogues with correct words, phrases, and expressions in the box.

**Situation 1: Denias and his sister are going to watch a circus.**

elephant show

Fantastic!

circus

smart

- Denias : Tomorrow my sister and I are going to watch the... at the town square.
- Arnys : How exciting! I went there two days ago with my parents. You have to see the elephant show.
- Denias : Well, I didn't know if they have that kind of show.
- Arnys : They have the greatest ... I have ever seen. They are very ... Elephants are really good at remembering things.
- Denias : .. By the way, would you join us tomorrow?
- Arnys : I'd love to.

**Situation 2: Ayu really wants to have a pet.**

pet

Really? That's wonderful.

promise

kitten

- Virga : Mom, may I have a ....?
- Mother : Sure.
- Virga : ... Thanks.
- Mother : But you have to ... me to take care of it.
- Virga : I will.
- Mother : Anyway, what would you have?
- Virga : I think I'll take care of my friend's ... She has five little kittens.  
She offered me one yesterday.
- Mother : Okay.



## Task 16

---

Find two texts describing animals in the internet and/ or library. Rewrite and describe the animals in your own words.

---



## Task 17

---

Find five animals in your neighbourhood, and then describe them.

No.	Animals	Descriptions

---

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 18

Have a dialogue with your partner based on the following situation.

You and your classmate go to the pet shop. You see a very cute little puppy. You really want it. However, you remember that your parents will not let you have any pet. Then, your classmate offers you a smart solution. You will have the pet and keep it at your classmate's house.



### Task 19

Write a description of an animal that you like best as a pet.



### Cultural Tips

Eating horses and ponies is taboo in British culture and causes friction with its nearest European neighbour, France.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>

## Music Corner

There have been some songs about animals. One of them is a famous old song about a pet by Patti Page.

### How Much is That Doggie in the Window

How much is that doggie in the window?  
(arf! arf!)  
The one with the waggle tail  
How much is that doggie in the window?  
(arf! arf!)  
I do hope that doggie's for sale  
  
I must take a trip to California  
And leave my poor sweetheart alone  
If he has a dog, he won't be lonesome  
And the doggie will have a good home

I read in the paper there are robbers (roof! roof!)  
With flashlights that shine in the dark  
My love needs a doggie to protect him  
And scare them away with one bark

I don't want a bunny or a kitty  
I don't want a parrot that talks  
I don't want a bowl of little fishies  
He can't take a goldfish for a walk

How much is that doggie in the window? (arf! arf!)  
The one with the waggle tail  
How much is that doggie in the window?(arf! arf!)  
I do hope that doggie's for sale  
I do hope that doggie's for sale



Taken from: <http://www.metrolyrics.co>  
Picture: <http://www.sfgate.com>

**Note:**

(arf! arf!) sounds like a small dog.  
(roof! roof!) sounds like a bigger dog.

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to say that you are excited, for example:
  - Really? That's wonderful.
  - I find it very interesting.
  - Fantastic!
  - That's terrific!
  - (How) exciting!
  - I find it very interesting!
  - I'm very enthusiastic!
- 2) A descriptive text is basically aimed at giving information to the readers about characteristic features of a thing, person, or animal. Descriptive texts often use neutral and objective language. The present tense is mostly used in descriptive texts. The past tense is also used to describe an object that does not exist anymore.

# UNIT IX

## I DON'T BELIEVE IT!





<http://www.imnotobsessed.com>

In your daily life you often find things that surprise you or things you do not believe. When you are in such a situation, you need to express your feelings. Do you know how to do that?

To follow the development, you need to read news regularly. The texts that you read may include news items on celebrities around the world. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks with up to date news.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Study the following pictures and then answer the questions based on your experience. Compare your answers with your partner's.



#### Questions

1. Do you like reading magazines or newspapers?
2. What is the name of the magazine or newspaper you often read?
3. How often is it published? Weekly or monthly?
4. What column do you like the most? Is it sports, entertainment, business, or politics? Why?

## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 2

---

Listen to the following monologue to complete the missing information. The listening script is in the Appendix.

#### Wilson Returns after Suicide Attempt

The Jakarta Post

Thursday, February 21, 2008

Los Angeles: Owen Wilson is going back to work for the first time since his reported ..... attempt last summer.

Wilson, 39, and co-star Jennifer Aniston begin shooting March 10 on 20<sup>th</sup> Century Fox's Marley & Me, the studio said. It tells the tales of a couple who ..... a dog to give parenthood a trial run, then find the mischievous pooch more than they bargained for.

After he was ..... last August, Wilson dropped out of his summer's ..... Tropic Thunder, which already had been in ..... He was replaced by Mathew McConaughey.

Due out Christmas Day, Marley & Me is directed by David Frankel and based on the book by John Grogan, Alan Arkin co-stars.



*Picture:* <http://www.imnotobsessed.com>



### Task 3

---

Study and pronounce the words below before you listen to a dialogue between Arnys and Marcell. Then, state whether the statements are true (T) or false (F). The listening script is in the Appendix.

abuse [ə'bju:s] (kb)	:	penyalahgunaan
accomplice [ə'kʌmplɪs] (kb)	:	kaki tangan
alleged [ə'ledʒd] (ks)	:	diduga sebagai
apprehend [æpri'hend] (kkt)	:	menahan
arrest [ə'rest] (kkt)	:	menangkap
dealer ['di:lə] (kb)	:	pedagang
drug [drʌg] (kb)	:	obat-obatan
raid [reɪd] (kb)	:	razia

**Situation: Arnys and Marcell meet at the canteen. They talk about Roy Marten.**

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	Arnys and Marcell go to the canteen together.	F	They meet at the canteen.
2.	Arnys brings bad news.		
3.	Denias has read The Jakarta Post.		
4.	Roy Marten was accused of being a drug dealer.		
5.	Roy Marten was arrested together with four other people.		
6.	Roy Marten was apprehended in Surabaya.		
7.	The police found 47 grams of crystal meth.		



## Task 4

**Study the following expressions.**

In **Task 3** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions.

Expressions	Functions
Are you serious?	Expressing disbelief
Really?	Expressing surprise

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• No! I don't believe it!</li><li>• You must be joking!</li><li>• You're kidding!</li></ul>	Expressing disbelief
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• That's very surprising.</li><li>• What a surprise!</li><li>• My goodness!</li></ul>	Expressing surprise



## By the Way...

The word "News" is actually an acronym standing for the 4 cardinal compass points: North, East, West, and South.



## Task 5

---

**Listen to the dialogues to complete the missing expressions. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

- 1) Andi : Did you know that Heath Ledger died?  
Arnys : You're kidding.  
Andi : No, I'm not. I read it in a magazine this morning.  
Arnys : Oh, my goodness!
  
  - 2) Retno : Kian Egan has announced his engagement to Jodi Albert.  
Anita : ....  
Retno : Why should I? The engagement was announced in the newspaper.  
Anita : Oh, he breaks my heart.
  
  - 3) Virga : Did you know that Mulan Kwok has changed her name into Mulan Jameela?  
Adib : ... How did you know?  
Virga : I read it in my mom's magazine.
  
  - 4) Ayu : Ariel 'Peterpan' and his wife are getting a divorce. I read the news in the newspaper.  
Denias : ....  
Ayu : Of course. I'll bring the newspaper and show it to you.
  
  - 5) Marcell : Your rock idol is caught using drugs.  
Ruben : Ahmad Albar? ....  
Marcell : I say the truth. I read the news this morning.
- 



## Task 6

---

### Let's say it right.

In the dialogue between Arnys and Marcell in **Task 3** you find the word 'news'. How do you pronounce it?

news [nju:z]

### Note:

The letter 'n' is pronounced 'nj' when followed by '-e'.

Here are some other examples.

knew [nju:]

new [nju:]

newsletter ['nju:zletə]

newspaper ['nju:zpeɪpə]



## Task 7

---

In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate. Include the expressions of disbelief and surprise.

- You tell your classmate that his/her idol has broken up with his girlfriend because he has an affair with a new model.
  - You tell your classmate that your favourite actress is going to get married with her boyfriend next month.
  - You tell your classmate that an actor that he/she doesn't like was nominated for The Best Actor of The Year.
- 



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 8

---

Read the text and guess the meanings of the following words based on the context. Do it in pairs.

allegation [ælɪ'geɪʃn] (kb)	: ....
discharge [dɪs'tʃa:dʒ] (kkt)	: ....
estranged ['ɪstreɪndʒd] (ks)	: ....
fortitude ['fɔ:tɪtju:d] (kb)	: ....
investigation [investɪ'geɪʃn] (kb)	: ....
offset [ɒf'set] (kkt)	: ....
possession [pə'zeʃn] (kb)	: ....
psychiatric [saɪktri'ætrɪk] (ks)	: ....
restraining order [rɪ'streɪning 'ɔ:rdə] (kb)	: ....
testimony ['testɪməni] (kb)	: ....
trivialize ['trɪviəlaɪz] (kkt)	: ....

### Britney Spears - Lutfi Investigated for 'Drugging' Spears

Caption: Britney Spears is followed by a frenzy of photographers while shopping at Fred Segal in West Hollywood. Los Angeles, California - 15.02.08

Britney Spears estranged manager Sam Lutfi is under investigation by Los Angeles police over allegations he drugged the troubled star. Lutfi was served a restraining order earlier this month (Feb 2008) and was instructed to keep his distance from the Spears family after Britney's mother Lynne claimed the manager had admitted he



drugged her daughter. According to website TMZ, the allegations are now being investigated by the Major Crimes Division of the Los Angeles Police Department. Lutfi's new spokesman Michael Sands tells TMZ.com he is aware of the investigation. Spears had been hospitalized for psychiatric evaluation at Los Angeles UCLA Medical Centre, but was discharged last week (06 Feb 2008) after a seven-day stay.

Adapted from: <http://www.contactmusic.com>



## Task 9

**Study the rule below.**

In the news item in Task 8 you find the sentence:  
“ ... the allegations are now being investigated by ... ”

The sentence is the passive form of the present continuous.

The pattern is: **am/is/are      being + V3**

For example:

The patient **is being examined** by the doctor.

The students **are being given** the lesson about drugs.



## Task 10

**Read the text again and then answer the questions below. Compare your answers with your partner's.**

### Questions

1. Who is Sam Lutfi?
2. Why was he instructed to keep his distance from the Spears family?
3. Who is Lynne? What did she do?
4. Who is Lutfi's new spokesman? What did he say to TMZ.com?
5. Where did Britney Spears get her psychiatric evaluation? How long did she spend her time there?



## Task 11

**Study the following notes.**

The text in **Task 8** is a news item telling information about event of the day which is considered newsworthy or important. The text includes:

- newsworthy event : recounts the event in summary form.
- background events : elaborate what happened, to whom, in what circumstances.
- sources : comments by participants in, witnesses to and authorities expert on the event.



## Task 12

Complete the following text with the words in the box. You may use your dictionary. Look at the example.

response    campaigns    public    friend    case  
artists      danger       theme     infotainment    user

### Roy Marten's Arrest

Thursday, November 22, 2007

Roy Marten's arrest for narcotic possession has received a different 1) response from the infotainment industry. Nearly all the 2) ... broadcast by private TV stations has tried to offset Roy's alleged crime by presenting the humanitarian 3) ... of "a wife's fortitude".

At least Roy has been seized twice in the drug 4) ..., the latest taking place after his testimony on the great 5) ... of narcotics to his life. It means that Roy also deceived the public and trivialized law enforcers' anti-narcotic 6) ....

Therefore, Roy's behavior does not deserve the continuous defense of TV infotainment programs, even by his 7) ..., Alex Asmasoebrata. Such developments make the 8) ... wonder whether the shows have been financed by narcotic syndicates.

The fact that Roy had just received about an ounce of shabu when he was captured indicates that he may have been an active 9) ... as well as a drug trafficker.

His case is thus more serious than the previous arrests of fellow 10) ... Gogon, Derry, Polo and Doyok. Why do infotainment circles so aggressively defend Roy?

Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>

Picture: <http://celebrity.okezone.com>



## Task 13

Read the following news about Lindsay Lohan. Find the words in the text which have similar meanings to the following words. Look at the example.

- |                |        |
|----------------|--------|
| 1. observe     | = see  |
| 2. penalty     | = .... |
| 3. minor crime | = .... |
| 4. corpse      | = .... |
| 5. basement    | = .... |

## Lohan's Sentence to Visit Morgue

BEVERLY HILLS, California: Lindsay Lohan is about to see dead people.

In June, the 21-year-old actress will visit the morgue as part of her punishment for misdemeanour drunken driving.

"She's going to see bodies. We'll have anywhere from 20 to 50 people in the class and she's treated like any other individual," Los Angeles County Coroner's Assistant Chief Ed Winter said Friday.

Lohan was arrested twice last year on DUI charges and pleaded guilty in August to misdemeanour drunken driving and cocaine charges.

"The morgue visits include a walk-through of the service floor where autopsies are taking place along with the processing of the deceased. They also wind up seeing deceased people in our crypt," Winter said.

"It's to show them what reality is."

Adapted from: *The Jakarta Post*, January 21, 2008  
Picture : <http://img2.timeinc.net>



### Task 14

---

Find two news items in the newspaper and rewrite them in your own words.

---



### Task 15

---

Write a news item about any event in your school that you think important to be published. Put your final draft in the school bulletin.

---



### Cultural Tips

In United Kingdom there are some topics which are best avoided for small talk, such as:

- Age, e.g. "How old are you?"
- Appearance or weight, e.g. "You seem to have put on some weight"
- Personal gossip about somebody you know
- Jokes that might offend (especially sexist or racist jokes)
- Money, e.g. "How much do you earn?"
- Previous or current relationships, e.g. "Do you have a girl friend?"
- Politics, e.g. "Who did you vote for at the last election?"
- Religion, e.g. "Do you believe in God?"
- Criticisms or complaints, e.g. "Why is British food so bad?"

## C. Let's Do More



### Task 16

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box. Then, perform it with your partner.

- What was the cause of his death?
- Really?
- Oh, I'm sorry to hear that.
- I hope so.

Ruben : Anita, why do you look so miserable?

Anita : I've just read the news about Heath Ledger. It states that he passed away.

Ruben : 1) \_\_\_\_\_.

Anita : It's okay.

Ruben : You must be very sad.

Anita : Yes, he's one of my favourite actors. He was a good actor. I have watched all his movies and I love them all.

Ruben : 2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Anita : The police still investigate this case. He might have died of overdose.

Ruben : 3) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Anita : He was found lying in his bed with some pills beside him. The police have not made any conclusion yet.

Ruben : I hope they'll get the cause soon.

Anita : 4) \_\_\_\_\_. Ledger's family called his death very tragic, untimely and accidental.

Ruben : I'm sure his fans feel the great loss of him.

Anita : Heath was a down-to-earth, generous, kind-hearted, life-loving, unselfish individual extremely inspirational to many.



### Task 17

Read the news about Eddie Murphy then answer the questions.

#### Murphy Starts New Year with Marriage

LOS ANGELES: Actor Eddie Murphy celebrated New Year's Day by tying the knot with film producer Tracey Edmonds, their representatives told People magazine.

The pair exchanged vows Tuesday on a private island off Bora Bora in French Polynesia in front of a small group of family and friends, the magazine reported.

Murphy and Edmonds began dating last year and were engaged in July.

Murphy, 46, has five children from his marriage to Nicole Mitchell Murphy, who filed for divorce in 2005. He also has a daughter with Spice Girls singer Melanie Brown.

Edmonds, 40, has two sons from her 13-years of marriage to singer Kenneth "Babyface" Edmonds. As head of Edmonds Entertainment group, Inc., she has produced the film and television series Soul Food.

Murphy's film credits include Dreamgirls, the Beverly Hills Cop, The Nutty Professor, Shrek, and Dr. Doolittle movies.

Adapted from: *The Jakarta Post*, January 4, 2008

#### Question

1. Where did Murphy and Edmonds hold the wedding?
  2. Who is Murphy's ex-wife?
  3. Who is Kenneth "Babyface"?
  4. How many children do Murphy and Edmonds have after their marriage?
  5. Mention Murphy's film credits.
- 

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 18

---

**Have a dialogue with your partner. Include the expressions of disbelief and surprise based on the following situations.**

- Your classmate tells you that he/she accidentally met your favourite singer. Your classmate has a chat with him for a while and asked his autograph for you.
  - Your classmate tells you that your favourite actress and her boyfriend have been married for four years but they hide it from public. It was revealed on the magazine.
  - Your classmate tells you that he/she won the radio quiz to have a dinner with his/her idol. A private TV station will broadcast this candlelight dinner.
- 



### Task 19

---

**Find and read two news items in the newspaper about any Indonesian celebrity. Then, make a summary of the news by completing the table. Look at the example.**

Newsworthy event	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Tisdale Has No Regrets about Nose Job</b></p> <p>NEW YORK: High School Musical star Ashley Tisdale says she was somewhat distressed when she first saw her new profile after her recent nose job.</p>
------------------	---

Background events	<p>The 22-year-old actress-singer “kind of freaked out,” she tells People magazine in its Jan. 28 issue. “I was so swollen, I was like, ‘Oh my gosh, is it going to stay like this?’”</p> <p>Tisdale says she does not regret having the surgery but is sorry she decided to sing in public two weeks later.</p> <p>Tisdale had surgery Nov. 30 to correct a deviated septum that worsened over the years and contributed to breathing problems. Tisdale says she decided to talk about her surgery because she “didn’t want to play a game of denying it or being coy.”</p>
Sources	<p>“I wanted my fans to know because I don’t take plastic surgery lightly,” she says.</p> <p>Adapted from: <i>The Jakarta Post</i>, January 21, 2008</p>

**Write your summary here.**

Newsworthy event:	
Background events:	
Sources:	

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

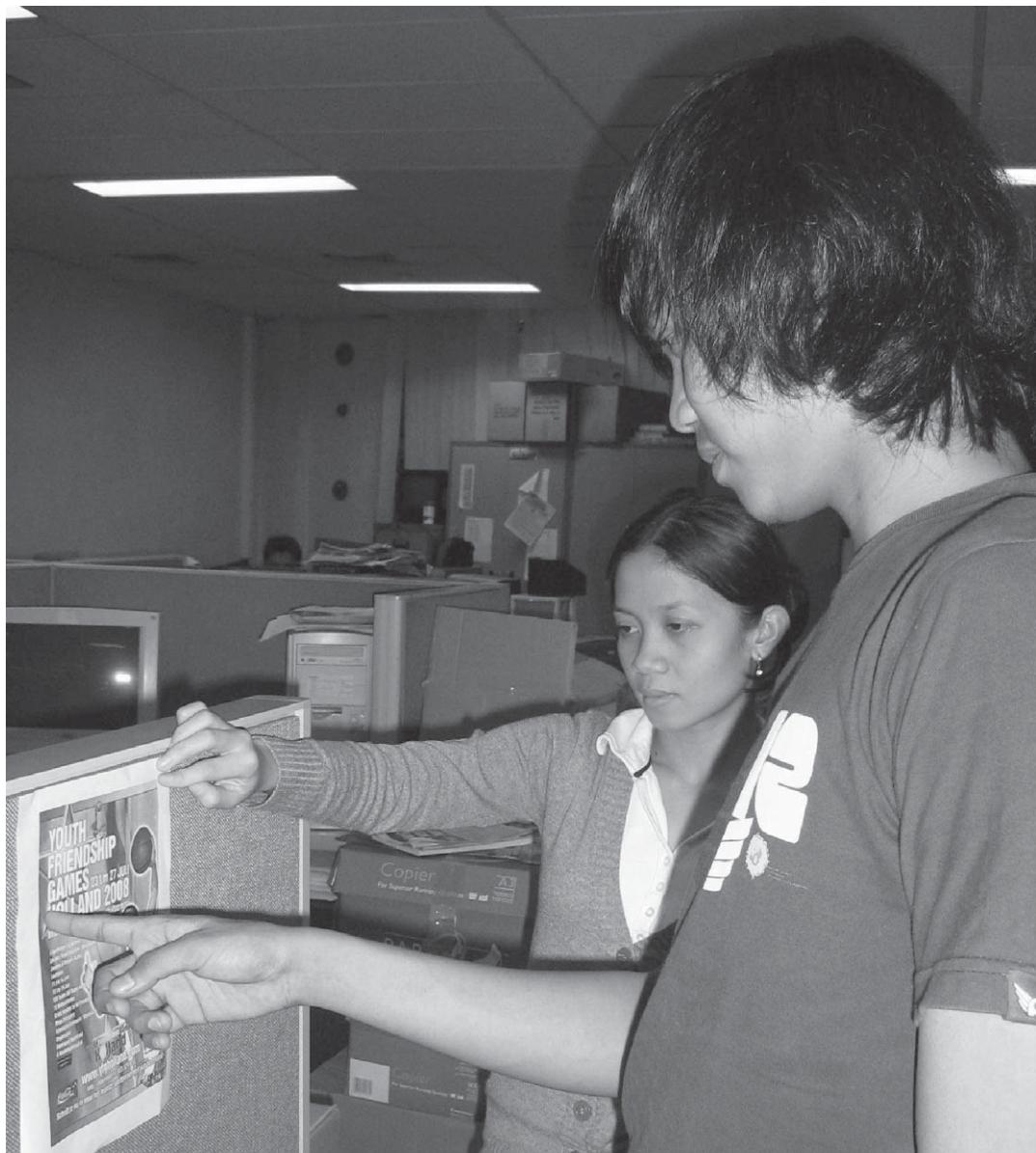
## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to express disbelief, for example:
  - I don't believe it!
  - Are you serious?
  - You must be joking!
- 2) How to express surprise, for example:
  - Really?
  - That's very surprising.
  - What a surprise!
- 3) News item text is a text which is telling information about even of the day which is considered newsworthy or important. It includes the newsworthy event, the background event, and the sources.
- 4) Passive (present continuous)  
The pattern of the passive form of the present continuous is:  
**am/is/are being + V3**

## UNIT X

**THAT'S VERY KIND  
OF YOU.**





<http://www.momsville.edu>

In your daily life you often have to respond to offers or invitations from others. Do you know how to do them very well?

You love reading news item, don't you? The news items may include news items on sports. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn how to read and write news items further in this unit.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Answer the following questions. Compare your answers with your classmate's.

1. What is your favourite sport?
2. Who is your favourite athlete?
3. Do you like reading sport news in the newspapers and magazines?



### Task 2

Study the following kinds of sport. Name each. Look at the example.

swimming



1.



2.



5.

3.



4.



...

Picture:

1. <http://www.mornsville.edu>
2. <http://www.brisbanetimes.com.au>
3. <http://www.olympics.org.uk>
4. <http://www.sysa.com>
5. <http://newsimg.bbc.co.uk>

## B. Let's Act'



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 3

Listen to the following monologue to complete the missing information. The listening script is in the Appendix.

#### Sentul to Host First Speedcar Race

*The Jakarta Post, Saturday, January 26, 2008*

Indonesia will play host to the first series of the US\$3 million Speedcar Championships. The Indonesian ..... will take place at the Sentul International Circuit in Bogor, West Java, from Feb. 16 to 17. Indonesia will ..... its drivers Ananda Mikola and Moreno Soeprapto in the race.

Moreno said he hoped he would ..... from the home crowd and stand on the podium. He added that if he should ..... to win the race, he would be able to ..... more sponsors to help ..... him in higher budget Formula races in the future.

The Speedcar ..... will feature 24 drivers behind their eight-valve cars with 620 horsepower, similar to the ones used in Nascar. Physically and skill wise, it's more demanding than Formula 1 as it is heavier. Speedcars ..... 1,300 kg, compared to the 600-kg Formula car.

Moreno and Ananda will race against a number of world-class ....., including former Formula 1 drivers Jean Alessi and Johnny Herbert, in the races.

The speedcar championships, held in partnership with GP2 Asia, will ..... the winner US\$600,000. The next series will be held in Malaysia, Bahrain and Dubai. (dre)



Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>  
Picture <http://www.pertaminaracing.com>



#### By the Way...

Pittsburgh is the only city where all major sports teams have the same colours: black and gold.



## Task 4

---

**Listen to the news again and then choose the right statements by circling the letter a, b, c, or d.**

1. a. The first series of the Speedcar Championships will be held in Malaysia.  
b. The first series of the Speedcar Championships will be held in Indonesia.  
c. The first series of the Speedcar Championships will be held in Bahrain.  
d. The first series of Speedcar Championships will be held in Dubai.
  2. a. Indonesia will replace Ananda Mikola with Moreno Soeprapto in the race.  
b. Indonesia will place Jean Alessi and Johnny Herbert in the race.  
c. Indonesia will place Ananda Mikola and Moreno Soeprapto in the race.  
d. Indonesia will not replace Ananda Mikola and Moreno Soeprapto in the race.
  3. a. Moreno hoped to get more sponsors to help finance him in Formula races in the future.  
b. Moreno got many sponsors from Speedcar races.  
c. Moreno would like to be the sponsor of Speedcar races.  
d. Moreno did not get many sponsors from Speedcar races.
  4. a. The Speedcar series will feature 24 drivers.  
b. The Speedcar series will feature 620 horses.  
c. The Speedcar series will feature 8 cars.  
d. The Speedcar series will feature 620 cars.
  5. a. Speedcars weigh the same as Formula cars.  
b. Speedcars weigh less than Formula cars.  
c. Speedcars weigh more than Formula cars.  
d. Speedcars weigh twice more than Formula cars.
- 



## Task 5

---

**List the words in Task 3 which are unfamiliar to you. Then, find the equivalents in Indonesian according to the context. Do it in pairs.**

Unfamiliar words	Equivalents in Indonesian

---



## Task 6

In pairs, study the following expressions

Would you like me to give you a glass of water?

That's very kind of you.

Shall we watch the tennis match at Senayan tomorrow?

I'd love to.



## Task 7

Study and practise the following dialogue. Pay attention to the expressions printed in bold.  
Work in pairs.

Andi : Hey, Den. What are you reading?

Denias : Oh, I'm reading the sports column in the Jakarta Post.

Andi : Is there anything interesting?

Denias : Well, there is one entitled "Athletes take up English lessons to improve performances".

Andi : What is it about?

Denias : It is mentioned that some Indonesian athletes currently have another item on their training schedule. They are to improve their performance by learning English.

Andi : Really? Why do they do so?

Denias : It is said that the inability to speak English restricts players' efforts to socialize. They tend to be introverted when mingling with athletes from other countries.

Andi : Well, it seems that learning English is getting more important.

Denias : You're right. By the way, I'd like to visit the new gym centre near the town square. Shall we go there tomorrow?

Andi : **I won't say no.** Anyway, would you like to have a cup of coffee and some biscuits? I'm going to the kitchen.

Denias : **I'd love to.** Thanks.

Andi : You're welcome.



## Task 8

---

In pairs, study the following expressions.

In the dialogue in **Task 7** you find expressions, such as:

- I won't say no.
- I'd love to.

The expressions above are used to accept an invitation and an offer. Here are some other expressions.

### Accepting an Offer/Invitation

That's very kind of you.

I'd be delighted.

Lovely!



## Task 9

---

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Andi and Denias in **Task 7** you find the word 'athlete'.

How do you pronounce it?

athlete ['æθli:t]

**Note:**

The vowel letter 'a' is pronounced 'æ' when taking the initial position in words. Pronounce the words below.

absent ['æbsənt]

actor ['ækto:r]

accident ['æksɪdənt]

ambition [æm'bɪʃn]

action ['ækʃən]

angry ['æŋgri]

active ['æktɪv]

anxious ['æŋkʃəs]



## Task 10

---

**In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate based on the following situations.**

- You and your classmate have just finished exercising. Both of you are very tired and thirsty. You ask your classmate whether he would like to have some drink. Your classmate accepts your offer.

- Your classmate has never gone to the gym centre. She tells you that she really wants to go there. Next Sunday you are going to go to the gym centre. You ask your classmate to go there with you. Your classmate is very excited. She accepts your invitation.
  - Your parents buy you a new set of chess game yesterday. You really want to play it. You ask your classmate to come to your house to play chess with you. He accepts your invitation.
  - Your classmate finds some difficulties in searching information about extreme sports on the internet. You want to help him. Your classmate accepts your offer.
- 



## 2. Read and Write



### Task 11

---

**Read the following news on Chris John and find the meanings of the following words recording to the context. Do it in groups of three.**

bout [baʊt] (kb)	:	....
champion ['tʃæmpɪən] (kb)	:	....
defence [dɪ'fens] (kb)	:	....
dominate ['dɒmɪneɪt] (kkt)	:	....
pressure ['preʃə] (kb)	:	....
punch [pʌnʃ] (kkt)	:	....

#### Chris Retains WBA Belt with TKO

Sunday, 27 January 2008

World Boxing Association featherweight champion Chris “the Dragon” John successfully defended his belt for the ninth time with a technical knockout of Roinet Caballero of Panama on Saturday at Bung Karno Indoor Stadium in Senayan, Central Jakarta.

Caballero’s ring threw in the towel before the start of the eighth round, signalling that their fighter was unable to continue.

Chris dominated the

Panamanian from the first round, with a combination of powerful punches and solid defence.

In the third round, Chris had several chances to floor the 24-year-old Caballero, connecting with hooks and upper cuts to the jaw of the challenger, who fired very little in reply.

Chris kept up the pressure and in the sixth round unleashed a flurry of punches to put the challenger down.



Caballero tried to fight back in the seventh round, but Chris' defence was simply too solid. The Panamanian was unable to continue the bout, which was scheduled for 12 rounds.

With the victory, Chris stretched his record to 47 wins, no defeats and one draw, with 21 KOs and one TKO.

Chris received Rp2 billion (US\$215,000) for the fight, while Caballero earned Rp650 million.

On the undercard, lightweight Alex Bajawa of Indonesia was knocked out by Saddam Kietyongyuth of Thailand in the fifth round. Another Indonesian boxer, Andreas Seran, defeated Sam Setu of Samoa by KO in the first round of their scheduled four-round fight. (JP/dre/trw)

Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>  
Picture: <http://www.fightnews.com>

#### Note:

As explained in Unit 9, a news item tells information about event of the day which is considered newsworthy or important. The text is organized to include:

- newsworthy event : recounts the event in summary form.
- background events : elaborate what happened to, to whom, in what circumstances expert on the event.
- sources : comments by participants in, witnesses to and authorities expert on the event.



## Task 12

Read the text again and then answer the questions below. Compare your answers with a partner's.

1. What is the news about?
2. How many times has Chris John defended his belt successfully?
3. Who was Chris John's rival in the WBA championship in Bung Karno Indoor Stadium in Senayan?
4. Mention Chris John's fight record.
5. "His" (paragraph 1, sentence 1) refers to ....



## By the Way...

A technical knockout (also referred to as a T.K.O.) is often declared when the referee or other judges (such as official ring physician, the fighter himself, or the fighter's corner men) decide that a fighter cannot continue the match, even though he does not fail the count.



## Task 13

Read the news about Asian Beach Games. Then, make a summary of the news by listing important information in your own words in the box.

### Asian Beach Games to cost Rp300 billion

Thursday, January 31, 2008

The first Asian Beach Games, which will be held in Bali from October 18-26, will cost an estimated Rp300 billion (around US\$32 million), says National Sports Council (KONI) chairwoman Rita Subowo.

Rita said here Wednesday that the organizing committee and KONI would strive to secure the funding from the government and sponsors. "The Coordinating Ministry for the People's Welfare will provide Rp100 billion," Rita said. "A New Zealand apparel company has signed an agreement with the organizing company to provide a sponsorship of \$1.5 million." Rita said she was hopeful KONI and the organizing committee would find other sponsors to cover the budget.

"We are still negotiating with local and other international companies to sponsor the tournament. Some of them probably will support us in cash, while some others will provide equipment, like computers," she said, adding that the organizing committee would use Ernst & Young as its financial adviser.

The Asian Beach Games is a multisport event that will be held every two years for athletes representing 45 countries from across Asia. A total of 17 sports disciplines, including beach soccer, volleyball, sepak takraw, jet skiing, surfing and sailing will be included in the Games.

To finance the training of Indonesian athletes participating in the event, Rita said the State Ministry for Youth and Sports Affairs would provide some Rp15 billion, which is not included in the Rp300 billion budget for organizing the Games. (trw)

Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>

Where and when will the first Asian Beach Games be held?

---

---

How much will the event probably cost?

---

---

How will they probably get the fund for holding the first Asian Beach Games?

---

---

What will the Asian Beach Games be like? Mention some branches included.

---

---

How will they manage to finance the training of Indonesian athletes participating in the event?

---

---



## Task 14

**Study the rule below.**

In the text in **Task 13** you find the following sentences:

- ...**will** cost an estimated Rp300 billion ...
- ...**will** provide Rp100 billion ...
- Some of them probably **will** support us in cash, ...

The word **will** above is used when we decide to do something, at the time of speaking. The word **will** is always followed by **Verb 1**.

For example:

They **will give** a big support to the team.

They **will hold** training for new members.



## Task 15

**Write your own news item about sport. Make it simple. The following guidance may help you.**

- Pick one topic about sport. You may search it in magazines, newspapers, or the internet.
- List important information on the topic (what it is about, when and where it happened, etc.).
- Arrange the important information you have got to write the news.

## C. Let's Do More



### Task 16

In pairs, create a dialogue with your classmate based on the following information.

You find an advertisement about a sports exhibition. The event will be held in the town's centre building from 5–10 April. You are very excited about it. You tell your classmate about the advertisement. You say that you would like to go there with him. Your classmate agrees. He says that it is the event he has been waiting for.

You and your classmates take a swimming course at 3 p.m. today. Both of you are about to leave when you realize that you forgot to bring your towel. Your classmate says that you may borrow one of his towels.



### Task 17

Find two news items about sports. Pick any topic you are interested in. You may search it in the magazines, newspapers, internet, etc. Then, rewrite the news items in your own words.



### Cultural Tips

#### Irish Road Bowling

The sport of road bowling is most popular in County Armagh and County Cork in Ireland, although it was once also quite popular in Scotland and England. This kind of sport always attracts crowds as it is played outside on the road.

Picture: <http://www.post-gazette.com>



## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 18

Complete the following dialogue with correct words, phrases, and expressions in the box.

canteen

drink

I won't say no.

tennis racket

That's very kind of you.

**Situation: Retno and Virga are at the tennis court.**

Retno : Hey, Virga. Have you seen Denias? He said he would be here today.

Virga : No, I haven't. Adib told me that he and Denias would come at 4 p.m. They have to go to the sports shop first. Adib needs a new 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Retno : I see. Shall we go to the 2) \_\_\_\_\_ now? I'm very thirsty and I need to drink.

Virga : 3) \_\_\_\_\_ By the way, let me buy you a 4) \_\_\_\_\_. I'd like to thank you for teaching me to play tennis today.

Retno : 5) \_\_\_\_\_. Okay, let's go there.



### Task 19

In groups, have a short dialogue with your classmates. Include the expressions of inviting, accepting, and declining the invitation of a football match.



### Task 20

Read the text and list the important information on the news. Compare your points with your classmate's.

#### Simon Stuns Taufik in Malaysia

The Jakarta Post, Friday, January 18, 2008

Indonesia's No. 1 Taufik Hidayat saw his hopes of collecting the first title this year dashed by his junior compatriot Simon Santoso in the second round of the US\$200,000 Malaysia Open Super Series badminton tournament in Kuala Lumpur on Thursday.

The 2004 Olympic gold medallist was routed by the fitter Simon in 40 minutes 21-18, 21-16. He refused to make any excuse. "There is no excuse for my bad performance today. I simply lost," he was quoted as saying by AFP.

With the victory, Simon advanced to the quarterfinals to take on top seed Lee Chong Wei of Malaysia. Lee secured semi final berth after beating Przemyslaw Wacha of Poland 21-5, 15-21, 21-8 in 43 minutes. Lee has beaten Simon twice, the last time was at the French Super Series last November where he also became the eventual winner. Simon is the lone prospect for Indonesia in men's singles after Andre Kurniawan Tedjono fell to eighth seed Chen Yu of China 13-21, 9-21.

In mixed doubles, world champion Nova Widianto and Lilyana Natsir took another step toward the quarterfinals after beating German's pair Ingo Kindervater and Kathrin Piotrowski 21-11, 21-23, 21-19. They will play Korean duo Lee Yong Dae and Lee Hyo Jung in the quarterfinal. The Korean pair defeated Danish duo Thomas Laybourn and Kamilla Rytter Juhl 21-15, 20-22, 21-19. This would be the first encounter for the Indonesians and the Koreans.

"They are a new pair. Korea has repeatedly made changes in their doubles pairings. We never met them before," Nova said as quoted by Antara. "It will be an interesting game. But, we are optimistic to win the match," he said.

Meanwhile, Indonesia also saw its best prospects in women's doubles tumble during the second round of the tournament. Jo Novita and Greysia Polii were trounced by Korean pair Lee Won Kyung and Lee Hyo Jung 18-21, 10-21 in 41 minutes, while teammates Lilyana Natsir and Vita Marissa fell to Miyuki Maeda and Satoko Suetsuna of Japan 19-21, 16-21 in 45 minutes.



Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>  
Picture: <http://www.indomedia.com>

Newsworthy event	
Background events	
Sources	

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

1) How to accept an offer or invitation, for example:

- I won't say no.
- I'd love to.
- That's very nice of you.

2) News Items

A news item tells information about event of the day which is considered newsworthy or important. The text is organized to include newsworthy event, background events, and sources.

3) Will

Will is used when we decide to do something at the time of speaking. "Will" is always followed by Verb 1.

# UNIT REVIEW SEMESTER 2

I. Listen to short conversations between two people. Choose the best answer to each question. The listening script is in the Appendix.

1. What does Marcell mean?
  - a. He found it as a trouble to help Arnys.
  - b. He could not help Arnys.
  - c. He would not help Arnys.
  - d. He might help Arnys.
  - e. He loves to help Arnys.
2. What does Retno mean?
  - a. She wanted to help Andi.
  - b. She could not help Andi.
  - c. She bought a bracelet yesterday.
  - d. She responds to Andi's thanks.
  - e. She would help Andi.
3. What does Virga mean?
  - a. She asks Adib to create a new logo.
  - b. She congratulates Adib's work.
  - c. She gives Adib a logo for their club.
  - d. She helps Adib to make a new logo.
  - e. She wants to create a new logo for the club.
4. What is Anita's intention?
  - a. She likes Ayu's gown.
  - b. She congratulates Ayu.
  - c. She compliments Ayu.
  - d. She invites Ayu.
  - e. She makes an appointment with Ayu.
5. What does Arnys imply?
  - a. She does not believe the news.
  - b. She wants to have the kittens.
  - c. She is afraid of the kittens.
  - d. She is excited with the news.
  - e. She compliments Ruben.
6. What does Anita mean?
  - a. She is excited.
  - b. She would like to join the contest.
  - c. She wants her dog to join the contest.
  - d. She will go to the contest next week.
  - e. She wants to buy a dog in the contest.

7. What does Andi mean?
- He doesn't believe in the news.
  - He wants to believe in the news.
  - He believes in the news.
  - He wants to become a rock idol.
  - He wants to buy the newspaper.
8. What does Virga imply?
- She refuses Denias's invitation.
  - She does not want to go with Denias.
  - She accepts Denias's invitation.
  - She wants to go to the match by herself.
  - She says 'no' to Denias's invitation.
9. Ayu : Thanks a million for your help.  
Arnys : \_\_\_\_\_.
- Don't mention it.
  - I'd love to.
  - Really?
  - That's wonderful.
  - Terrific!
10. Adib : That's a very cute sweater.  
Retno : \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's no trouble at all.
  - Thank you for saying so.
  - With my pleasure.
  - Very well, thanks.
  - That would be nice.
11. Marcell : \_\_\_\_\_.  
Virga : Really? That's wonderful!
- My lovely kitten died last night.
  - My little sister killed my hamster.
  - My horse has been sick for three days,
  - My dog won a swimming contest yesterday.
  - My rabbit was hit by a car this morning.
12. Denias : I heard the news that Pasha "Ungu" was put on probation for eight months.  
Andi : \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't believe it!
  - That's great.
  - I'd love to.
  - It's no trouble at all.
  - Don't mention it.

13. Virga : Won't you have a dinner with my family tomorrow night?

Adib : \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. You must be joking!
- b. My goodness!
- c. That would be great.
- d. Well done.
- e. Congratulations!

**II. Read the texts and choose the best answer to each question.**

**Questions 14 – 20 are based on the following text.**

### **The White Butterfly**

An old man named Takahama lived in a little house behind the cemetery of the temple of Sozanji. He was extremely friendly and generally liked by his neighbours, though most of them considered him a little mad. That was because he was very old but he did not want to get married. He did not have the desire for intimate relationship with women.

One summer day he became very ill, so ill, in fact, that he sent for his sister-in-law and her son. They both came and did all they could to bring comfort during his last hours. While Takahama fell asleep, they watched a large white butterfly flew into the room and rested on the old man's pillow. The young man tried to drive it away with a fan; but it came back three times, as if it was very loath to leave the sufferer.

At last Takahama's nephew chased it out into the garden, through the gate, and into the cemetery beyond, where it lingered over a woman's tomb, and then mysteriously disappeared. On examining the tomb the young man found the name "Akiko" written upon it, together with a description narrating how Akiko died when she was eighteen. Though the tomb was covered with moss and must have been erected fifty years previously, the boy saw that it was surrounded with flowers, and that the little water tank had been recently filled.

When the young man returned to the house he found that Takahama had passed away, and he returned to his mother and told her what he had seen in the cemetery.

"Akiko?" murmured his mother. "When your uncle was young he was betrothed to Akiko. She died shortly before her wedding day. When Akiko left this world your uncle resolved never to marry, and to live ever near her grave. For all these years he has remained faithful to his vow, and kept in his heart all the sweet memories of his one and only love. Every day Takahama went to the cemetery, whether the air was fragrant with summer breeze or thick with falling snow. Every day he went to her grave and prayed for her happiness, swept the tomb and set flowers there. When Takahama was dying, and he could no longer perform his loving task, Akiko came for him. That white butterfly was her sweet and loving soul."

Adapted from: <http://www.pitt.edu>

14. The text tells you about ...

- a. an old man with his faith
- b. an old man with his neighbours
- c. a mad old man
- d. a crazy old man
- e. dying old man

15. How was Takahama's characters?
- He was a humorous person.
  - He was an indolent person.
  - He was a pathetic person.
  - He was a sociable person.
  - He was a hilarious person.
16. Who was Akiko?
- She was Takahama's fiancé.
  - She was Takahama's niece.
  - She was Takahama's sister I law.
  - She was Takahama's sister.
  - She was Takahama's mother.
17. Which statement is not true according to the text?
- Takahama went every day to Akiko's grave and prayed for her happiness.
  - Takahama lived near Akiko's grave.
  - Takahama resolved not to marry after Akiko's death.
  - Takahama became very ill on summer day.
  - Takahama chased the white butterfly out into the garden.
18. The word "It" (paragraph 3, sentence 2) refers to ...
- the garden
  - the cemetery
  - the tomb
  - the white butterfly
  - the gate
19. Which of the following words is the antonym of 'resolved'?
- undecided
  - resolute
  - unyielding
  - determined
  - unbendable
20. Which of the following words is the synonym of 'betrothed'?
- alienated
  - divided
  - separated
  - estranged
  - engaged

**Questions 21 – 26 are based on the following text.**

### **My Very Best Friends**

I believe that a friend is an angel who lifts us off our feet when our wings have trouble remembering how to fly. It means that our friends are people who will always be there for us any time we need them.

I'm so lucky because I have three best friends. They are Firsty, Ronald and Jonathan. We have known each other since we were four years old. We met in the kindergarten. Since then, we always go to the same school. Moreover, our houses are still in the same block. We do everything together. Our motto is "United we stand, divided we fall". It means "together we are stronger". Now, let me introduce my friends one by one.

Firsty is the youngest among us because she was born in December. We call her "The Sweety Firsty". Her father is French. She is tall and slim. She's about 171 cm. She has long straight hair. Actually the color of her hair is blonde. However, she dyed her hair black since last year. She has beautiful blue eyes, an oval face and pointed nose. "The Sweety Firsty" is a cheerful, confident, and determined girl. However, she is a little bit careless and stubborn. She has many cats in her house. There are about nine cats. She loves them all. One of her favourite is a little orange cat. She calls her 'Shinny'. Firsty loves to dance and sing. Nevertheless, she wants to be a model.

Ronald's nickname is Ron. Most of girls in our school love and adore him. There's no doubt about his good looking. We call him "The Charming Ron". His height is 176 cm. Ron has straight hair and perfect face. He is an intelligent and introvert person. Above all, he is humble. He was crowned as The Best Student this year. He won so many prizes on Math, Chemistry and Physic competition. However, his favourite subject is Chemistry. He wants to be a chemist someday.

Jonathan is a funny person. He can always find a way to make the people around him laugh. I wonder what it is in his head for he can create jokes spontaneously. Jonathan's nick name is Jo. He is plump. He's about 168 cm tall. His weight is 80 kg. That's why we call him "The Big Jo". He has a round face with brown eyes. His spiky hairstyle makes him easily recognized. Jo is a humorous, friendly and an easy going person. He is a movie freak. He would never miss any new movie in the cinema. He dreams of becoming a famous actor one day.

About me? Well, my name is Hana. I'm the shortest one among them. I'm about 160 cm tall. I have long wavy hair with round face. My friends call me "The Chubby Hana" because I also have a chubby check. Most people, even my parents say that I'm a careful, generous and diligent person. They also say that I'm a bit sensitive. I love painting. I spend much time in my small studio just painting.

That's all about me and friends of mine. Even though we are quite different, we love each other and will keep this relationship for good.

21. The purpose of the text is ...
  - a. to describe persons and characters
  - b. to tell a sequence of events
  - c. to entertain the readers
  - d. to persuade the readers to have many friends
  - e. to teach the readers how to make friends

22. The followings are Firsty's characters, except ...
- cheerful, humorous, and sensitive
  - cheerful, confident, and strong-minded
  - determined, sensitive, and funny
  - determined, humorous, sensitive
  - sensitive, confident, serious
23. What is Jonathan like?
- He is fat, easy going, and funny.
  - He is fat, stubborn, and funny.
  - He is chubby, diligent, and sensitive.
  - He is plump, humble, and sensitive.
  - He is friendly, easy going, and slim.
24. What is Hana's favourite?
- She loves Chemistry.
  - She loves cats.
  - She loves watching TV.
  - She loves painting.
  - She loves singing.
25. Which statement is true according to the text?
- Firsty has a round face.
  - Jonathan wants to be a chemist.
  - Ron wants to be an artist.
  - Hana has long straight hair.
  - Jonathan is plump..
26. A word in the text that has the same meaning as "strong-minded" is ...
- sensitive
  - friendly
  - determined
  - confident
  - cheerful

**Questions 27 – 30 are based on the folowing text.**

### **Inul aims to drill after haj**

JAKARTA: Dangdut singer Inul Daratista says she will not stop performing her raunchy hip-gyrating dance, "the drill" after recently completing a spiritual pilgrimage to Mecca.

"Uztad (cleric) advised me to run my business as usual after the haj. He only told me to stop if I was too tired. How am I supposed to feed my family if I don't sing and dance?" said the singer whose dancing was once the source of a major controversy here.

Inul said she wouldn't be changing her typically-tight stage outfits like many other actresses and female singers who start wearing headscarves after coming back from the haj.

"..... (the costume) depends on the songs: If I was ordered to sing qasyidah (Arabic songs). I'd have to adjust." Inul said quoted by Detikcom.

Inul who travelled to Mecca with her husband, Adam Suseno, said they had been impressed by the beauty of the city and were planning to make a return trip within the next four months.

"Next year, four months from now, we'll take the umroh (minor haj program), " she said.

**Adapted from: *The Jakarta Post*, December 27, 2007**

27. With whom did Inul take haj?
  - a. alone
  - b. her friend
  - c. Ustad
  - d. her husband
  - e. her parents
28. What is Inul's decision after haj?
  - a. She will stop her raunchy dance.
  - b. She will run her business as usual.
  - c. She will sing Arabic songs.
  - d. She will start wearing headscarves.
  - e. She will take a break for four months.
29. What Inul planned four months ahead?
  - a. She will take the umroh.
  - b. She will travel to Mecca.
  - c. She will sing qasyidah.
  - d. She will start wearing headscarves.
  - e. She will stop performing her raunchy dance.
30. A word in the text that has the same meaning as "vulgar" is ...
  - a. usual
  - b. spiritual
  - c. minor
  - d. major
  - e. raunchy

# DAFTAR PUSTAKA

Hill, L. A.. 1963. *Elementary Comprehension Pieces*. London: Oxford University Press.

Madya, Suwarsih. 2000. *Learning English Pronunciation Systematically*. Yogyakarta: State University of Yogyakarta.

Murphy, Raymond. 1985. *English Grammar in Use*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

## **Magazines:**

KGRE Magazine, September 2006

## **Newspapers:**

The Jakarta Post, February 21, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 31, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 27, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 26, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 21, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 18, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 4, 2008

The Jakarta Post, December 27, 2007

## **Websites:**

<http://4simpsons.files.wordpress.com>

<http://animals.nationalgeographic.com>

<http://blogs.kansascity.com>

<http://bp2.blogger.com>

<http://celebrity.okezone.com>

<http://corefight.or.id>

<http://data1.blog.de>

<http://english.kbs.co.kr>

<http://esorang.cafe24.com>

<http://h1.ripway.com>

<http://farm1.static.flickr.com>

<http://farm2.static.flickr.com>

<http://feastmalaysia.blogspot.com>

<http://genasik.telkomsel.com>

<http://images.egullet.com>

<http://images.google.co.id>

<http://images.amazon.com>

<http://images.jupiterimages.com>

<http://img.dailymail.co.uk>

<http://img2.timeinc.net>

<http://img47.imageshack.us>

<http://img.thesun.co.uk>

<http://indonesian-street-foods.blogspot.com>

<http://ivyjoy.com>

<http://jadehwang.files.wordpress.com>

<http://jamion.files.wordpress.com>  
<http://k53.pbase.com>  
<http://mariannh.com>  
<http://news.bbc.co.uk>  
<http://newsimg.bbc.co.uk>  
<http://office.indonesiaselebriti.com>  
<http://onokinegrindz.typepad.com>  
<http://original-indonesian-recipe.blogspot.com>  
<http://pets.aol.com>  
<http://plus.maths.org>  
<http://r306.files.wordpress.com>  
<http://readingharry.com>  
<http://redlights.files.wordpress.com>  
<http://upload.wikimedia.org>  
<http://wallpaper.diq.ru>  
<http://warunglele.com>  
<http://wikipedia.org>  
<http://yance.files.wordpress.com>  
<http://www2.mcdaniel.edu>  
<http://www-ieee.eecs.berkeley.edu>  
<http://www.about-losangelesca.com>  
<http://www.americanfolklore.net>  
<http://www.aolcdn.com>  
<http://www.bali-directory.com>  
<http://www.batamevent.com>  
<http://www.boxofficepsychics.com>  
<http://wwwbrisbanetimes.com.au>  
<http://www.cassville.org>  
<http://www.cat-domain.com>  
<http://www.cest-ma-maison.net>  
<http://www.cfasouthwest.org>  
<http://www.contactmusic.com>  
<http://www.disney-vacation-time.com>  
<http://www.desktoprating.com>  
<http://www.dkimages.com>  
<http://www.e-hon.jp>  
<http://www.e-smartschool.com>  
<http://www.ediplomat.com>  
<http://www.elyrics.net>  
<http://www.enjoyfrance.com>  
<http://www.exposay.com>  
<http://www.fightnews.com>  
<http://www.fortunecity.com>  
<http://www.fuzzyupups.com>  
<http://www.geocities.com>  
<http://www.goodbyecitylife.com>  
<http://www.gotthelookpersiancats.com>  
<http://www.greatindonesia.com>  
<http://www.horseclassified.com>  
<http://wwwimage.cbsnews.com>  
<http://www.image-search.com>  
<http://www.img.thesun.co.uk>  
<http://www.imnotobsessed.com>  
<http://www.indolists.com>  
<http://www.indomedia.com>

<http://www.jenius.com.au>  
<http://www.klumps.com>  
<http://www.lyrics007.com>  
<http://www.lyricsandsongs.com>  
<http://www.mailorder2000.co.uk>  
<http://www.masuya.com.au>  
<http://www.metrolyrics.com>  
<http://www.michaelsporanimation.com>  
<http://www.moblog.com.sg>  
<http://www.morrisville.edu>  
<http://www.mp3lyric.com>  
<http://www.mytelus.com>  
<http://www.olympics.org.uk>  
<http://www.pertaminaracing.com>  
<http://www.post-gazette.com>  
<http://www.poster.net>  
<http://www.rabbasa.or.id>  
<http://www.raskraska.ru>  
<http://www.recipeatlas.com>  
<http://www.recipepizza.com>  
<http://www.resch-frisch.com>  
<http://www.rocksbackpages.com>  
<http://www.saritaksu.com>  
<http://www.sfgate.com>  
<http://www.shadowlandtoys.com>  
<http://www.shinystyle.tv>  
<http://www.st.rim.or.jp>  
<http://www.suaramerdeka.com>  
<http://www.sunkissvillas.com>  
<http://www.sysa.com>  
<http://www.thejakartapost.com>  
<http://www.thejessicawells.com>  
<http://www.wallpaperbase.com>  
<http://www.wallpapergate.com>  
<http://www.wikipedia.org>  
<http://www.worldisround.com>  
<http://www.worth1000.com>  
<http://www.yarisgroovy.com>

# LISTENING SCRIPT

## UNIT I LET ME INTRODUCE MYSELF

### Task 2

- 1) Ayu : Good morning.  
Andi : Good morning.  
Ayu : Do you know when the class meeting starts?  
Andi : It starts at 9 a.m. today.  
Ayu : I see. Thanks for telling.  
Andi : You're welcome.
- 2) Virga : How are you, Den?  
Denias : I'm fine, thanks.  
Virga : Well, you look different today.  
Denias : Really? How do I look?  
Virga : You look great.  
Denias : Thanks. You do too.
- 3) Retno : I think we need to discuss our plan for next month.  
Arnys : You're right.  
Retno : What if we meet at the canteen this afternoon.  
Arnys : Sure.  
Retno : So, see you later.  
Arnys : See you.

### Task 6

- Andi : Good morning. My name is Andi.  
Denias : Good morning Andi. I'm Denias.  
Andi : Denias, this is Adib. We were classmates the Junior High School.  
Denias : Hi, Adib. How do you do?  
Adib : How do you do.  
Andi : By the way, did you join pencak silat extracurricular activity in the Junior High School?  
Denias : Yes, I did.  
Andi : Oh, that's great. Adib and I have never joined it before.  
Adib : We hope you can help us.  
Denias : Sure.  
Andi : Okay, see you this afternoon.  
Adib : See you Denias.  
Denias : See you.

## **UNIT II I'M SORRY TO HEAR THAT**

### **Task 3**

- Denias : Hi, Retno.
- Retno : Hi, Denias.
- Denias : You were absent for two days. Where were you?
- Retno : My family and I went to my cousin's wedding party.
- Denias : I see. Where was it?
- Retno : It was in Surabaya. It took five hours to get there.
- Denias : How was the party?
- Retno : It was great, but there was something bad that happened.
- Denias : Really? What was that?
- Retno : The bride fainted after the party was over.
- Denias : Oh, I'm sorry to hear that. Was she sick?
- Retno : Actually, she was not. She was just too tired. Fortunately, she soon recovered.
- Denias : That's good. Anyway, the bell is ringing. Let's go back to the class.
- Retno : Okay.

### **Task 10**

Last year, my family and I visited our relatives in Greece. We flew to Athens via Singapore. After two hours from Athens, we arrived in Hydra where our relatives were. The interesting thing about Hydra is that no vehicle allowed. We have to walk to get anywhere. People often get around on horses or mules. After Hydra, we visited Satorini by ferry. Then we took a high speed catamaran to Mykonos. At least in Mykonos they have taxis and buses so we did not have to walk to go everywhere. From Mykonos we flew to the island of Skiathos where we spent a lovely week visiting beaches and eating wonderful Greek food. Finally it was time to go back to Athens and end our trip. After wandering around the old part of the city and taking lots of photos of the Acropolis and other ancient Greek monuments and statues, we had to get my taxi to the airport.

*Adapted from: KGRE Magazine, September 2006*

## **UNIT III THAT SOUNDS A NICE IDEA**

### **Task 3**

1. First, prepare all the ingredients.
2. Next, slightly beat eggs and mix with flour and half cup of water.
3. Then, mash bananas with fork and mix thoroughly with flour and egg mixture.
4. After that, deep-fry bananas and flour mixture in hot oil until golden brown.
5. Finally, drain on absorbent paper and dust with cheese.
6. The Fried Bananas with Cheese are ready to serve.

#### **Task 4**

- Ayu : This afternoon I'd like to practise making fried rice. Would you like to come to my house to help me?
- Retno : That sounds a nice idea. However, I don't think I can cook.
- Ayu : Don't worry. We'll learn together how to cook fried rice.
- Retno : Would you tell me how to do it before practising?
- Ayu : Sure, let me tell you. First, prepare the spices, egg, and cooked rice. Grind some garlic, chilli, and salt. Then, cut some onions into very thin pieces. Fry them together until it smells good. After that, add the egg and scramble them together. Finally, fry them together with the cooked rice until they are well mixed.
- Retno : And then you have your fried rice done.
- Ayu : Right.
- Retno : That sounds easy. I can't wait to practise it.
- Ayu : Neither can I. By the way, do you want me to pick you up?
- Retno : No, thank you.

### **UNIT IV CAN I SEE YOU AT 11 A.M.?**

#### **Task 4**

- Arnys : Denias, do you like to try some food from other countries?
- Denias : Yes, I do.
- Arnys : What is your favourite one?
- Denias : My favourite one is Kebab, actually.
- Arnys : Kebab? I've never heard of it.
- Denias : Well, the Kebab originated in Turkey. It is a staple food there.
- Arnys : What kind of food is it?
- Denias : It is made of sliced roasted meat served with fresh vegetables and wrapped in Lebanese bread with a choice of sauces.
- Arnys : Hmm ... It sounds delicious.
- Denias : Yes, it is. Anyway, let me invite you to try it. Would tomorrow be possible?
- Arnys : Sure, that will be fine.

#### **Task 6**

- Virga : Ayu, have you ever made your own pizza?
- Ayu : No, I haven't. What about you?
- Virga : I haven't either. Anyway, I'd like to invite you to practise making pizza.
- Ayu : Really? Where?
- Virga : Well, it's going to be in my aunt's kitchen.
- Ayu : So, she's going to teach us.
- Virga : No, she's not actually. We'll only use my recipe book.
- Ayu : Are you sure? That's going to be challenging.
- Virga : So, would tomorrow at 2 p.m. be possible?

- Ayu : I'm afraid I can't. I will be attending my music course.  
Virga : How about at 4 p.m.?  
Ayu : Great, it's a perfect time.

### Task 11

#### Making Crab Soup

Making crab soup is not difficult. What you need are 2 liters of fish stock, 2 medium-sized crabs, 100 gram ginger, 50 gram scallions, 50 gram Indonesian parsley, salt, and pepper to taste. First, make fish stock by boiling fish bones in 8 cups of water. Then remove these bones after a few minutes. Wash the crabs, split into several parts. Cut ginger into very thin slices, the scallions and Indonesian parsley. After that, heat stock for about 5 minutes, put everything into the stock. Finally, add salt and pepper to taste.

Adapted from: <http://www.indo.com>

## UNIT V I M DELIGHTED TO HEAR THAT

### Task 4

- Virga : Ayu, yesterday Mrs Irene told me that the role of Ratna Manggali goes to you.  
Ayu : Really? I'm delighted to hear about that.  
Virga : Well, congratulations!  
Ayu : Thank you. By the way, who's going to take the role of Calon Arang?  
Virga : Don't be surprised, Mrs. Irene has chosen me!  
Ayu : Great! Nobody can do it better than you.  
Virga : I'm not that sure. I still need more references about Calon Arang to improve my acting.  
Ayu : Don't worry about that, I will help you find more sources.  
Virga : Will you?  
Ayu : Yes, of course. That's what friends are for.  
Virga : Thank you very much for your kindness.  
Ayu : Don't mention it.

### Task 6

- 1) Andi : Mr. Joe likes the story and lets us use it in the next play.  
Denias : I'm delighted to hear about that.
- 2) Arnys : Thanks a lot for telling me the story.  
Retno : Any time.
- 3) Virga : Thank you for your help.  
Marcell : Don't mention it.
- 4) Ruben : Thank you very much for lending me your story book.  
Ayu : That's all right.
- 5) Adib : You got A for your writing assignment.  
Anita : It's marvellous.

### Task 10

Brawijaya, the king of Majapahit, had a beautiful daughter named Roro Anteng. Later she got married to a priest named Joko Seger. Because of an unfortunate situation, they were forced to leave the kingdom. They settled an area in the mountain named Tengger.

They were unhappy because they did not have a child. They climbed the peak of the mountain and prayed to the gods. Betara Bromo promised them many children with one condition: they would have to sacrifice their youngest child. They finally had twenty-five children. However, they broke their promise to sacrifice the youngest, Kesuma. Suddenly, an eruption occurred and Kesuma fell into the crater. His voice was heard saying, "I have to be sacrificed so that you will all live. From now on you should arrange an annual ceremony on the 14th of Kesodo."

Kesuma's brothers and sisters held the offering ceremony every year by offering fruits, vegetables, rice and meats. This ceremony is still held today as a Kesada ceremony.

Adapted from: <http://www.strim.or.jp>

### UNIT REVIEW 1

1. Anita : How are you?  
Denias : Very well, thanks.
2. Retno : Hi, my name is Retno.  
Virga : Hi, Retno. I'm Virga.
3. Ruben : Thank you very much for lending me the novel.  
Arnys : Don't mention it.
4. Ayu : Adib told me that he got an accident yesterday.  
Andi : I'm sorry to hear that.
5. Retno : Tomorrow I'm going to make a chocolate pudding. Would you like to come?  
Ayu : Thank you, I'd like to.
6. Adib : Shall we have dinner at the Japanese restaurant tonight?  
Arnys : I'd like to, but I have another plan.
7. Anita : We need to go to the market to buy some fruits. Would tomorrow be possible?  
Virga : Sure, that will be fine.
8. Marcell : Hey, Retno. They told me that you won the poetry reading competition.  
Retno : Thank goodness!

## **UNIT VI IT WAS THE LEAST I COULD DO.**

### **Task 3**

- Adib : Hi Retno, I've got something for you.
- Retno : Really? What's that?
- Adib : Here you are.
- Retno : Oh, thank you very much for your kindness.
- Adib : It was the least I could do.
- Retno : Adib, this is the only thing I want it right now. I've been looking for this novel for months, but I couldn't find it anywhere. How could you find it?
- Adib : Two days ago I went to Bandung, and I found it in a small bookstore. By the way, why do you need it badly?
- Retno: I really need this novel because I have limited sources to support my writing on Japanese folktales.
- Adib : Oh, I see. Anyway, I'm glad I can help you. I hope I will be the first to read your writing.
- Retno: Of course you will.
- Adib : Thank you.
- Retno: Don't mention it.

### **Task 6**

- 1) Arnys : Thank you very much for your kindness. I wouldn't able to do that by my self.
- Ruben : It's no trouble at all. You can call me any time you need me.
- 2) Marcell : I got A for my story telling assignment. You're the one who gave me the idea about the story I would tell to the class. I'm very grateful to you.
- Anita : Don't mention it.
- 3) Adib : I have given the story book we bought yesterday to my sister. She loves the book you have chosen. That was really nice of you.
- Ayu : Delighted I was able to help. You know, most of girls love to read romantic story.
- 4) Retno : Thank you very much for lending me the all of your story books. I have my niece stayed at home all day long.
- Virga : It's no trouble at all.
- 5) Andi : I was blessed for having you as my friend. You always there when I need your help. I'm much obliged.
- Denias : It was the least I could do. That's what friends are for.

### Task 8

**Blue Hen's Chicks**  
retold by  
**S. E. Schlosser**

A Delaware man went to war during the American Revolution. For entertainment, he brought with him two fighting cocks. When asked about these chickens, the soldier said slyly: "They are the chick's of a blue hen I have at home."

Well, these cocks could fight! They were so fierce, they caused quite a stir among the men. It did not take long for the Delaware troops to begin boasting among the troops from the other states that they could out-fight anyone, just like those famous fighting cocks. "We're the Blue Hen's Chickens. We will fight to the end!" became the theme of the Delaware troops. The other troops took to calling the men from Delaware "The Blue Hen's Chicks", and to this day, Delaware is known as the Blue Hen State.

## UNIT VII WHAT A NICE HAIR CUT!

### Task 10

**My Favourite Actor**

My favourite actor is Ringgo Agus Rahman. I like him because he is a good actor. He is also very funny. Moreover, he is cute. He has bright skin and slanting eyes. His facial expression makes him look funny. If I had a chance to meet him, I would ask him sign my photograph.

### Task 4

- Ayu : You look cute with that hat.  
Denias : Thank you for saying so. By the way, I heard from Andi that you won two free tickets to watch 'I am Legend' in the cinema.  
            Congratulations!  
Ayu : Thank you. I joined a quiz in the radio and I won it.  
Denias : That's great. What would you do with the tickets?  
Ayu : Well, actually I'm going to ask you to go with me to watch the movie. Shall we?  
Denias : Really? I'd love to.  
Ayu : So, can you pick me up at 7 tomorrow evening?  
Denias : Of course. I'll be there on time.  
Ayu : I'll be waiting for you.

### Task 6

- 1) Ruben : Congratulations on getting a free coupon to borrow movies from 'Nemo' DVD rental.  
Anita : Thank you.
- 2) Adib : I like your shoes.  
Denias : It's nice of you to say so.

- Adib : Where did you buy them?  
 Denias : I bought them in the new department store near my house.
- 3) Arnys : I must congratulate you on designing the new poster for our drama club. Everybody in the club loves your work.  
 Marcell : Thank you.  
 Arnys : Where did you get the idea?  
 Marcell : A scene in 'The Lord of The Rings' inspired me.
- 4) Retno : I saw your performance on TV yesterday. Well done, Andi. You have impressed the jury.  
 Andi : Thanks. I worked hard to prepare everything.
- 5) Virga : It seems that your diet programme works on you. You're looking good.  
 Ayu : How kind of you to say so.
- 6) Anita : That's the nicest skirt I've ever seen.  
 Retno : Oh, not really.  
 Anita : Where did you get it?  
 Retno : I made it myself.

## **UNIT VIII I FIND IT VERY INTERESTING.**

### **Task 3**

#### **Andi's Pets**

Andi has many pets. He has two cats, a dog, and a hamster. His cats are Felix and Deborah. Felix is a male cat. It is a black and white cat. It weighs 4 kg. It likes to sleep for hours. Deborah is a small white female cat. It weighs 1.5 kg. It is very cute. It likes to play with a tennis ball. Both cats are tame. His dog, Brandy, is a big brown dog. It is 75 cm tall. It is very smart. It can run very fast. Andi named his hamster Bora. It is a cute small hamster. It is a brown one. It likes to eat bread. Andi made it a small hamster house. Andi loves all of his pets.

### **Task 6**

- Anita : Hey, Den. Have you read the article in the latest school magazine?  
 Denias : Which article do you mean?  
 Anita : It's the one about Nora the Piano Playing Cat.  
 Denias : Well, I haven't read anything about it. The title sounds strange.  
     What is it actually about?  
 Anita : It is about a cat named Nora. She is a gray tabby cat. She is famous for "playing" the piano.  
 Denias : Really? That's wonderful.  
 Anita : There have also been many talk shows about Nora. She has attracted the interest of both musicians and scientists, who are fascinated by her rare behavior.  
 Denias : Wow, I find it very interesting. I think I'm going to search more information about Nora on the internet.  
 Anita : I was thinking about it too.

## **UNIT IX I DON'T BELIEVE IT!**

### **Task 2**

#### **Wilson returns after suicide attempt**

The Jakarta Post

Thursday, February 21, 2008

Los Angeles: Owen Wilson is going back to work for the first time since his reported suicide attempt last summer.

Wilson, 39, and co-star Jennifer Aniston begin shooting March 10 on 20<sup>th</sup> Century Fox's Marley & Me, the studio said. It tells the tales of a couple who adopt a dog to give parenthood a trial run, then find the mischievous pooch more than they bargained for.

After he was hospitalized last August, Wilson dropped out of his summer's comedy Tropic Thunder, which already had been in production. He was replaced by Mathew McConaughey.

Due out Christmas Day, Marley & Me is directed by David Frankel and based on the book by John Grogan, Alan Arkin co-stars.

### **Task 3**

- Arnys : Hi Marcell!
- Marcell : Hi! How are you doing?
- Arnys : Very well, thanks. What about you?
- Marcell : Not so bad, thanks.
- Arnys : Have you read The Jakarta Post this morning?
- Marcell : No, I haven't. What's in there?
- Arnys : Bad news. Roy Marten was arrested again in a drug raid.
- Marcell : Are you serious?
- Arnys : Yeah, I'm not kidding.
- Marcell : He was once jailed for nine months for drug abuse. I thought he would learn a lesson from that. When did it happen and how?
- Arnys : Roy was arrested on early Tuesday morning. He was apprehended together with an alleged drug dealer, Hartanto alias A Hong, two accomplices identified as Matatula and Didi Kesit Cahyadi, and a woman named Winda. They were caught in a hotel in Surabaya.
- Marcell : What did the police find in this case?
- Arnys : They found 43 grams of crystal meth, an inhaling tube, a plastic bag of crystal meth, and other drug-taking paraphernalia.
- Marcell : Really? That's a pity.
- Arnys : Yes, and it's going to be a hot issue along this week.

### **Task 5**

- 1) Andi : Did you know that Heath Ledger died?  
Arnys : You're kidding.  
Andi : No, I'm not kidding. I read it in a magazine this morning.  
Arnys : Oh, my goodness!

- 2) Retno : Kian Egan has announced his engagement to Jodi Albert.  
 Anita : You must be joking!  
 Retno : Why should I? The engagement was announced in the newspaper.  
 Anita : Oh, he breaks my heart.
- 3) Virga : Did you know that Mulan Kwok has changed her name into Mulan Jameela?  
 Adib : Really? How did you know?  
 Virga : I read it in my mom's magazine.
- 4) Ayu : Ariel 'Peterpan' and his wife are getting divorce. I read the news in the newspaper.  
 Denias : Are you serious?  
 Ayu : Of course. I'll bring the newspaper and show it to you.
- 5) Marcell : Your rock idol is caught using drugs.  
 Ruben : Ahmad Albar? No! I don't believe it!  
 Marcell : I say the truth. I read the news this morning.

## **UNIT X THAT'S VERY KINO OF YOU**

### **Task 3**

#### **Sentul to host first Speedcar race**

Saturday, January 26, 2008

The Jakarta Post, Jakarta

Indonesia will play host to the first series of the US\$3 million Speedcar Championships. The Indonesian races will take place at the Sentul International Circuit in Bogor, West Java, from Feb. 16 to 17. Indonesia will field its drivers Ananda Mikola and Moreno Soeprapto in the race.

Moreno said he hoped he would benefit from the home crowd and stand on the podium. He added that if he should manage to win the race, he would be able to attract more sponsors to help finance him in higher budget Formula races in the future.

The Speedcar series will feature 24 drivers behind their eight-valve cars with 620 horsepower, similar to the ones used in Nascar. Physically and skill wise, it's more demanding than Formula 1 as it is heavier. Speedcars weigh 1,300 kg, compared to the 600-kg Formula car.

Moreno and Ananda will race against a number of world-class drivers, including former Formula 1 drivers Jean Alessi and Johnny Herbert, in the races.

The speedcar championships, held in partnership with GP2 Asia, will award the winner US\$600,000. The next series will be held in Malaysia, Bahrain and Dubai. (dre)

**Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>**

## **UNIT REVIEW 2**

1. Arnys : Thank you very much for your kindness.  
Marcell : It's no trouble at all.
  
2. Andi : I have given my sister the bracelet we bought yesterday. She likes the motif you  
have chosen. That was really nice of you.  
Retno : Delighted I was able to help.
  
3. Virga : I must congratulate you on recreating a new logo for our club.  
Adib : Thank you. I hope everybody likes it.
  
4. Anita : You look beautiful with that purple gown.  
Ayu : Thank you for saying so.
  
5. Ruben : You know what, my cat, Bella, gave birth to five kittens last night.  
Arnys : Really? That's terrific!
  
6. Marcell : There will be a dog contest next week.  
Anita : I find it very interesting!
  
7. Adib : Your rock idol was arrested for drugs case. I read the news this morning.  
Andi : No! I don't believe it!
  
8. Denias : Would you like to go with me to the baseball match tomorrow?  
Virga : I won't say no.

# ANSWER KEY

## SEMESTER 1

1. A    11.    A    21.    A  
2. B    12.    C    22.    C  
3. A    13.    A    23.    A  
4. C    14.    E    24.    B  
5. D    15.    C    25.    C  
6. B    16.    D    26.    B  
7. E    17.    A    27.    E  
8. A    18.    B    28.    A  
9. B    19.    D    29.    B  
10. D    20.    E    30.    C

## SEMESTER 2

1. E    11.    D    21.    A  
2. D    12.    A    22.    B  
3. B    13.    C    23.    A  
4. C    14.    A    24.    D  
5. D    15.    D    25.    E  
6. A    16.    A    26.    C  
7. A    17.    E    27.    D  
8. C    18.    C    28.    B  
9. A    19.    A    29.    A  
10. B    20.    E    30.    E

# SUBJECT INDEX

## A

accepting an offer/invitation 39, 40, 54, 167, 176  
approving appointments 59, 60, 70  
asking how someone is 4, 5, 18

## C

cancelling appointments 59, 60, 70  
complimenting 118, 130  
congratulating 118, 130

## D

declining an offer/invitation 39, 40, 54

## E

expressing disbelief 151, 160  
expressing surprise 151, 160

## G

giving instructions 40, 54  
greeting someone 4, 5, 18

## I

introducing someone 6, 7, 18  
introducing yourself 6, 7, 18

## M

making appointments 59, 60, 70

## R

responding to compliments and congratulations 118, 130  
responding to thanks 88, 100, 112

## S

saying good bye 4, 5, 18  
saying how you are 5, 18  
saying you are excited 136, 146  
saying that you are pleased 76, 88  
showing attention 23, 24, 34  
showing sympathy 23, 24, 34  
simple past tense 30, 34

## T

thanking 75, 76, 88, 112

# MINI DICTIONARY

absorbent [əb'zɔ:bənt] (ks)	: menyerap
abuse [ə'bju:s] (kb)	: penyalahgunaan
accomplice [ə'kʌmplɪs] (kb)	: kaki tangan
achievement [ə'tʃi:vment] (kb)	: prestasi
active ['æktyv] (ks)	: aktif
adjudicator [ə'dʒu:dɪkeɪtə] (kb)	: penilai
allegation [æl'gelʃn] (kb)	: dugaan
alleged [ə'ledʒd] (ks)	: diduga sebagai
announcement [ə'naunmənt] (kb)	: pengumuman
annoy [ə'nɔɪ] (kkt)	: menganggu; menjengkelkan
anxious ['æŋkʃəs] (ks)	: gelisah
apprehend [æpri'hend] (kkt)	: menahan
arrested [ə'restid] (kkt)	: menangkap
attainment [ə'teinmənt] (kb)	: pencapaian
attend [ə'tend] (kkt)	: menghadiri
audience ['ɔ:diəns] (kb)	: penonton
award [ə'wɔ:d] (kb)	: penghargaan
bald [bɔ:lđ] (ks)	: botak
barn [ba:n] (kb)	: gudang
battle ['bætl] (kb)	: perang
bay leaf [beɪ li:f] (kb)	: daun salam
beat [bi:t] (kkt)	: mengalahkan
benefit ['benɪft] (kki)	: mengambil keuntungan
black magician [blæk mə'dʒɪʃn] (kb)	: dukun jahat
boil [bɔ:l] (kkt)	: didihkan
bout [baut] (kb)	: pertandingan
bride [braɪd] (kb)	: pengantin wanita
bridegroom ['braɪdgru:m] (kb)	: pengantin laki - laki
budget ['bʌdʒɪt] (kb)	: anggaran
campaign [kæm'peɪn] (kb)	: kampanye
candlenut ['kændlnʌt] (kb)	: kemiri
careful ['keəfʊl] (ks)	: hati-hati; teliti
careless ['keələs] (ks)	: sembrono
cart [ka:t] (kb)	: kereta
cattle ['kætl] (kb)	: ternak
ceremony ['seriməni] (kb)	: upacara
champion ['tʃæmpiən] (kb)	: juara
chant [tʃa:nt] (kb)	: nyanyian
charcoal ['tʃa:kəul] (kb)	: arang
cheerful ['tʃi:əfʊl] (ks)	: ceria

cheese [tʃi:z] (kb)	:	keju
chop [tʃɒp] (kkt)	:	memotong
cloak [kləʊk] (kb)	:	mantel; jubah
clog [klɒg] (kb)	:	tekelek; bakiak
clove [kləʊv] (kb)	:	butir; siung
club [klʌb] (kb)	:	klub; perkumpulan
coffin ['kɒfin] (kb)	:	peti mati
commotion [kə'məʃən] (kb)	:	keributan
competition [kəm'pɪtɪʃn] (kb)	:	perlombaan
compliment ['kɒmplɪmənt] (kkt)	:	memuji
confident ['kɒnfɪdənt] (ks)	:	percaya diri
congratulate [kən'grætjuleɪt] (kkt)	:	memberi selamat
content [kən'tent] (ks)	:	bahagia
coriander seed [kɔri'ændə sɪ:d] (kb)	:	ketumbar
corpse [kɔ:ps] (kb) :	:	jenazah
costume ['kɒstjum] (kb)	:	kostum
couple ['kʌpl] (kb)	:	pasangan
coy [kɔɪ] (ks)	:	malu
crisp [krɪsp] (ks)	:	renyah
cruel ['kruəl] (ks)	:	kejam
crypt [k्रipt] (kb)	:	ruang bawah tanah
curlie [kʌdl] (kkt)	:	memeluk
curse [kə:s] (kb)	:	kutukan
dealer ['di:lə] (kb)	:	pedagang
decorate ['dekəreɪt] (kkt)	:	menghias
defence [dɪ'fens] (kb)	:	pertahanan diri
deformity [dɪ'fɔ:mɪtɪ] (kb)	:	kelainan bentuk
delicious [dɪ'lɪʃəs] (ks)	:	lezat; enak
delighted [dɪ'laitɪd] (ks)	:	gembira
desire [dɪ'zaɪə] (kb)	:	hasrat
determined [dɪ'tə:mɪnd] (ks)	:	tegas
diligent ['dɪlɪdʒənt] (ks)	:	rajin
discharge [dɪs'tʃa:dʒ] (kkt)	:	meninggalkan
dissolve [dɪ'zolv] (kkt)	:	melarutkan
distressed [dɪ'strest] (ks)	:	sedih
dominate ['dəmɪneɪt] (kkt)	:	mendominasi
dough [dəʊ] (kb)	:	adonan
drain [dreɪn] (kkt)	:	tiriskan
drug [drʌg] (kb)	:	obat-obatan
elaborate [ɪ'læbərət] (ks)	:	rumit
enchant [ɪn'tʃa:nt] (kkt)	:	memikat
encounter [ɪn'kauntə] (kb)	:	pertemuan
energetic [enə'dʒetɪk] (ks)	:	enerjik
enthusiastic [ɪnθju:zi'aestɪk] (ks)	:	antusias
estranged [ɪ'streɪndʒd] (ks)	:	sudah tidak akrab
eventual [ɪ'ventjuəl] (ks)	:	akhir

extracurricular ['ekstrəkə'rɪkjula:] (ks)	:	ekstrakurikuler
extrovert ['ekstrəvə:t] (ks)	:	ekstrovet
faint [feɪnt] (kki)	:	pingsan
fairy ['feəri] (kb)	:	peri
feast [fi:st] (kb)	:	pesta
fierce ['fɪəs] (ks)	:	galak
flour ['flauə] (kb)	:	tepung
foil [fɔɪl] (kkt)	:	mengagalkan
fork [fɔ:k] (kb)	:	garpu
fortitude ['fɔ:tɪtjur:d] (kb)	:	ketabahan
frantic ['fræntɪk] (ks)	:	tergesa-gesa
friendly ['frendli] (ks)	:	ramah
fry [fraɪ] (kkt)	:	menggoreng
funeral ['fju:nərəl] (kb)	:	pemakaman
fur [fə:] (kb)	:	rambut binatang
galangal (kb) ['gæləngeɪl]	:	laos
garlic ['ga:lɪk] (kb)	:	bawang putih
generous ['dʒenərəs] (ks)	:	dermawan; murah hati
grate [greɪt] (kkt)	:	memarut
graveyard ['greɪvja:d] (kb)	:	makam
gravy ['grəvɪ] (kb)	:	kuah daging
green jack fruit [grɪ:n dʒæk fru:t] (kb)	:	nangka muda
host [həʊst] (kb)	:	tuan rumah
humble ['hʌmbɪl] (ks)	:	rendah hati
humorous ['hju:mərəs] (ks)	:	humoris
hut [hʌt] (kb)	:	pondok
icon ['aɪkən] (kb)	:	lambang
impatient [ɪm'peɪʃnt] (ks)	:	tidak sabar
intelligent [ɪn'telɪdʒənt] (ks)	:	pintar
introduce [ɪntrə'dju:s] (kkt)	:	memperkenalkan
introvert ['intrəvə:t] (ks)	:	introvet
investigation [ɪn'vestri'geɪʃn] (kb)	:	penyelidikan
involve [ɪn'velv] (kkt)	:	melibatkan
itch [ɪtʃ] (kb)	:	gatal
join [dʒɔɪn] (kkt)	:	mengikuti
jurisdiction [dʒuərɪs'dɪkʃn] (kb)	:	yuridiksi
jury ['dʒʊəri] (kb)	:	juri
kin [kɪn] (kb)	:	sanak; famili
knight [naɪt] (kb)	:	ksatria
lazy ['leɪzɪ] (ks)	:	malas
lone [ləʊn] (ks)	:	satu-satunya
lumberjack ['lʌmbədʒæk] (kb)	:	penebang pohon
marinate ['mærɪneɪt] (kkt)	:	mengasinkan
marking ['ma:kɪŋ] (kb)	:	tanda
marriage ['mærɪdʒ] (kb)	:	pernikahan
marvelous ['ma:vələs] (ks)	:	bagus sekali

mash [mæʃ] (kkt)	: melenyehkan
massive ['mæsɪv] (ks)	: raksasa
meditate ['mediteɪt] (kki)	: bersemedi
mince [mɪns] kkt)	: menghaluskan
mingle ['mɪŋgl] (kki)	: berbaur
miracle ['mɪrəkl] (kb)	: keajaiban
misdemeanor [mɪsdɪ'mi:nə] kb)	: pelanggaran hukum (yang ringan)
mix [mɪks] (kkt)	: mencampurkan
murmur ['mə:mə] (kki)	: berbisik
muscular ['mʌskjʊlə] (ks)	: berotot
mystical ['mɪstɪkl] (ks)	: gaib; mistik
nervous ['nə:vəs] (ks)	: gugup
noble ['nəʊbl] (ks)	: mulia
notable ['nəutəbl] (ks)	: terkenal
occasion [ə'keɪʒən] (kb)	: acara
offset [ɒf'set] (kkt)	: mengimbangi
onion ['ʌnjən] (kb)	: bawang merah
palace ['pæləs] (kb)	: istana
participant [pɑ:tɪsɪpənt] (kb)	: peserta
pass away s (kki)	: meninggal dunia
peculiar [pɪ'kjū:liə] ks)	: aneh
pellet ['pelɪt] (kb)	: butiran
performance [pə'fɔ:rəməns] (kb)	: pertunjukan; pergelaran
pile up ['paɪlʌp] (kkt)	: menumpuk
pity ['pɪvət] (kb)	: kasihan
pleased [pli:zd] ks)	: senang
podium ['pəudiəm] (kb)	: podium
pole [pəʊl] (kb)	: tiang
pond [pənd] (kb)	: kolam
poodle ['pu:dł] (kb)	: anjing pudel (berambut keriting)
possession [pə'zeʃn] (kb)	: kepemilikan
pound spaund] kkt)	: memukul-mukul
pour s(kkt)	: tuang
preparation [prepə'reiʃn] (kb)	: persiapan
pressure ['preʃə] (kb)	: tekanan
prosperous ['prɒspərəs] (ks)	: sejahtera
psychiatric [saɪkɪ'ætrɪk] (ks)	: berhubungan dengan kejiwaan
pug [pʌg] (kb)	: jenis anjing kecil berhidung pesek
punch [pʌnʃ] (kkt)	: memukul, menjotos
puppet ['pʌpɪt] (kb)	: golek; boneka
puppy ['pʌpi] (kb)	: anak anjing
quot t)	: mengutip
rag [ræg] (kb)	: kain lap
raid [reɪd] kb)	: razia
rattle ['rætl] (kkt)	: menderak-derakkan
realizes(kki)	: menyadari

reception [rɪ'sepʃn] (kb)	: resepsi
recipe ['resipi] (kb)	: resep
rein [reɪn] (kb)	: tali kekang
relative ['relətɪvli] (kb)	: kerabat
repeatedly [rɪ'pi:tɪdli] (kk)	: berkali-kali
represent [reprɪ'zent] (kki)	: mewakili
request [rɪ'kwest] (kb)	: permintaan
restricting order [rɪ'streɪnɪŋ] ['ɔ:də] (kb)	: perintah penahanan
revolt [rɪ'veult] (kki)	: memberontak
roast [rəʊst] (kki)	: terpanggang
rumour ['ru:mə] (kb)	: rumor
sacred ['seɪkrəd] (ks)	: suci
sauce [sɔ:s] (kb)	: saus
saucepans ['sɔ:spæn] (kb)	: panci bergagang
sauté ['səuteɪ] (kkt/kki)	: tumis
scabies ['skeɪbi:z] (kb)	: kudis
scrap [skræp] (kb)	: sisa-sisa makanan
sensitive ['sensɪtɪv] (ks)	: sensitif
shepherd ['ʃepəd] (kb)	: anjing gembala
shred [ʃred] (kkt)	: memarut
shrimp cracker [ʃrɪmp 'krækə] (kb)	: kerupuk udang
shrimp paste [ʃrɪmp peɪst] (kkt)	: terasi udang
shy [ʃai] (ks)	: malu
simmer ['sɪmə] (kkt)	: didihkan (dengan api kecil)
skewer ['skjuə] (kb)	: tusuk sate
skinny ['skini] (ks)	: kurus
slanting ['sla:ntɪŋ] (ks)	: sipit
slaughter ['slɔ:tə] (kkt)	: menyembelih
slice [slaɪs] (kb)	: irisan, potongan
slice [slaɪs] (kki)	: mengiris
slipper ['slɪpəz] (kb)	: sandal; selop
smoothly ['smu:ðli] (kk)	: dengan lancar
soothe [su:ð] (kkt)	: menenangkan
spear ['spiə] (kb)	: tombak
squeeze [skwi:z] (kki)	: memeras
stalk [stɔ:k] (kkt)	: mengikuti
staple ['steɪpl] (ks)	: pokok
steep [sti:p] (kki)	: merendam
stingy ['strɪndʒi] (ks)	: pelit
stinky [stɪŋki] (ks)	: bau tidak enak (busuk)
stir [stə:] (kkt)	: aduk
stubble ['stʌbl] (kb)	: jerami
stubborn ['stʌbən] (ks)	: keras kepala
stupid ['stju:pɪd] (ks)	: bodoh
surgery ['sə:dʒəri] (kb)	: operasi
suspicious [sə'spiʃəs] (ks)	: curiga

tamarind [tæmərɪnd] (kb)	:	asam
tender ['tendə] (ks)	:	lunak
testimony ['testɪməni] (kb)	:	kesaksian
topping ['tɒpɪŋ] (kb)	:	cream, keju, dll yang diletakkan diatas makanan
tournament ['tu:nəmənt] (kb)	:	turnamen; pertandingan
trivialized ['trɪviəlaɪzd] (kkt)	:	meremehkan
trophy ['trəʊfɪ] (kb)	:	piala
ulcer ['ʌlsə] (kb)	:	bisul
upset [ʌp'set] (kkt)	:	menganggu
useless ['ju:sləs] (ks)	:	sia-sia
vow[vau] (kb)	:	janji
wedding ['wedɪŋ] (kb)	:	pernikahan
well [wel] (kb)	:	sumur
whip [wɪp] (kb)	:	cemeti; cambuk
wicked ['wɪkɪd] (ks)	:	jahat
win [wɪn](kkt)	:	memenangkan
wrinkle ['rɪŋkl] (ks)	:	keriput

# GLOSSARY

adjective	: word which describes a noun
adverb	: word which modifies a verb, an adjective, another adverb or a whole sentence
advertisement	: announcement which tries to make sure that people know that something is for sale, that something is going to happen, or that a show is on
announcement	: statement made in public
appointment	: agreed time for a meeting
approving	: agreeing to something
attention	: careful thinking on something
background events	: elaborate what happened, to whom, and in what circumstances
cancelling	: stopping something which has been planned
character	: person in a play or a novel
characteristics features	: features that include physical appearance, qualities, and habitual behaviour
chronological order	: arrangement of events in order of the dates
compliment	: remark which praises someone or something
congratulations	: good wishes on someone who has done well
conjunction	: word which links different sections of a sentence
declining	: refusing something (an offer/invitation)
descriptive	: (text)
dialogue	: conversation between two people
disbelief	: not being able to believe something
drama	: serious performance in a theatre
evaluative remark	: comment that values something
excitement	: being excited
folktale	: story passed down from one generation to the next
greeting	: words said in meeting or welcoming someone
instructions	: indication of how something is to be done or used
introducing	: presenting someone to another person or to people who did not know him or her previously
invitation	: letter or card asking someone to do something
legend	: story from the past which may not be based on the fact
monologue	: speech by a person alone
myth	: ancient story about gods or something untrue commonly believed
narrative	: a spoken or written account of connected events; a story
news item	: spoken or written information about what has happened, an event
newsworthy event	: recounts the event in summary form
noun	: (in grammar) word which can be the subject of a verb and is used to refer to a person or thing
offer	: thing which is proposed

procedure	: way in which something ought to be carried out
pronoun	: word used instead of a noun, such as 'i', 'you', 'he', 'she', and 'it'
recipe	: instructions for cooking food
recount	: (text) to tell a story based on a sequence of events
sequence of events	: series of things which happen or follow one after the other
sources	: comments by participants in, witnesses to and authorities expert on the event
surprise	: feeling when something happens which you did not expect to happen
syllable	: a whole word or part of a word which has one single sound
sympathy	: feeling or understanding for someone else's problems, or after someone's death
thankning	: saying or doing something showing you are grateful to someone for doing something for you
verb	: (grammar) word which shows an action, being or feeling, etc.
vowel letter	: a letter used to represent such a sound, e.g. a, e, i, o, u

# Interlanguage:

## English for Senior High School Students X

*Kvngtr̩pi wci g* adalah seri bahan ajar Bahasa Inggris untuk siswa SMA. Bahan ajar ini didesain untuk membuat pembelajaran secara bertahap mencapai kompetensi berbahasa yang lebih tinggi. Materi-materi dan kegiatan-kegiatan yang ada dalam buku ini disampaikan melalui beberapa tahapan, yaitu pembuka, pajanan terhadap bahasa target, penjelasan mengenai unsur-unsur kebahasaan, latihan berkomunikasi dalam bahasa target, evaluasi, dan refleksi.

Materi yang dikembangkan dalam bahan ajar ini diorganisasikan ke dalam dua (2) siklus pembelajaran, yaitu siklus lisan dan siklus tulis yang disampaikan secara terintegrasi. Masing-masing siklus mengembangkan ketrampilan berbahasa yang berbeda, yaitu menyimak dan berbicara (siklus lisan) dan membaca dan menulis (siklus tulis). Kegiatan dalam siklus lisan membantu siswa dalam memahami berbagai ungkapan dalam konteks kehidupan sehari-hari, seperti bagaimana berkenalan, menyetujui ajakan/tawaran/undangan, memuji, mengucapkan selamat dan lain-lain. Sedangkan kegiatan dalam siklus tulis membantu siswa memahami berbagai jenis teks seperti *tgeqwpv."pcttcvkg. rtqefg wtg.* dan lain-lain.

Hak Cipta buku ini dibeli oleh Departemen Pendidikan Nasional dari Penerbit PT Grasindo 

ISBN 979-462-895-6

Buku ini telah dinilai oleh Badan Standar Nasional Pendidikan (BSNP) dan telah dinyatakan layak sebagai buku teks pelajaran berdasarkan Peraturan Menteri Pendidikan Nasional Nomor 34 Tahun 2008 tanggal 10 Juli 2008 tentang Penetapan Buku Teks yang Memenuhi Syarat Kelayakan untuk Digunakan dalam proses pembelajaran.

HET (Harga Eceran Tertinggi) Rp...

**Di unduh dari : [Bukupaket.com](http://Bukupaket.com)**

# Interlanguage:

## English for Senior High School Students X



PUSAT PERBUKUAN  
Departemen Pendidikan Nasional

Joko Priyana  
Virga Renitasari  
Arnys Rahayu Irjayanti

Di unduh dari : [Bukupaket.com](http://Bukupaket.com)

---

# **Interlanguage:**

## **English for Senior High School Students X**

---

**Joko Priyana, Ph.D**

**Arnys Rahayu Irjayanti**

**Virga Renitasari**



Pusat Perbukuan  
Departemen Pendidikan Nasional

Hak Cipta pada Departemen Pendidikan Nasional  
Dilindungi Undang-undang

# Interlanguage:

## English for Senior High School Students X

Penulis : Joko Priyana, Ph.D  
              Arnys Rahayu Irjayanti  
              Virga Renitasari  
Editor Ahli : Suharso, M.Pd  
Editor : Ika Mayliana  
Perancang Kulit : Bene  
Layouter : Rita E  
Ilustrator : Ipunk Kristianto

Ukuran Buku : 17,6 x 25 cm

420.07

PRI      PRIYANA, Joko  
i      INTERLANGUAGE: English for Senior High School Students X: SMA/MA Kelas XI/oleh Joko  
              Priyana, Riandi, Anita Prasetyo Mumpuni. — Jakarta: Pusat Perbukuan, Departemen Pendidikan  
              Nasional, 2008.  
              vi, 207 hlm.; ilus. ; 25 cm  
              Daftar Pustaka : hlm. 184-186  
              Indeks  
              ISBN 979-462-895-6  
1. INTERLANGUAGE: English for Senior High School-Studi dan Pengajaran    I. Judul  
              II. Riandi            III. Mumpuni, Anita Prasetyo

Hak Cipta buku ini dibeli oleh Departemen Pendidikan Nasional  
dari Penerbit Gramedia Widiasarana Indonesia (Grasindo)

Diterbitkan oleh Pusat Perbukuan  
Departemen Pendidikan Nasional  
Tahun 2008

Diperbanyak oleh....

# Kata Sambutan

Puji syukur kami panjatkan ke hadirat Allah SWT, berkat rahmat dan karunia-Nya, Pemerintah, dalam hal ini, Departemen Pendidikan Nasional, pada tahun 2008, telah membeli hak cipta buku teks pelajaran ini dari penulis/penerbit untuk disebarluaskan kepada masyarakat melalui situs internet (website) Jaringan Pendidikan Nasional.

Buku teks pelajaran ini telah dinilai oleh Badan Standar Nasional Pendidikan dan telah ditetapkan sebagai buku teks pelajaran yang memenuhi syarat kelayakan untuk digunakan dalam proses pembelajaran melalui Peraturan Menteri Pendidikan Nasional Nomor 34 Tahun 2008.

Kami menyampaikan penghargaan yang setinggi-tingginya kepada para penulis/penerbit yang telah berkenan mengalihkan hak cipta karyanya kepada Departemen Pendidikan Nasional untuk digunakan secara luas oleh para siswa dan guru di seluruh Indonesia.

Buku-buku teks pelajaran yang telah dialihkan hak ciptanya kepada Departemen Pendidikan Nasional ini, dapat diunduh (down load), digandakan, dicetak, dialihmediakan, atau difotokopi oleh masyarakat. Namun, untuk penggandaan yang bersifat komersial harga penjualannya harus memenuhi ketentuan yang ditetapkan oleh Pemerintah. Diharapkan bahwa buku teks pelajaran ini akan lebih mudah diakses sehingga siswa dan guru di seluruh Indonesia maupun sekolah Indonesia yang berada di luar negeri dapat memanfaatkan sumber belajar ini.

Kami berharap, semua pihak dapat mendukung kebijakan ini. Kepada para siswa kami ucapan selamat belajar dan manfaatkanlah buku ini sebaik-baiknya. Kami menyadari bahwa buku ini masih perlu ditingkatkan mutunya. Oleh karena itu, saran dan kritik sangat kami harapkan.

Jakarta, Juli 2008

Kepala Pusat Perbukuan

# Kata Pengantar

Puji syukur kami panjatkan kepada Tuhan Yang Maha Esa yang telah memberi hidayah, kekuatan, kesehatan, dan ketabahan kepada kami sehingga penyusunan bahan ajar seri *Interlanguage: English for Senior High School Students* ini terselesaikan.

Bahan ajar ini disusun dengan tujuan menyediakan materi pembelajaran Bahasa Inggris untuk peserta didik kelas X sesuai dengan Standar Isi mata pelajaran Bahasa Inggris 2006. Materi dan tugas pembelajaran dikembangkan dengan prinsip-prinsip Communicative Approach untuk secara terintegrasi mengembangkan kompetensi peserta didik dalam keempat keterampilan berbahasa, yaitu menyimak, berbicara, membaca, dan menulis. Selain itu materi dan tugas pembelajaran secara terpadu mengembangkan kecakapan hidup dalam arti luas dan peningkatan wawasan kebinekaan.

Materi dan tugas-tugas pembelajaran dalam bahan ajar ini diorganisasikan ke dalam dua siklus pembelajaran, yaitu siklus lisan dan siklus tulis. Sementara siklus lisan menekankan pengembangan keterampilan berbahasa lisan (menyimak dan berbicara), siklus tulis mengembangkan keterampilan dalam berbahasa tulis (membaca dan menulis). Sesuai dengan prinsip keterpaduan dalam pembelajaran bahasa, kedua siklus tersebut mengembangkan keempat keterampilan berbahasa secara terintegrasi. Baik siklus lisan maupun siklus tulis tersusun atas empat macam kegiatan pembelajaran, yaitu pembuka, pajanan terhadap bahasa target, penjelasan mengenai unsur-unsur kebahasaan, dan latihan berkomunikasi dalam bahasa target secara terbimbing maupun bebas. Selain itu, untuk keperluan pengayaan dan evaluasi, setiap unit dilengkapi dengan tugas terstruktur berupa pekerjaan rumah dan review.

Kegiatan-kegiatan belajar dikembangkan untuk menjadikan siswa secara aktif belajar Bahasa Inggris melalui kegiatan memahami dan menggunakan bahasa Inggris untuk mengekspresikan gagasan dan perasaan secara alami. Dalam pembelajaran, guru diharapkan bertindak sebagai fasilitator, pemberi umpan balik, dan pendorong siswa agar berani menggunakan bahasa target untuk berkomunikasi secara akurat dan berterima.

Penyusunan buku ajar ini terselesaikan atas dukungan dari berbagai pihak. Oleh karena itu, kami mengucapkan terima kasih kepada semua pihak yang telah membantu terselesaiannya penyusunan buku ini.

Walaupun kami telah menyusun bahan ajar ini dengan upaya yang sungguh-sungguh, karena berbagai keterbatasan kami, buku ini masih memiliki sejumlah kekurangan. Sehubungan dengan hal tersebut, kami mengharapkan masukan dari berbagai pihak, terutama guru dan siswa pengguna buku ini, untuk perbaikan lebih lanjut.

Januari, 2008

Penulis

# Daftar Isi

<b>Kata Sambutan .....</b>	iii
<b>Kata Pengantar .....</b>	iv
<b>Key to Pronunciation .....</b>	vii
<b>List of Abbreviation.....</b>	viii
<b>Unit I Let Me Introduce Myself.....</b>	1
<i>Greeting Someone</i>	
<i>Asking How Someone is</i>	
<i>Saying How You are</i>	
<i>Introducing Yourself</i>	
<i>Introducing Someone</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Recount Texts</i>	
<b>Unit II I'm Sorry to Hear That.....</b>	19
<i>Showing Attention</i>	
<i>Showing Sympathy</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Recount Texts</i>	
<b>Unit III That Sounds a Nice Idea.....</b>	35
<i>Accepting an Offer/Invitation</i>	
<i>Declining an Offer/Invitation</i>	
<i>Giving instruction</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Procedural Texts</i>	
<i>Short Functional Texts: Invitation Letters</i>	
<b>Unit IV Can I See You at 11 a.m.? .....</b>	55
<i>Making Appointments</i>	
<i>Approving Appointments</i>	
<i>Canceling Appointments</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Procedural Texts</i>	
<b>Unit V I'm Delighted to Hear That.....</b>	71
<i>Saying that You Are Pleased</i>	
<i>Thanking</i>	
<i>Responding to Thanks</i>	
<i>Functional Text: Narrative Texts</i>	
<i>Short Functional Texts: Announcement</i>	
<b>Unit Review Semester 1.....</b>	89

<b>Unit VI</b>	<b>It was the Least I Could Do .....</b>	97
	<i>Thanking</i>	
	<i>Responding to Thanks</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: Narrative Texts</i>	
<b>Unit VII</b>	<b>What a Nice Hair Cut! .....</b>	113
	<i>Complimenting Someone</i>	
	<i>Congratulating Someone</i>	
	<i>Responding to Compliments and Congratulations</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: Descriptive Texts</i>	
<b>Unit VIII</b>	<b>I Find It Very Interesting.....</b>	131
	<i>Saying that You Are Excited</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: Descriptive Texts</i>	
	<i>Short Functional Text: Advertisement</i>	
<b>Unit IX</b>	<b>I Don't Believe It!</b> .....	147
	<i>Expressing Disbelief</i>	
	<i>Expressing Surprise</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: News Item Texts</i>	
<b>Unit X</b>	<b>That's Very Kind of You.....</b>	161
	<i>Accepting an Offer/Invitation</i>	
	<i>Functional Text: News Item Texts</i>	
<b>Unit Review Semester 2.....</b>		177
<b>Daftar Pustaka .....</b>		184
<b>Appendix 1: Listening script.....</b>		187
<b>Appendix 2: Answer key .....</b>		198
<b>Subject Index.....</b>		199
<b>Mini Dictionary .....</b>		200
<b>Glossary .....</b>		206

# Key to Pronunciation

## Vowel

Phonetics symbols	Example	Pronunciation
i:	see	[si:]
i	any	['eni]
e	ten	[ten]
æ	hat	[hæt]
a:	arm	[a:m]
ɔ	got	[gɒt]
ɔ:	saw	[sɔ:]
ʊ	put	[put]
u:	too	[tu:]
ʌ	cup	[kʌp]
ə:	fur	[fə:]
ə	ago	[ə'gəʊ]
ei	pay	[peɪ]
ai	five	[faɪv]
əʊ	home	[həʊm]
au	now	[nau]
ɔɪ	join	[dʒɔɪn]
ɪə	near	[nɪə]
ɛə	hair	[heə]
ʊə	pure	['pjʊə]

## Consonants

Phonetics symbols	Example	Pronunciation
p	pen	[pen]
b	bad	[bæd]
t	tea	[ti:]
d	did	[dɪd]
k	cat	[kæt]
g	got	[gɒt]
tʃ	chin	[tʃɪn]
dʒ	june	[dʒu:n]
f	fall	[fɔ:l]
v	van	[væn]
θ	thin	[θɪn]
ð	then	[ðen]

s	so	[səʊ]
z	zoo	[zu:]
ʃ	she	[ʃi:]
v	vision	[ˈvɪʒn]
h	how	[haʊ]
m	man	[mæn]
n	no	[nəʊ]
s	sing	[sɪŋ]
l	leg	[leg]
r	red	[red]
j	yes	[jes]
w	wet	[wet]

### List of Abbreviations

- kb* : kata benda  
*KKI* : kata kerja intransitif  
*KKT* : kata kerja transitif  
*KS* : kata sifat  
*KK* : kata keterangan

# UNIT I

## LET ME INTRODUCE MYSELF.



## Concept Map



In your daily life you often meet new people and you need to introduce yourself to them or possibly introduce your friends to others. You may also need to respond to others who introduce themselves to you. Do you know how to do them very well?

When you meet others you usually greet them, ask them how they are, say goodbye, etc. Do you know how to do them?

You like reading and writing, don't you? The texts that you read may include recount texts such as experiences in joining extracurricular activities and competitions. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

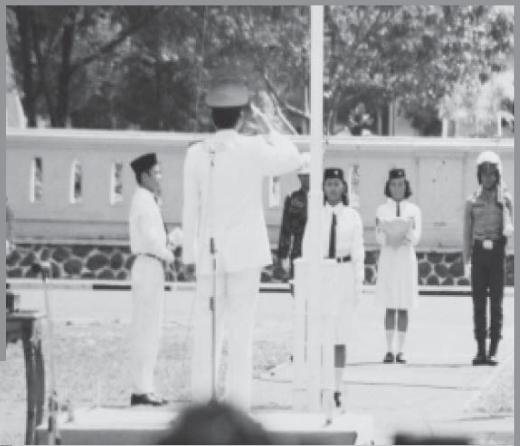
## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

In pairs, discuss the following activities with your classmate. The following words may help you.

ceremony ['seriməni] (kb)	:	upacara
classroom ['kla:srum] (kb)	:	ruang kelas
club [klʌb] (kb)	:	klub; perkumpulan
extracurricular ['ekstrəkə'rɪkjulər] (ks)	:	ekstrakurikuler
join [dʒɔɪn] (kkt)	:	mengikuti



## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 2

---

Listen to the following short dialogues. Then, complete the missing expressions. The listening script is in the Appendix.

- 1) Ayu : Good morning.  
Andi : \_\_\_\_\_  
Ayu : Do you know when the class meeting starts?  
Andi : It starts at 9 a.m. today.  
Ayu : I see. Thanks for telling.  
Andi : You're welcome.
  
  - 2) Virga : How are you, Den?  
Denias : \_\_\_\_\_  
Virga : Well, you look different today.  
Denias : Really? How do I look?  
Virga : You look great.  
Denias : Thanks. You do too.
  
  - 3) Retno : I think we need to discuss our plan for next month.  
Arnys : You're right.  
Retno : What if we meet at the canteen this afternoon?  
Arnys : Sure.  
Retno : So, \_\_\_\_\_  
Arnys : See you.
- 



### Task 3

---

Study the following expressions. Work in pairs.

In the dialogues in **Task 2** you find expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
• Good morning.	Greeting someone
• How are you, Den?	Asking how someone is
• See you.	Saying good bye

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
• Good afternoon/evening. • Hi!/Hello!	Greeting someone
• How are you doing?	Asking how someone is
• I'm fine, thanks. • Very well, thanks. • Not so bad, thanks.	Saying how you are
• Good bye. • Bye. • See you soon/later/tomorrow.	Saying good bye



## Cultural Tips

### Meeting and Greeting in Australia

- Shake hands with everyone present upon meeting and before leaving. Allow women to offer their hands first.
- Women generally do not shake hands with other women.
- Use titles, Mr, Mrs, and Miss when first introduced.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## Task 4

Complete the dialogues below with correct expressions.

- 1) Arnys : ...  
Ruben : Very well, thank you.
- 2) Ayu : Good evening.  
Denias : ...
- 3) Andi : How are you doing?  
Retno : ...
- 4) Adib : See you tomorrow.  
Virga : ...
- 5) Anita : Take care.  
Marcell : ...



## Task 5

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Ayu and Andi in **Task 2** you find the word 'class'. How do you pronounce it?  
class [kla:s]

**Note:**

The vowel letter 'a' is pronounced 'ɑ:' when followed by '-ss, -st, or -sk'. Here are some other examples.

glass [gla:s]

pass [pa:s]

cast [ka:st]

last [la:st]

ask [a:sk]

task [ta:sk]



## Task 6

Listen to the conversation and then answer the questions. Before listening, read the questions. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Situation:** Andi, Denias, and Adib are new students. They are at the students' association office.

### Questions

1. What does Andi say to Denias to introduce himself?
2. What does Denias say to Andi to introduce himself?
3. What does Andi say to Denias to introduce Adib?
4. Who joined *pencak silat* extracurricular activity in the Junior High School?
5. What does Andi say to end the conversation?



## Task 7

Study the following expressions. Work in pairs.

In the conversation in **Task 6** you find expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• My name is Andi.</li><li>• I'm Denias.</li></ul>	Introducing yourself
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Denias, this is Adib.</li></ul>	Introducing someone

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Let me introduce myself. My name is ...</li><li>I'd like to introduce myself. My name is ...</li><li>Allow me to introduce myself. My name is ...</li></ul>	Introducing yourself
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>I'd like to introduce ...</li><li>Let me introduce ...</li><li>Allow me to introduce ...</li></ul>	Introducing someone



## Task 8

---

Complete the following conversation with the correct expressions in the box. Compare your answers with a classmate's. Then, act the conversation out.

**Situation:** Adib, Arnys, and Retno are new students. They meet at the students' orientation course.

Hi, Retno. this is Retno. I'm Arnys.	My name is Adib.
--	------------------

Adib : Hi, Are you a new student?

Arnys : Yes, I am. By the way, are you a new student, too?

Adib : I'm a new student too. 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Arnys : 2) \_\_\_\_\_. Well, Adib, 3) \_\_\_\_\_

She was my classmate in the Junior High School.

Adib : 4) \_\_\_\_\_ Nice to meet you?

Retno : Nice to meet you too.

Adib : Anyway, we still have half an hour before the class starts. Shall we go to the canteen?

Arnys &

Retno : Okay.

---



## Task 9

---

Have a conversation in groups of three. Introduce yourself and one of your classmates to your group. Look at the example.

Anita : Hi, my name is Anita.

Virga : Hi, Anita. My name is Virga.

Anita : Virga, this is Ayu.

Virga : Hi, Ayu. It's nice to meet you.

Ayu : It's nice to meet you too, Virga.

---



## Task 10

In small groups, introduce yourself to your classmates. The following guidance will help you.

- greet your classmates
- introduce yourself: name, place/date of birth, address
- mention your hobbies and your ambitions
- tell the activities you ever joined and recent activities you have

Good morning, everybody! Let me introduce myself. My name is Anita Mumpuni. I was born in Semarang, on 29 August 1992. I live at Diponegoro street no. 27. My hobbies are dancing, singing, and swimming. I want to be a professional dancer someday. I joined the music club in the Junior High School. Now, I join the dancing club. I practise hard to reach my ambition.



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 11

Study the following sentences. Work In pairs.

Now



Two years ago



I am a Senior High School student.

I was a Junior High School student.

Now



Two years ago



I join the pencak silat club.

I joined the football club.

Now



Two years ago



I play the guitar in my band.

I played the keyboard in my band.



## Task 12

Read the following text carefully and then write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false. Correct the false statements. Compare your work with a classmate's. Look at the example.

### Joining the Traditional Dance Competition

I joined the Traditional Dance Competition in Jakarta last year. I represented my Junior High School. It was my biggest competition. I practised hard with my teacher for a month. We also prepared the best costume we had.

We only had one day in Jakarta. We went there by plane. We left at 6 a.m. and arrived in Jakarta at 7 a.m. We took a taxi to take us to the place where the competition was held. It took an hour to get there. There were already some participants when we arrived. The competition would start in an hour.

First, my teacher and I went to the dressing room. My teacher helped me do the make-up and the costume. We spent almost an hour for the preparation. I told my teacher that I was really nervous. I was not ready for this. However, she told me that everything was alright, and I felt better.

Then, the time came for me to perform on stage. There were five judges and about two hundred people watching me. However, I did not feel nervous anymore. I performed on the stage confidently. I really did the best I could. I was glad when it ended smoothly.

After that, we waited for the announcement of the result. It was 4 p.m. when the judges finished making their final decision. I was so impatient to hear the result. I still could not believe when they called my name as the first winner. I was so happy to be given the trophy. My teacher was also proud of my achievement. Finally, we went back to Yogyakarta in the evening. We were so tired. However, we were satisfied because our effort was not useless.



No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	The writer joined the Modern Dance Competition.	F	The writer joined the Traditional Dance Competition.
2.	The writer joined the competition when she was in the Junior High School.		
3.	The writer went to Jakarta a day before the competition was held.		
4.	The writer went to Jakarta alone.		
5.	The writer spent more than an hour for the preparation before she performed.		
6.	The writer performed on the stage confidently.		
7.	The writer's performance ended gracelessly.		
8.	The writer went back to Yogyakarta the next day.		



## Task 13

---

### Study the following notes.

The text in Task 12 is a recount text telling ‘what happened’. The purpose of the story is to tell a series/sequence of events and evaluate their significance in some way. It has expressions of attitude and feeling, usually made by the writer about the events.

The text is organized to include:

- an information about ‘who’, ‘where’ and ‘when’;
- a record of events usually in chronological order;

- personal comments or evaluative remarks, which are arranged over throughout the record of events; and
- a reorientation which ‘rounds off’ the sequence of events.

The grammatical patterns of the text include:

- use of nouns and pronouns to identify people or things involved;
  - use of action verbs to refer to events;
  - use of past tense to locate events in relation to writer’s time;
  - use of conjunction and time connectives to sequence the events;
  - use of adverbs and adverbial phrases to indicate place and time; and
  - use of adjectives to describe nouns.
- 



## Task 14

---

**Read the text in Task 12 once again and find the meanings of the following words based on the context. You may work in groups of three.**

achievement [ə'tʃi:vment] (kb)	: ....
announcement [ə'naunsmənt] (kb)	: ....
competition [kɒmpə'tɪʃn] (kb)	: ....
costume ['kɒstju:m] (kb)	: ....
impatient [ɪm'peɪʃnt] (ks)	: ....
nervous ['nə:vəs] (ks)	: ....
participant [pa:tɪcipənt] (kb)	: ....
preparation [prepə'reɪʃn] (kb)	: ....
smoothly ['smu:ðli] (kk)	: ....
trophy ['trəʊfi] (kb)	: ....
useless ['ju:sləs] (ks)	: ....

---



## Task 15

---

**In pairs, match each word in column A with a word or phrase in column B that is close in meaning.**

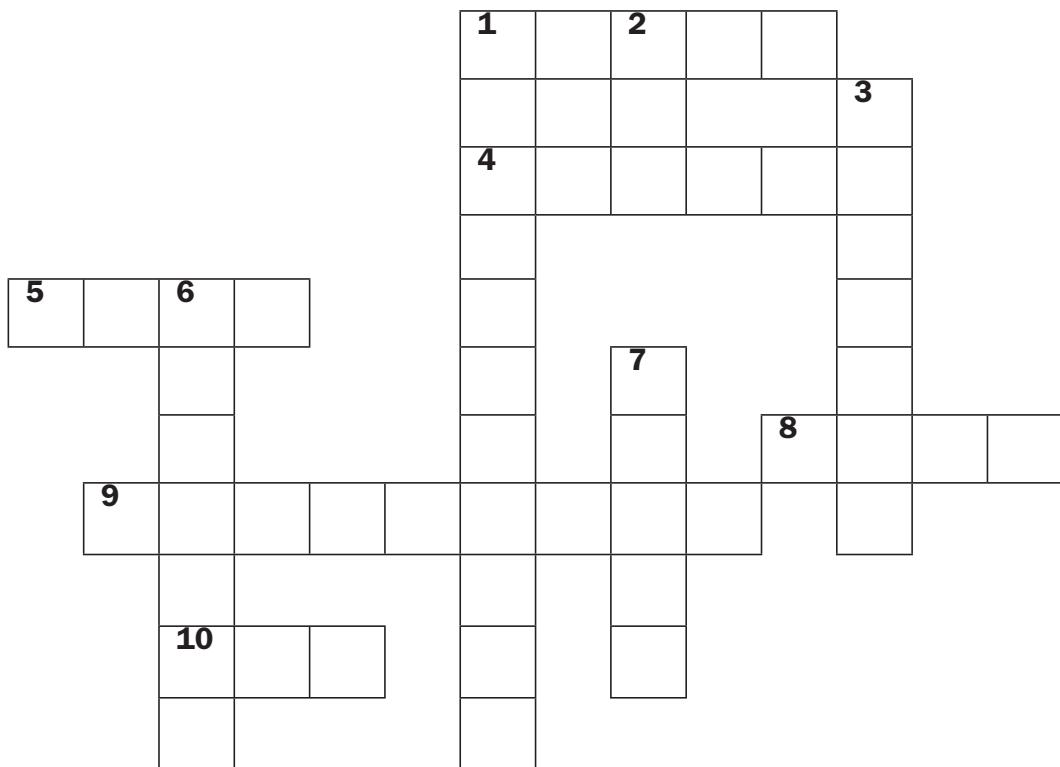
Column A	Column B
competition	award
arrive	contest
nervous	attainment
jury	viewer
audience	get there
trophy	adjudicator
achievement	anxious

---



## Task 16

Do this crossword puzzle in groups of three.



### Across:

1. He was the winner in the singing contest. He was very happy to be given the ....
4. She is a modest person. The synonym of "modest" is ....
5. Andre is a new member of the basketball ....
8. The ... will decide the winner of the competition.
9. a person who is in the same class as you at school
10. unhappy

### Down:

1. the synonym of attainment
2. goal
3. being worried
6. not useful
7. game between two teams



## Task 17

---

Study the rule below.

### Simple Past Tense

To talk about past events and conditions, you use VERB-2 forms. Here are some examples taken from the text.

- I **joined** the Traditional Dance Competition in Jakarta last year.
- It **was** my biggest competition.

Telling Past Events

- (+) S + V2  
(-) S + did not + V1

Examples:

- (+) I **joined** the Traditional Dance Competition in Jakarta last year.  
I **represented** my Junior High School.  
(-) I **did not feel** nervous anymore.

Telling Past Conditions

- (+) S + was/were + noun/adjective  
(-) S + was/were not + noun/adjective

Examples:

- (+) It **was** my biggest competition.  
I **was** so happy to be given the trophy.  
(-) I **was not** ready for this.

The adverbs that are usually used in the ‘simple past tense’ sentences are:

- yesterday,
- a week ago,
- ... ago,
- last week, and
- last ...



## Task 18

---

Fill in the blanks with correct verb forms. Compare your answers with your classmate’s sitting next to you. Look at the example.

<u>am</u>	win	take	have	join	are
-----------	-----	------	------	------	-----

### The Football Competition

When I 1) **was** in the Junior High School, I joined two clubs. They 2) \_\_\_\_\_ the Football Club and the Karate Club. I 3) \_\_\_\_\_ those clubs because I love sports, especially football and karate. I 4) \_\_\_\_\_ football on Sunday mornings and karate on Mondays at 4 p.m.

One day my football club joined a football competition. There were eight clubs joining the competition. At first, our club 5) \_\_\_\_\_ the match. Then, we had to defeat one club to get to the final. Remarkably, we won again. After those two matches, we 6) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch in the cafeteria nearby. We were so impatient to play in the last game. It was the hard one because our opponent was very tough. Finally, we won the game with a nice score of 3 – 2. We were very happy and proud.

---



## Task 19

---

**Make a composition about your experience in joining an extracurricular activity in the Junior High School. The following questions may help you develop your composition.**

1. What extracurricular activity did you join?
  2. Did you ever join any competition held by the club or outer club?
    - If so, tell about your experience in the competition.  
(Tell about what you did from the preparation until the end of the competition)
    - If you never did, tell about any interesting experience in the club.  
(Tell about the event from the beginning until the end)
- 



## Task 20

---

**Ask two of your classmates to give you feedback to revise your draft. Put your final draft in the school bulletin.**

---

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 21

---

**Complete the following dialogues with correct expressions. Then, perform them with your partner.**

### Dialogue 1

**Situation: Andi and Denias are in the bookstore. They meet Ayu, a friend of Andi.**

- Andi : Hi, Ayu! 1) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ayu : Hi, I'm fine, thanks. What about you?
- Andi : 2) \_\_\_\_\_. By the way, this is Denias. He is my classmate.
- Ayu : Nice to meet you.
- Denias : 3) \_\_\_\_\_.

Andi : Ayu, I didn't see you at the farewell party. I heard you went to London. Is that true?  
Ayu : Yes, I left for London two days before the farewell party.  
Andi : What did you do there?  
Ayu : Actually, my brother studies there, and last month I had the chance to visit him.  
Andi : Oh, I see. Denias also lived in London for two years when his father studied there.  
Ayu : Really?  
Denias : Yes, that's true. That's when I was still ten years old.  
Andi : Anyway, it's been nice talking to you. I'm afraid I must go now.  
Denias : Well, we still have a lot of things to do this evening.  
Ayu : Okay, I'll call you tonight.  
Andi : That'd be great. You have to tell me more about your holiday. Goodbye.  
Ayu : 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

## Dialogue 2

**Situation: Ayu found an agenda book. She intends to take it to the owner.**

Ayu : Excuse me, is this your agenda book?  
Retno : Oh, yes, thank you. I didn't realize that I left it.  
Ayu : Don't mention it. By the way, are you a new student?  
Retno : Yes, I am. 1) \_\_\_\_\_. I'm from class A.  
Ayu : 2) \_\_\_\_\_. I'm from Class D.  
Retno : Anyway, 3) \_\_\_\_\_, my classmate.  
Ayu : Hi, Arnys. It's nice to meet you.  
Arnys : It's nice to meet you too, Ayu. By the way, do you know Adib? He's from Class D.  
Ayu : Sure. He's the captain of the class.  
Arnys : He was my classmate. He won the National Math Competition last year.  
Ayu : Oh, really? I don't know about that. He never tells us.  
Arnys : Well, he is a modest person.  
Ayu : Yes, you're right. Everybody likes him.



## Task 22

**Read the text and then choose the right statements by circling the letter a, b, c, or d.**

### Swimming

When I was a boy, I liked swimming very much. Each year my two brothers and I spent the holiday with our uncle and aunt in their house by the sea. It was only twenty yards from the water. The water was warm, the sun shone brightly, and most days there were no waves. In the middle of the day a wind always began to blow, but it was not strong and did not make the sea rough.

One day, we put on our swimming-shorts before breakfast. Then, we ran down to the sea across the sand and jumped in. We were in the sea or on the beach until late at night. When our aunt rang a bell, we went back to the house for food, but we ate it in our swimming-shorts and soon went back in the sea again. We were all very good swimmers. We dived through the waves or rode towards the beach on top of them until we were tired and hungry.

Adapted from: L.A. Hill, 1963

1. a. The boys' home was near the sea.  
b. The boys' uncle's home was near the sea.  
c. The boys' uncle's home was a long way from the water.  
d. The boys' home was a long way from the water.
  2. a. There were waves every day.  
b. There were waves on most days.  
c. There were no waves on most days.  
d. There were no waves every day.
  3. a. The boys had breakfast in the house.  
b. The boys did not have breakfast.  
c. The boys had breakfast on the sand.  
d. The boys did not use to have breakfast.
  4. a. The boys put on their swimming-shorts before each meal.  
b. The boys put other clothes on before every meal.  
c. The boys did not do anything to their clothes before meals.  
d. The boys always changed their clothes before meals.
  5. a. The waves rode on top of the boys towards the beach.  
b. The waves carried the boys towards the beach.  
c. The boys rode on top of their brothers towards the beach.  
d. The boys rode on the waves using their board.
- 



### Task 23

---

**Find two recount texts on someone's experience when joining any competition. You may find them on the internet, in magazines, etc. Then, write them down in your notebook.**

---

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 24

---

**Work in groups of two or three. Have a conversation based on the following situations.**

- You meet an old friend at a singing contest.
    - greet him/her
    - ask how he/she is
    - say good bye
  - You are at a students' orientation activity. You do not know anyone there. Try to find someone and have a talk with him/her. Introduce yourself.
-



## Task 25

Write a short paragraph to introduce yourself and tell all of the activities you joined while you were in the Junior High School.

### Music Corner

You can find expressions of saying goodbye in many songs. One of them is entitled **Goodbye** by Spice Girls.

#### Goodbye

Now listen little child, there will come a day  
When you will be able, able to say  
Never mind the pain or the aggravation  
You know there's a better way  
for you and me to be  
  
Look for the rainbow in every storm  
Fly like an angel heaven sent to me  
Goodbye my friend  
(I know you're gone you said you're gone  
but I can still feel you here)  
I's not the end  
(You gotta keep it strong before the pain  
turns into fear)  
So glad we made it  
Time will never change it no no  
Just a little girl, big imagination  
Never letting no one take it away  
Went into the world (into the world)  
What a revelation  
She found there's a better way  
for you and me to be

Look for the rainbow in every storm  
Find out for certain  
Love is gonna be there for you  
You'll always be someone's baby  
You know it's time to say goodbye  
We would play about the way we used to  
Scream and shout never dreamt you'd go  
Your own sweet way  
You know it's time to say goodbye  
And don't forget on me you can rely  
You know it's time to say goodbye  
And don't forget on me you can rely  
I will help, help you on your way  
I will be with you every day

Taken from: <http://www.mp3lyric.com>  
Pictures: <http://www.shynystyle.tv>  
<http://www.img.thesum.co.uk>



## E. Let's Make a Reflection

Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to greet someone, for example:
  - Good morning/afternoon/evening.
  - Hi!
- 2) How to ask how someone is, for example:
  - How are you?
  - How are you doing?
- 3) How to say how you are, for example:
  - I'm fine, thanks.
  - Very well, thanks.
- 4) How to say good bye, for example:
  - Good bye.
  - Bye.
- 5) How to introduce yourself, for example:
  - My name is ...
  - I'm ....
- 6) How to introduce someone, for example:
  - This is ...
  - I'd like to introduce ...

7) Simple Past Tense:

Telling Past Events

(+)	S + V2
(-)	S + did not + V1

Telling Past Conditions

(+)	S + was/were + noun/adjective
(-)	S + was/were not + noun/adjective

8) A recount text is a text that tells us about a part of experience. A recount text has an orientation, a series of events in chronological order, personal remarks on the events, and a reorientation that "rounds off" the sequence of events. In the text, you will find words and phrases used to start, connect a sentence with the next one, and end your composition.

# **I'M SORRY TO HEAR THAT.**





<http://www.worldisround.com>

In your daily life you often want to show your attention or possibly sympathy to others. Do you know how to do them very well?

You love reading and writing, don't you? The texts that you read may include recount texts such as experiences during a funeral and wedding. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

In pairs, study the following occasions. What occasions are they? Can you name them? The words in the box may help you.

- ceremony ['seriməni] (kb) : upacara  
funeral ['fju:nərəl] (kb) : pemakaman  
occasion [ə'keɪʒən] (kb) : acara  
relative ['relətɪv] (kb) : kerabat  
wedding ['wedɪŋ] (kb) : pernikahan



### Task 2

Answer the following questions. Share your answers with your classmates.

1. What family occasions do you usually have or attend?
2. When did you last attend a family occasion?
3. What occasion was it?
4. Can you tell your classmates what you did from the beginning till the end?

## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 3

---

**Listen carefully to the dialogue between Denias and Retno. Complete the missing expressions. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

Denias : Hi, Retno.

Retno : 1) \_\_\_\_\_.

Denias : You were absent for two days. Where were you?

Retno : My family and I went to my uncle's wedding party.

Denias : 2) \_\_\_\_\_. Where was it?

Retno : It was in Surabaya. It took us five hours to get there by bus.

Denias : How was the party?

Retno : It was great, but there was something bad that happened.

Denias : 3) \_\_\_\_? What was that?

Retno : The bride fainted after the party was over.

Denias : Oh, 4) \_\_\_\_\_. Was she sick?

Retno : Actually, she was not. She was just too tired. Fortunately, she soon recovered.

Denias : That's good. Anyway, the bell is ringing. Let's go back to the class.

Retno : Okay.

---



### Task 4

---

**Write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false according to the dialogue. Correct the false statements. Look at the example.**

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1	Retno will be absent for two days.	F	Retno was absent for two days.
2	Retno plans to go to her cousin's wedding party.		
3	Retno went to Surabaya for five days.		
4	There was an incident after the party.		
5	The bride fainted before the party was over.		
6.	The bride was not sick.		

---



## Task 5

---

**Study and practise the following dialogue between Adib and Ruben. They are talking about Ruben's experience last Christmas. Pay attention to the expressions printed in bold.**

- Adib : Hi, Ruben. What a nice hat!
- Ruben : Oh, hi Adib. Thank you for saying so.
- Adib : Is that new?
- Ruben : No, actually. My grandfather gave me this hat last Christmas.
- Adib : **I see.** Well, I heard you went to Medan last Christmas.
- Ruben : You're right. My family and I spent the holiday with our relatives there.
- Adib : How was it?
- Ruben : It was a nice gathering. We spent three days there. However, there was something annoying in our way home from Medan.
- Adib : What was it?
- Ruben : I lost my wallet.
- Adib : **I'm sorry to hear that.** How did it happen?
- Ruben : I thought I dropped it in the taxi. However, when I called the taxi company, they said they found nothing in the taxi.
- Adib : **How upsetting.**
- Ruben : Moreover, I lost all my identity cards.
- Adib : **That's a pity.**
- 



## Task 6

---

**Study the following expressions.**

In the dialogue in **Task 5** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
• I see.	Showing attention
• I'm sorry to hear that.	Showing sympathy
• How upsetting.	
• That's a pity.	

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
• You're right.	Showing attention
• Right.	
• Nice.	
• Wow ...	
• Really?	
• Is it?	
• I'm terribly/dreadfully sorry about ...	Showing sympathy
• How annoying.	
• You must be very upset/annoyed.	



## Task 7

Respond to the following statements. Look at the example.

The figure consists of four numbered illustrations (1, 2, 3, 4) showing interactions between two people. In each illustration, a speech bubble contains a statement, and a response is shown in another speech bubble or by a person's reaction.

- Illustration 1:** A boy says, "I burnt my hand when I was cooking for Christmas party." The girl responds, "I'm sorry to hear that."
- Illustration 2:** A girl says, "My uncle told us that Grandpa passed away last night." The boy has a sad expression.
- Illustration 3:** A boy says, "It took us almost twelve hours to get there. Normally it's only six hours." The girl has a neutral expression.
- Illustration 4:** A girl says, "I met our Biology teacher at my aunt's wedding party." The boy has a neutral expression.

My niece broke my glasses last holiday.



5)

...



## Task 8

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Adib and Ruben in Task 5, you find the word 'Christmas'. How do you pronounce it?

**Christmas** ['krɪsməs]

**Note:**

The letter 't' in the word 'Christmas' is silent. Here are some other examples.

bouquet [bu'keɪ]

buffet ['bufer]

castle ['ka:sɪl]

debut ['deɪbju:]

listen ['lɪsən]

often ['ɒfən]



## Task 9

**In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate using expressions of showing attention and sympathy based on the following situations.**

- Your classmate tells you that she tore your gown she borrowed.
- You tell your classmate that there will be no party for your birthday this year.
- Your classmate tells you that her kitten died.
- You tell your classmate that the food in the party last night was not delicious.
- Your classmate tells you that she dropped the birthday cake in her cousin's party last night.
- You tell your classmate that your servant's wife passed away this morning.



## Task 10

Listen to the following monologue. Complete the missing words. The listening script is in the Appendix.

### Our Holiday in Greece

Last year, my family and I ... our relatives in Greece. We ... to Athens via Singapore. After two hours of drive from Athens, we ... in Hydra where our relatives live. The interesting thing about Hydra is that no vehicle ... We have to walk to get anywhere. People often get around on horses. After Hydra, we visited Satorini by ferry. Then we ... a high speed catamaran to Mykonos. At least in Mykonos they have taxis and buses so we ... not have to walk to go everywhere. From Mykonos we flew to the island of Skiathos where we ... a lovely week visiting beaches and eating wonderful Greek food. Finally it ... time to go back to Athens and end our trip. After wandering around the old part of the city and taking lots of photos of the Acropolis and other ancient Greek monuments and statues, we ... to get my taxi to the airport.



## Task 11

Tell your classmates your experience in attending a wedding party and funeral. You may follow the questions below.



#### Questions

1. When did you last attend a funeral?
2. Can you tell the class about the funeral from the beginning till the end?
3. When did you last attend a wedding?
4. Can you tell the class about the wedding from the beginning till the end?



## Task 12

What did you do last holiday? In groups of three, tell each other.

## 2. Read and Write



## Task 13

Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text on Torajan funeral and answer the questions.

balcony [ˈbælkəni] (kb)	: balkon
coffin [ˈkɒfɪn] (kb)	: peti mati
corpse [kɔ:pz] (kb)	: jenazah
elaborate [ɪ'læbərət] (ks)	: rumit
kin [kɪn] (kb)	: sanak; famili
slaughter [ˈslɔ:tə] (kkt)	: menyembelih

### My Grandpa's Funeral in Toraja

Last month my family and I went to Toraja to attend Grandpa's funeral. It was my first time to go to such a ceremony. We gathered there with our kin in the ceremony.

Overall, the ceremony was quite elaborate. It took about a week. Several days before the ceremony was done, grandpa's body was kept in a series of houses arranged in a circular row around an open field called *tongkonan*. His corpse was dressed in a fine wearing.

The funeral was performed in two phases. First, we slaughtered the pigs and buffaloes, and then moved the corpse to face north. In this ceremony we wore black clothes. After that, the corpse was placed in a sandal wood coffin. Then, it was brought out of the house and placed on an open platform beneath the granary. Meanwhile, my uncle, my brother, and I prepared the wooden puppet and a funeral tower called *lakian*. The next phase of the ceremony was held in



this place. The coffin is borne from the house and placed in the *lakian*. During the day, there were also buffalo matches. They were great matches. In the night, we were feasting, chanting, and dancing.

On the last day, the grandpa's coffin were lowered from the funeral tower and brought up to the mountain side family graveyard. It was followed by great shouting and excitement from the relatives and the guests. Finally, we installed the wooden puppet on a high balcony where other puppets representing the members of a whole family were already there.

The funeral ceremonies made my family and me tired. However, we were grateful because it ran smoothly.

Adapted from: <http://www.worldisround.com>

### Questions

1. When did the writer attend the funeral?
2. How long did the writer and his family hold the ceremony?
3. What did they do to the corpse before the funeral was done?
4. What did they do after the corpse was placed in a sandal wood coffin?
5. What did they do on the last day of the ceremony?

### Notes:

As explained in Unit 1, a recount text is a text that tells you a part of experience. A recount text has an orientation, a series of events in chronological order, personal remarks on the events and a reorientation that “rounds off” the sequence of events. In the text, you find words and phrases used to start, connect a sentence with the next one, and end your composition. Those words and phrases are:

- First,
  - Then,
  - After that,
  - Finally,
- 



### Task 14

---

#### What do the following words refer to based on the text in Task 13?

1. **We** (paragraph 1, sentence 3) refers to ....
  2. **It** (paragraph 2, sentence 2) refers to ....
  3. **His** (paragraph 2, sentence 4) refers to ....
  4. **It** (paragraph 3, sentence 5) refers to ....
  5. **It** (paragraph 3, sentence 10) refers to ....
-



## Task 15

Study and pronounce the following words. Then, arrange the jumbled paragraphs into a good text about Anita's experience in attending her cousin's wedding.

bride [braɪd] (kb)	: pengantin wanita
bridegroom ['braɪdgru:m] (kb)	: pengantin laki – laki
couple ['kʌpl] (kb)	: pasangan
involve [ɪn'vɒlv] (kkt)	: melibatkan
legalize ['lɪ:gəlائز] (kkt)	: mengesahkan
marriage ['mærɪdʒ] (kb)	: pernikahan
reception [ri'sepʃn] (kb)	: resepsi
ritual ['ritjuəl] (kb)	: susunan upacara; ritual
sacred ['seɪkrəd] (ks)	: suci

In the following morning, <i>Ijab</i> Ceremony (religious marriage consecration) was held. I sat right behind the bride. I really didn't want to miss this moment because it is the most important phase in the wedding. After <i>Ijab</i> , there were some Javanese ceremonies following the wedding celebration. They were <i>Panggih</i> , <i>Balangan Suruh</i> , <i>Wiji Dadi</i> , <i>Sindur Binayang</i> , <i>Timbang</i> , <i>Tanem</i> , <i>Tukar Kalpika</i> , <i>Kacar Kucur</i> , <i>Dahar Klimah</i> , <i>Sungkeman</i> and <i>Mertui</i> Ceremony. I was too busy in the reception table so I did not follow all of those ceremonies.	Paragraph ....
The very first ceremony was <i>Siraman</i> (bathing ceremony). <i>Siraman</i> means to take a bath. The <i>Siraman</i> ceremony was organized in the afternoon. I was also involved in preparing the place and the stuffs needed. After the <i>Siraman</i> , the bride was led to the wedding room. She was dressed with a traditional woman's blouse ( <i>kebaya</i> ) and <i>batik</i> clothes. Make-up was put on her by a traditional make-up woman who led the whole ceremony. The bride looked very beautiful.	Paragraph ....
I went back home in the evening by the last train. I went happily because I could attend my cousin's wedding even helped the preparation.	Paragraph ....
Two weeks ago I went to Semarang to attend my cousin's wedding. I was there for four days. I was involved in the preparation of the wedding ceremony. Like other Javanese wedding ceremonies, it has several complicated traditional rituals.	Paragraph ....
The next ceremony was <i>Peningsetan</i> or <i>Srah Srahan</i> (traditional engagement ceremony). The family of the would-be-bridegroom visited the parents and the family of the would-be-bride. They were bringing some gifts. After this ceremony, I helped the women in the backyard. We packed the snacks for the party in the morning.	Paragraph ....

The second ceremony was <i>Midodareni</i> (ceremony on the eve before the wedding). The bride had to stay in the room from 6 p.m. to midnight accompanied by some elder women giving her useful advice. My other cousins and I also visited her for a while.	Paragraph ....
After the wedding rituals, the reception followed. The newly wed couple received blessings and greetings from the guests. The newly wed couple looked very happy although they couldn't hide their tired faces.	Paragraph ....



## Task 16

Study the rule below. Then, complete the dialogues based on the clue. Look at the example.

### Simple Past Tense (?)

The ‘simple past tense’ is used to tell actions or situations in the past. In Unit 1 you learned the ‘simple past tense’ used in positive and negative sentences. In this unit you learn the ‘simple past tense’ in interrogative sentences. Here are the patterns.

#### Actions

(?)	Did + S + V1
-----	--------------

Examples:

- Did you go to her wedding party yesterday?
- Did you wear your new skirt at the party last week?

#### Situations/Conditions

(?)	Was/Were + S + noun/adjective
-----	-------------------------------

Examples:

- Was she angry with you last night?
- Were they classmates in Junior High School?

1. talk/Retno/yesterday

- Virga : Did you talk to Retno about the wedding yesterday?  
Arnys : No, I did not.

2. look for/wedding gown/two days ago

- Ruben : ...  
Retno : Yes, I did.

3. accompany/Anita/boutique/last week

- Adib : ...  
Denias : Yes, I did.

4. sad/funeral/yesterday  
Ayu : ...  
Marcell: No, I wasn't.
5. your parents/happy/birthday party  
Retno : ...  
Ayu : Yes, they were.
6. Adib/join/New Year Party  
Anita : ...  
Ruben : No, he didn't
- 



## Task 17

---

Summarize the text in Task 15. Ask your classmate to proofread your draft.

---

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 18

---

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box.

You're right      I see      I'm sorry to hear that      Hmm ...

- Adib : Ruben, I didn't see you yesterday. Were you absent?
- Ruben : Yes. My aunt passed away. I was attending the funeral.
- Adib : Oh, 1) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ruben : Thanks.
- Adib : May I know the cause of her death?
- Ruben : She got a heart attack. However, nobody knows what made her suddenly get it.
- Adib : 2) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ruben : I think it's just strange for her to get a heart attack without any cause.
- Adib : 3) \_\_\_\_\_. However, you should not think about it any longer. Anyway, how was the funeral?
- Ruben : It ran well. My family and I arrived there at 7 a.m. and went home at 1 p.m. I followed the whole process. I was involved in the funeral.
- Adib : 4) \_\_\_\_\_, I think you're a good nephew. I'm sure she was proud of you.
-



## Task 19

Fill in the missing blanks with the suitable words in the box. Make any changes to the verb forms if necessary.

attend                  buy                  come                  give  
wear                  tell                  lose                  celebrate

1. I couldn't ... my cousin's wedding party because I was at the hospital.
2. I think there were about hundreds of people who ... to his funeral ceremony.
3. Virga ... her cell phone when she was celebrating New Year party with her family in the town square.
4. Retno ... me that Ayu's birthday party cost a lot of money.
5. My sister ... birth to a healthy baby last night.
6. Last year, Marcell ... Christmas Eve with his family in Berlin.
7. Denias ... a nice suit in his parent's wedding anniversary yesterday.
8. Ruben ... a novel at the bookstore as a wedding gift for his brother.



## Task 20

Find two recount texts on someone's experience when attending a wedding and a funeral. You may search on the internet and/ or in magazines for the texts.

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



## Task 21

Complete the following dialogue with the appropriate expressions of showing attention or sympathy.

- 1) Andi : I saw a woman crying sadly at my brother's wedding.  
Denias : ....
- 2) Marcell : My mom was angry with me this morning for something that I didn't do.  
Arnys : ....
- 3) Retno : I visited the National Museum with my brother and my cousins last week.  
Anita : ....
- 4) Ruben : My brother died in a tragic accident five years ago.  
Ayu : ....
- 5) Adib : I went to Bandung yesterday. My sister has a new baby.  
Virga : ....



## Task 22

**Write a text telling your experience in attending any family occasion. Use the following questions to help you develop the text.**

1. What kind of occasion did you attend?
2. Where and when did it happen?
3. Can you tell your classmates what you did from the beginning till the end?
4. How did you feel?



### Cultural Tips

Americans do not have as many customs and taboos concerning gifts as many other cultures have. Gifts from your country will always be appreciated. Good choices are local and regional arts and crafts, books, candies, specialty foods and wine or spirits (if you are certain that the recipient drinks).

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>.

## Music Corner

You can find expressions of showing sympathy in the song entitled *Picnic By The Motorway* by Suede.

### ***Picnic By The Motorway***

I'm so sorry to hear about the news  
Don't you worry  
I'll buy us a bottle and we'll drink in the petrol fumes  
I'm so sorry to hear about your world  
Don't you worry  
There's a gap in the fence down by the nature preserve



Hey, such a lovely day, such a lovely day  
Such fun, looking at the lovers in a lay-by with my little one

I'm sorry to hear the news today  
Don't you worry  
There's been a speeding disaster so we'll go  
I'm so sorry to hear about the scene  
Don't you worry

Just put on your trainers and get out of it with me  
Hey, such a lovely day, such a lovely day  
Such fun, looking at the lovers in a lay-by with my little one  
Hey, such a lovely day, such a lovely day

Such fun, looking at the lorries in the litter with my lovely one  
We could go dancing, we could go walking  
We could go shopping, we could keep talking  
We could go drinking, we could sit thinking  
We could go speeding, or we could go dreaming, see?  
Oh hey ...



Taken from: <http://www.elyrics.net>  
Pictures : <http://www.rockbackpages.com>

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made in after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1) How to show attention, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• I see.</li><li>• Really?</li><li>• Right.</li><li>• Hmm ...</li></ul>                             | 3) Simple Past Tense (?)<br>The simple past tense is used to tell actions or situations in the past. In interrogative sentences, here are the patterns: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Actions<br/>    (?) Did + S + V1</li><li>• Situations or Conditions<br/>    (?) Was/Were + S + noun + adjective</li></ul> |
| 2) How to show sympathy, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• I'm (very) sorry to hear ....</li><li>• How upsetting/annoying.</li><li>• That's a pity.</li></ul> | 4) Recount texts<br>Recount texts tell a series of events and evaluate their significance in some way.  |

## UNIT III

# THAT SOUNDS A NICE IDEA!





<http://h1.ripway.com>

In your daily life you often have to respond to many kinds of invitations. You may need to accept or decline them. Do you know how to do them very well?

Do you often read procedural texts? The texts that you read may include recipes of Indonesian food. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

---

In pairs, study the following pictures. What are the people doing?



### Task 2

---

Answer the following questions. Share your answers with your partners.

1. Can you cook?
  2. What is your favourite Indonesian food?
  3. Have you ever cooked for yourself or your family? Can you tell the class the steps?
  4. Have you ever invited your friends to taste your cooking? What did you say to invite them?
  5. What did they think about your cooking?
-

## B.Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



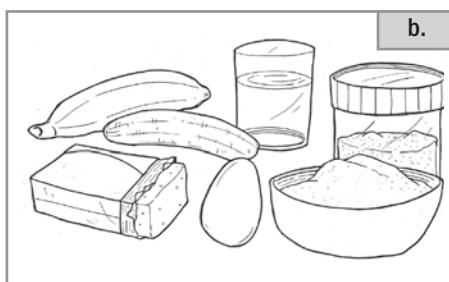
### Task 3

Listen to the steps of preparing fried banana with cheese. Number the pictures according to the steps. Some pictures are already numbered. First, study the words in the box. The listening script is in the Appendix.

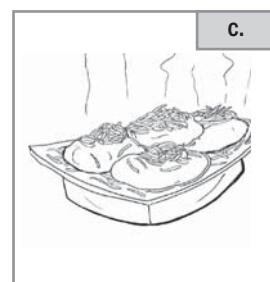
absorbent [əb'zɔ:bənt] (ks)	:	menyerap
cheese [tʃi:z] (kb)	:	keju
drain [dreɪn] (kkt)	:	meniriskan
flour ['flaʊə] (kb)	:	tepung
fry [fraɪ] (kkt)	:	menggoreng
mash [mæʃ] (kkt)	:	melekehkan
mix [mɪks] (kkt)	:	mencampur
recipe ['resipi] (kb)	:	resep



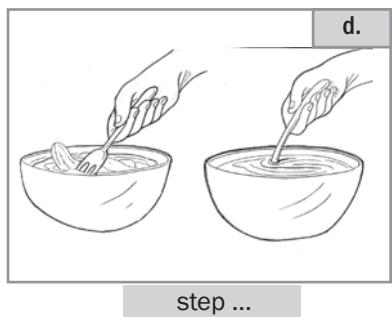
step ...



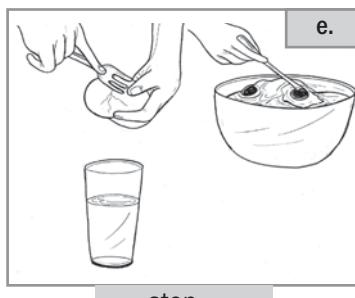
step 1



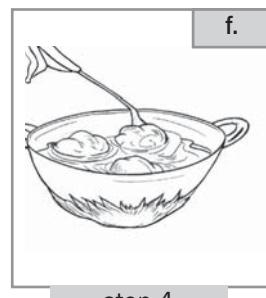
c.



step ...



step ...



step 4



## Task 4

---

Listen carefully to the dialogue between Ayu and Retno. They plan to practise making fried rice. Then, read the statements. Write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false. Correct the false statements. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	Ayu asks Retno to make her fried rice.	F	Ayu asks Retno to help her make fried rice.
2.	Ayu and Retno are going to make fried rice at Ayu's house.		
3.	Retno refuses to help Ayu because she cannot cook.		
4.	Ayu does not want to tell Retno about the recipe before cooking.		
5.	Retno thinks that making fried rice might be simple.		
6.	They cancel their plan to make fried rice because it sounds easy.		
7.	Ayu will fetch Retno.		

---



## Task 5

---

In pairs, study the following expressions.

In **Task 4** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
That sounds a nice idea.	Accepting an offer/invitation
No, thank you.	Declining an offer/invitation

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>First, prepare the spices, eggs, and cooked rice.</li> </ul>	Giving instructions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Then, cut some onions into very thin pieces.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After that, add the egg and scramble them together.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Finally, fry them together with the cooked rice until they are well mixed.</li> </ul>	

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Thank you. I'd like to.</li> </ul>	Accepting an offer/invitation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I would, very much.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>That would be very nice.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>With pleasure.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Thank you very much, but ...</li> </ul>	Declining an offer/invitation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I'm not sure I can.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I'd like to, but ...</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>That's very kind of you, but ...</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>First, <b>prepare</b> the avocado, some ice cubes, coconut water, and coconut shavings</li> </ul>	Giving instructions (The words in bold are used to show actions.)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Then, <b>cut</b> the avocado into small pieces</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Put</b> the ice cubes, the coconut water and coconut shavings into the glass</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After that, <b>put</b> the avocado that is already cut</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Finally, <b>put</b> the condensed milk on the top of the avocado</li> </ul>	



### Cultural Tips

In America, if you are invited to someone's home for dinner or a party, bring flowers, a potted plant, a fruit basket, candy, wine, a book or a small household gift.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## Task 6

---

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Ayu and Retno in **Task 4** you find the word 'cook'. How do you pronounce it?

cook [kuk]

**Note:**

The vowel letter 'o' is pronounced 'u' when spelt 'oo'. Here are some other examples.

book [buk]

good [gud]

look [luk]

foot [fut]

took [tuk]



## Task 7

---

**Study and practise the following conversation. Then, underline the expressions of accepting/declining an offer/invitation.**

Anita : You look so happy today, Adib.

Ruben : Is there something we don't know?

Adib : Yes, my brother has finished his study in Australia and he'll be home tonight.

Anita : Really?

Adib : Yeah, tonight we're going to have a small welcome party. Would you like to come?

Ruben : I would.

Adib : What about you, Anita?

Anita : I'd like to, but tonight I will have to take care of my little brother and my little sister. My parents will attend their friend's wedding party.

Adib : I see. It's okay. Well, I think I have to go now. See you.

Ruben

& Anita : See you



## Task 8

---

**Study the rule below.**

In the dialogue in **Task 7**, you find an expression:

"Tonight **we're going to have** a small welcome party."

We use **going to (do)** when we say that we have already decided to do; what we intend to do in the future.

For example:

A : Have you made the ginger coffee yet?

B : No, but **I'm going to make** it.



## Task 9

---

**Complete the following dialogues using expressions of accepting/declining an offer/invitation. Look at the example.**

- 1) Arnys : Would you have a glass of *Es Palubutung*?  
Marcell: (accept) That would be very nice.
  - 2) Adib : Shall we have lunch at *Padang Resto*?  
Anita : (decline) ....
  - 3) Anita : Won't you have more *Satay*?  
Virga : (decline) ....
  - 4) Andi : Would you like to have dinner with me tonight?  
Retno : (accept) ....
  - 5) Ayu : Will you have something to drink?  
Ruben : (accept) ....
  - 6) Marcell: Would you like to join me for a coffee?  
Andi : (decline) ....
- 



## Task 10

---

**Have a short dialogue with your classmate with the following situations. Use expressions of accepting/declining an offer/invitation. Look at dialogues in Task 9 as examples.**

- offering your friend the food you cooked by yourself
  - inviting your classmate to dinner at your house
  - asking your classmate to help you practise cooking your favourite Indonesian food
- 



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 11

---

**Read the following invitation letters. Then, choose the right statements by giving a tick (✓). Compare your work with a classmate's.**



You are invited to join us for  
Ruben's 16th birthday party!  
Saturday, 2 August 2008  
7 p.m. – closing time  
Ruben's house, Ahmad Yani street No. 27

(1)

Food, drink, games, and entertainment will be provided.  
Be there to celebrate this momentous occasion!  
RSVP to Ruben at (024) 424 444

Mr & Mrs Priyana would like you to come to dinner to celebrate their 25th wedding anniversary.

Date : Monday, 4 August 2008

Time : 8 p.m. – 10 p.m.

Place : Nusa Wungu Restaurant,  
Pierre Tendean street No. 5

We are looking forward to meeting you.

RSVP to Mr Priyana at (0274) 749 999

Dress code: Back to 70's

(2)



We're having a barbecue party!  
Please come and join in on all the fun.

(3)

Sunday, 3 August 2008, at 3 o 'clock  
Diponegoro street No. 18

Mr Smith and the family

RSVP to Mr Smith at (031) 332 432

#### Note:

The followings are some tips on how to write invitation letters:

- state the occasion, date, time, and place;
- include addresses and a map if necessary;
- include a telephone number for RSVPs;
- if there is a dress code, state the preferred dress in the lower left-hand corner of the card; and
- express that you are looking forward to seeing the person.

RSVP ['a: es vi: 'pi:] is the abbreviation for the French phrase répondez s'il vous plaît, meaning 'please answer' letters printed on an invitation asking the person invited to reply.

#### Tick the correct statements.

1.  Ruben is turning 16 on 2 August 2008.  
 Ruben's birthday is on 16 August 2008.  
 Ruben is invited to join a birthday party.
2.  Ruben's birthday party starts at 16 o 'clock.  
 Ruben's birthday party starts at 2 o 'clock.  
 Ruben's birthday party starts at 7 o 'clock.
3.  Mr & Mrs Smith are celebrating their 25<sup>th</sup> wedding anniversary.  
 Mr Smith is having dinner at Nusa Wungu Restaurant with his family.  
 Mr Smith is holding a barbecue party.
4.  Mr Smith is celebrating his birthday on 2 August 2008.  
 Mr Smith is having a barbecue party on 3 August 2008.  
 Mr Smith is invited to a barbecue party 4 August 2008.
5.  Mr & Mrs Priyana are celebrating their wedding anniversary at the restaurant.  
 Mr & Mrs Priyana are holding a barbecue party at Nusa Wungu Restaurant.  
 Mr & Mrs Priyana are holding a wedding anniversary party at Diponegoro street No. 5.



## Task 12

Study the following pictures. Label each with its name. Consult your dictionary if necessary. Look at the example.

garlic

bay leaf

onion

galangal

lemon grass

candlenut

tamarind

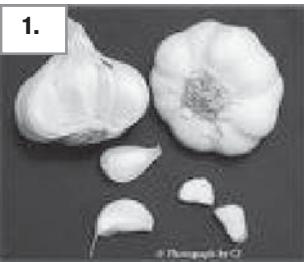
lime leaf

coriander seed

chilli

garlic

1.



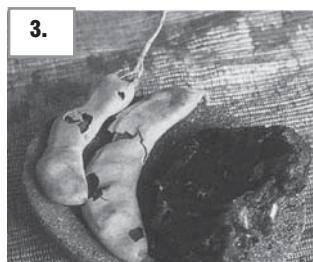
garlic

2.



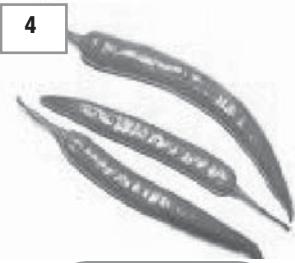
...

3.



...

4.



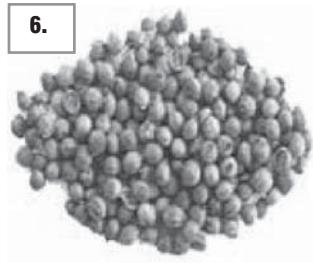
...

5.



...

6.



...

7.



...

8.

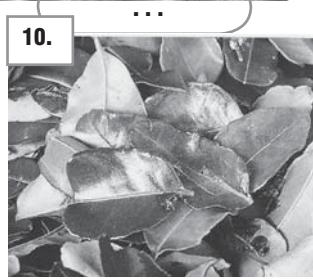


...

9.



10.



...

Pictures: <http://images.google.co.id>



## Task 13

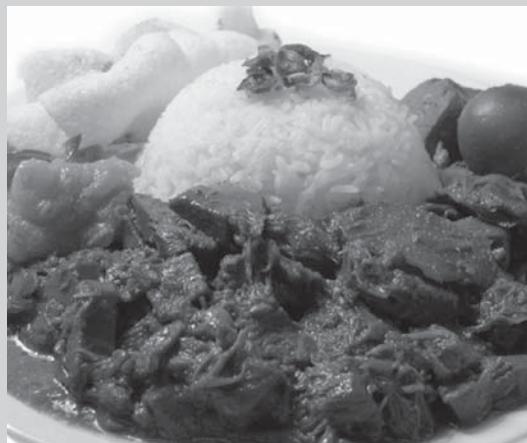
Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text and answer the questions.

bay leaf [beɪ li:f] (kb)	: daun salam
boil [bɔɪl] (kkt)	: didihkan
candlenut ['kændlɪnʌt] (kb)	: kemiri
clove [kləʊv] (kb)	: butir; siung
coriander seed [kɔri'ændə si:d] (kb)	: ketumbar
galangal ['glangeɪl] (kb)	: laos
garlic ['ga:lɪk] (kb)	: bawang putih
green jack fruit [gri:n dʒæk fru:t] (kb)	: nangka muda
pour [pɔ:] (kkt)	: tuang
onion ['ʌnjən] (kb)	: bawang merah
sauté ['səuteɪ] (kkt/kki)	: tumis
shrimp cracker [ʃrɪmp 'krækə] (kb)	: kerupuk udang
shrimp paste [ʃrɪmp peɪst] (kkt)	: terasi udang
simmer ['sɪmə] (kkt)	: didihkan (dengan api kecil)
stir [stə:] (kkt)	: aduk
tamarind [tæmərɪnd] (kb)	: asam
tender ['tendə] (ks)	: lunak

### Gudeg Jogja (Green Jack Fruit Sweet Stew)

#### Ingredients:

- 5 onions
- 10 candlenuts
- 10 garlic cloves
- 4 bay Leaves
- 1/2 lb. (250g) green jack fruit
- 2-1/2 tsp. (12g) coriander seeds
- 1-1/4 tsp. (6g) cumin
- 1/4 cup (62ml) coconut sugar
- 2 cups (500ml) coconut milk
- 2 tsp. (30g) tamarind
- 2 lb. (1kg) chicken (cut into small pieces with bone)
- 5 cups (1.25l) water
- 2 inches bruised galangal



<http://h1.ripway.com>

**Instructions:**

- First, cut green jack fruit 1 inch thick. Wash and boil until tender.
- Next, ground onions, candle nuts, sauté paste, bay leaves, and galangal until fragrant.
- Add the chicken pieces, stir fry until chicken changes colour.
- Then, pour 4 cups of water and coconut sugar, bring to a boil.
- Add the green jack fruit and simmer until the chicken and vegetables are tender.
- Finally, add coconut milk 5 minutes before it's done, bring back to a boil. Serve hot with rice.

This dish is sweet and usually served with shrimp cracker.

Adapted from: <http://original-indonesian-recipe.blogspot.com>

**Notes:**

tbs	: tablespoon	lb	: pound
tsp	: teaspoon	oz	: ounce
kg	: kilogram	l	: litre
g	: gram	ml	: millilitre

**Questions**

1. What does the text tell you?
2. What ingredients do you need?
3. What equipment do you need?
4. What are the steps to cook it?
5. How do you serve it?

**Task 14****Study the following notes.**

The text in **Task 13** is a procedural text telling you how to do something. It usually includes:

- the goal of the activity;
- any materials needed to achieve the goal; and
- steps to accomplish the goal.

The grammatical features of this procedural text include:

- the use of commands, e.g. 'cut', 'add', 'pour';
- the use of action verbs, e.g. 'wash', 'boil';
- the use of precise vocabulary, e.g. 'fry', 'boil', 'fragrant'; and
- the use of adverbials to express details of time and place, manner and so on, e.g. '1 inch thick', 'until fragrant', 'until the chicken changes colour'.



## Task 15

Fill in the blanks with the suitable words in the box. Compare your work with a classmate's. Look at the example.

<b>first</b>	cook	cut	oil
then	finally	absorbed	stir

### Satay Ayam Madura (Madura Chicken Satay)



#### Ingredients:

- 2 chicken breasts, each 360 g
- 3 tbs vegetable oil
- 1 small onion, peeled and finely chopped
- 1 garlic clove, peeled and finely chopped
- 2 candle nuts, grated
- 2 tbs coconut, desiccated
- 1 tbs coriander
- 1 tbs sambal
- ½ tbs lemon grass, ground
- 1 pea-size dried shrimp paste, softened with 2 tbs water
- 1 tbs brown sugar
- bamboo or metal skewers

#### Instructions:

- First, skin the chicken breasts, if desired, and \_\_\_\_\_ into bite-size cubes and set aside.
- \_\_\_\_\_, heat \_\_\_\_\_ in a saucepan and add all remaining ingredients. \_\_\_\_\_ well and heat through before removing from heat.
- After that, add the chicken cubes to cooked mixture and leave for at least 1 hour to allow strong aromatic spices to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_, skewer marinated meat and \_\_\_\_\_ until well done over charcoal heat. Serve.

Adapted from: <http://www.indolists.com>  
Picture: <http://warunglele.com>



## Task 16

In pairs, match the words in Column A with the synonyms in Column B. Consult your dictionary if necessary. Look at the example.

A	B
desiccate	cut
chop	separate
fry	dry
boil	shred
peel	skin
strain	sautē
grate	simmer
steep	soak



## Task 17

To which picture do the steps belong? Look at the example. You may work in pairs.

No.	Pictures		Steps
1.	 Coto Makassar		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Boil one egg and slice it.</li> <li>• Boil young cabbage, long beans, and slice them.</li> </ul>
2.	 Risoles		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cut beef into big chunks.</li> <li>• Ground onions, garlic, coriander seeds, roasted peanuts, and Holland red pepper to a fine paste.</li> </ul>

3.	 Pempek		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Put some dough into your hand and put half boiled egg inside, then boil in water until floating.</li> <li>Drain all the water, deep fry it and add some of the soup.</li> </ul>
4.	 Klepon		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cut beef into big chunks.</li> <li>Ground onions, garlic, coriander seeds, roasted peanuts, and Holland red pepper to a fine paste.</li> </ul>
5.	 Iced Tamarind		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mix 1/2 of the egg with flour and butter.</li> <li>Form thin layer of squares - for wrappers.</li> </ul>
6.	 Gado-gado		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mix 1/2 of the egg with flour and butter.</li> <li>Form thin layer of squares - for wrappers.</li> </ul>

Pictures:

1. <http://www.rabbasa.or.id>
2. <http://k53.pbase.com>
3. <http://farm1.static.flickr.com>
4. <http://images.egullet.com>
5. <http://bp2.blogspot.com>
6. <http://onokinegrindz.typepad.com>

## C. Let's Do More



### Task 18

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box. Then, act the dialogue out.

I'm not sure I can.  
Thank you. I'd like to.  
Would you come?  
Would you like to try it?

- Andi : Den, do you know klepon?  
Denias : No, I don't. What's that?  
Andi : It's a kind of dessert made of flours with brown sugar inside. It is sprinkled with shred coconut. The shape of klepon is like a ball. 1) \_\_\_\_\_. My mother made klepon this afternoon.  
Denias : 2) \_\_\_\_\_.  
Andi : Well, I'll get some for you.  
Denias : Okay.  
Andi : Here you are. Just try it.  
Denias : Hmm ..., it's delicious. Your mum is a good cook.  
Andi : Yes, she is. By the way, tomorrow we're going to have a graduation party for my sister. 3) \_\_\_\_\_.  
Denias : 4) \_\_\_\_\_. Tomorrow I'm going to join a karate competition. I don't know what time it ends.  
Andi : That's okay. Anyway, won't you have more klepon?  
Denias : Yes, thank you.



### Task 19

Read the following text and make the recipe of **Ginger Coconut Coffee**. Compare your recipe with your classmates'.

#### The Sweet Ginger Coconut Coffee (**Bajigur**)

This afternoon I went to my aunt's house. She was making a Ginger Coconut Coffee. I have never drunk this kind of beverage before. I helped her make it. It wasn't difficult to make it. I'll tell you the recipe. First, you have to prepare the ingredients. What you need are 1 inch fresh ginger, sliced thinly, 1/2 tsp. grated fresh nutmeg, 1 stick cinnamon, 2 cloves, 1 inch lemon grass, minced, 4 tbs. Coffee, powdered, 1 cup coconut milk, 2 tbs. palm sugar, 1/2 tsp. salt, 4 tbs young coconut flesh. When those ingredients are already in front of you, you have to heat the

ginger, nutmeg, cinnamon, cloves and lemon grass in 3 cup water. Then, simmer lightly for 10 minutes. After that, turn off the heat, add the ground coffee and allow steeping for a few minutes. Strain the solids from this liquid and add the coconut milk, palm sugar and salt. Simmer gently for 2 minutes. Finally, add the coconut flesh and a sprinkle of nutmeg on top. Well, that's all and you'll have your sweet Ginger Coconut Coffee!



Adapted from:<http://indonesian-street-foods.blogspot.com>

**Ingredients:**

**Instructions:**



## Task 20

Find two Indonesian food recipes. Then, write them down in the boxes.

A large, empty rectangular box with a decorative border consisting of small, repeating diamond shapes. This box is provided for the student to write down two Indonesian food recipes.



### **By the Way...**

Nutmeg is extremely poisonous if injected intravenously.

---

## **D. Let's Check Your Competence**



### **Task 21**

---

**Have a dialogue with your classmate in the situations below. Include expressions of accepting/ declining an offer/invitation.**

- You and your classmate are doing a pair work at your house. Your friend seems very thirsty.
  - You are going to have a birthday party next Sunday.
  - Your classmate wants to practise making “pempek”. She needs your help.
  - You need a friend to accompany you to have lunch at the cafeteria.
- 



### **Task 22**

---

**Find your favourite Indonesian food recipe. Give the instructions orally on how to cook it. Use the action verbs in giving instructions.**

---

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

1) How to accept an offer/invitation, for example:

- Thank you. I'd like to.
- That would be very nice.
- That sounds a nice idea.

2) How to decline an offer/invitation, for example:

- No, thank you.
- I'd like to, but ...
- That's very kind of you, but ...

3) How to give instructions

The words in bold are used to show actions, for example:

- First, prepare the avocado, some ice cubes, coconut water, and coconut shavings.
- Then, cut the avocado into small pieces.
- Put the ice cubes, the coconut water, and coconut shavings into the glass.
- After that, put the avocado that is already cut.
- Finally, put the condensed milk on the top of the avocado.

4) Procedural texts tell how to do something. It is usually organized to include:

- the goal of the activity;
- any materials needed to achieve the goal;
- steps to accomplish the goal.

The grammatical patterns of this procedural text include:

- the use of commands, e.g. 'cut', 'add', 'pour';
- the use of action verbs, e.g. 'wash', 'boil';
- the use of precise vocabulary, e.g. 'fry', 'boil', 'fragrant';
- the use of adverbials to express details of time and place, manner and so on, e.g. '1 inch thick', 'until fragrant', 'until chicken changes colour'.

5) Going to (do )

We use going to (do) when we have already decided to do, what we intend to do in the future.

# **I'M DELIGHTED TO HEAR THAT.**





<http://www.e-hon.jp>.

I believe that you often feel happy and want to share your happiness with others. Do you know how to express it? Sometimes you also have to thank others for what they give to you and have to respond if someone thanks you. Do you know how to do them very well?

You must read a lot of texts everyday. The texts that you read may include narrative texts on Indonesian tales. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through fun tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready

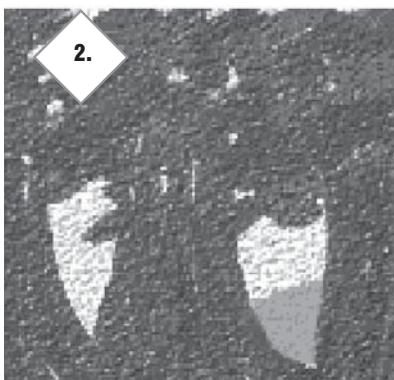


### Task 1

Study the following pictures. Discuss them with your classmate to name the characters and then match them with their origins. Look at the example.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.

- |                   |                                  |                                       |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Nyi Roro Kidul | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Bali                                  |
| 2. .....          | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Java |
| 3. .....          | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/> Central Java    |
| 4. .....          | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/> West Java       |
| 5. .....          | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/> Central Java    |

Pictures: 1. <http://www.moblog.com.sg> 2. <http://esorang.cafe24.com> 3. <http://www.saritaku.com>  
4. <http://www.st.rim.or.jp> 5. <http://www.e-hon.jp>



## Task 2

---

In small groups, answer the following questions.

1. What is the difference among a folktale, myth, and legend?
  2. How many Indonesian folktales have you ever heard? Mention them. What is your favourite one?
  3. What do you think of legends and myths? Do you believe in those stories?
  4. Among the characters in Task 1, who do you think the most interesting?
- 



## Task 3

---

In pairs, study the following expressions. What do they mean?



## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 4

---

**Study the following words and repeat after your teacher. Then, listen to the dialogue carefully and answer the questions. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

- delighted [dr'laitid] (ks) : gembira  
marvellous ['ma:vələs] (ks) : bagus sekali  
mystical ['mɪstɪkl] (ks) : gaib; mistik  
performance [pə'fɔ:məns] (kb): pertunjukan pergelaran  
pleased [pli:zd] (ks) : senang

**Situation: Virga and Ayu are talking about the roles in the school drama they get.**

#### Questions

1. To whom did the role of Ratna Manggali go?
  2. How did Ayu feel after she knew that she got the role of Ratna Manggali? What did she say?
  3. Who got the role of Calon Arang?
  4. What would Virga do to improve her acting?
  5. What would Ayu do to help Virga improve her acting?
- 



### Task 5

---

**In pairs, study the following expressions.**

In the dialogue in **Task 4** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• I'm delighted to hear that.</li><li>• Great!</li></ul>	Saying you are pleased
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Thank you.</li><li>• Thank you very much for your kindness.</li></ul>	Thanking
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Don't mention it.</li></ul>	Responding to thanks

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• I'm very pleased with...</li><li>• It's marvellous!</li><li>• Thank goodness!</li><li>• Thank God for...</li><li>• I'm very glad about ...</li><li>• Fantastic!</li></ul>	Saying you are pleased
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Thank you very much (for...)</li><li>• Thanks.</li><li>• Thanks a lot for...</li><li>• Many thanks.</li></ul>	Thanking
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You're welcome.</li><li>• Not at all.</li><li>• My pleasure.</li><li>• That's OK.</li><li>• That's all right.</li><li>• Any time.</li></ul>	Responding to thanks



## Task 6

**Listen to the following dialogues carefully. Write down the missing expressions. Then, perform the dialogues with your classmate. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

- 1) Andi : Mr Joe likes the story and lets us use it in the next play.  
Denias : .....
- 2) Arnys : .....  
Retno : Any time.
- 3) Virga : .....  
Marcell : Don't mention it.
- 4) Ruben : Thank you very much for lending me your story book.  
Ayu : .....
- 5) Adib : You got A for your writing assignment.  
Anita : .....



## Task 7

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Virga and Ayu in **Task 4** you find the word 'hear'. How do you pronounce it?

hear [hɪə]

**Note:**

The letter 'r' is usually pronounced silent when taking a final position. Here are some other examples.

car [kɑ:]

hair [heə]

door [dɔ:]

year [jə:]

fear ['fɪə]



## Task 8

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box. Then, perform it with your classmate.

Thank you.  
Wow, fantastic!  
My pleasure.

Anita : Hey, Andi could you help me bring these books to Denias's class?

Andi : Yes, sure.

Anita : 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Andi : Any time.

Anita : By the way, have you heard the latest news about our school?

Andi : No, I haven't. What's that?

Anita : We won the first prize in the Drama Competition held by the local government.

Andi : 2) \_\_\_\_\_ I never know we have a good drama club.

Anita : Well, you have to change your perspective. Anyway, thanks for helping me.

Andi : 3) \_\_\_\_\_

Anita : So, let's go to the cafeteria. Let me buy you a drink.

Andi : Really? Thank you so much.



## Task 9

In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate in the following situations.

- Your classmate told you that you passed the test to enter the Drama Club.
- Your classmate told you that she will direct the drama performance next week.
- Your classmate helped you prepare the costume for last night's performance.
- Your classmate gave you a beautiful flower bouquet after you performed in the school drama.



## Task 10

---

Listen carefully to the following story of The Origin of Kesada Ceremony to complete the missing words.

Brawijaya, the king of Majapahit, ... a beautiful daughter named Roro Anteng. Later she got ... to a priest named Joko Seger. Because of an unfortunate situation, they were ... to leave the kingdom. They ... an area in the mountain named Tengger.

They were unhappy because they did not have a child. They ... the peak of the mountain and ... to the gods. Betara Bromo ... them many children with one condition: they would have to sacrifice their youngest child. They finally had twenty-five children. However, they ... their promise to sacrifice the youngest, Kesuma. Suddenly, an eruption ... and Kesuma fell into the crater. His voice was ... saying, "I have to be sacrificed so that you will all live. From now on you should arrange an annual ceremony on the 14th of Kesodo."

Kesuma's brothers and sisters ... the offering ceremony every year by offering fruits, vegetables, rice and meats. This ceremony is still held today as a Kesada ceremony.

Adapted from: <http://www.st.rim.or.jp>



## Task 11

---

Study the rule below.

**In the story of The Origin of Kesada Ceremony in Task 10 you find the following sentences:**

**"This ceremony **is** still held today as a Kesada Ceremony."**

**"They **were** forced to leave the kingdom."**

**Those two sentences are called Passive. The first sentence is the passive form of the present simple and the second sentence is the passive form of the past simple.**

**Present simple                  am/is/are + V3**

**Active : Somebody **holds** a ceremony.**

**Passive : A ceremony **is held** by somebody.**

**Other examples:**

**Some traditional celebrations **are still** celebrated by villagers.**

**Many legends **are told** by old people.**

**Past simple                  was/were + V3**

**Active : The King of Majapahit **built** the castle.**

**Passive : The castle **was built** by the King of Majapahit.**

**Other examples:**

**The village **was destroyed** by a great disaster.**

**The boat **was kicked** by Sangkuriang.**



## Task 12

Ask five of your classmates about their favourite legends and the reasons why. Write down their answers in the table.

No.	Name	Favourite Legends	Reasons
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			



### Cultural Tips

“Please” and “thank you” are very important in America. Say “please” and “thank you” to everyone for even the smallest kindness. Americans say them regardless of rank or how much they are paying for something, and they expect others to do the same.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 13

Read the following announcement. Then, choose the right statement by giving a tick (✓).

#### ANNOUNCEMENT

The school drama club is going to organize the “Sangkuriang” casts audition.

For those who are interested to join the audition, please come to our office on Monday, 4 August, at 2 p.m. to register.

The followings are the requirements:

- your latest photograph of postcard size (2)                    - the registration form (get it in the office)

The audition will be held on Sunday, 10 August, at 9 a.m. The list of the selected candidates will be announced in a week.

We do appreciate your participation. Thank you.

The Committee

p.s.: no charge for the registration form

**Tick the correct statements.**

1.  The school drama club is holding a drama competition.  
 The school drama club is holding an audition for recruiting new members.  
 The school drama club is holding a selection for casts in a drama.
  
2.  The audition will be held on 17 August.  
 The audition will be held on 10 August.  
 The audition will be held on 4 August.
  
3.  The audition will be held at 2 p.m.  
 The audition will be held at 9 p.m.  
 The audition will be held at 9 a.m.
  
4.  The list of the selected candidates will be announced a week after 4 August.  
 The list of the selected candidates will be announced a week after 10 August.  
 The list of the selected candidates will be announced a week after 17 August.
  
5.  To register, they should buy the registration form at the drama club office.  
 To register, they can get the registration form for free at the drama club office.  
 To register, they do not need to fill in the registration form.

**Note:**

The followings are some useful tips in writing an announcement:

- write your announcement to be straightforward and concise so the reader can get the information quickly and be able to refer to it easily;
- if making a positive announcement, keep it short, inviting, and to the point;
- demonstrate your desire to maintain a personal or business relationship, and to build morale, confidence, loyalty, goodwill;
- if announcing or recognizing the achievements of others, you can, if you write correctly, motivate others to achieve the same objectives.
- make the information in your announcement clear and complete, so you are not bombarded with questions later; and
- if you are announcing bad news, make a direct, no-nonsense statement. Temper the announcement with understanding and optimism. Your tone should be considerate and respectful.



## Task 14

---

**Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text entitled *Kyal Jegod* and answer the questions.**

black magician [blæk mæ'dʒɪʃn] (kb)	:	dukun jahat
cattle ['kætl] (kb)	:	ternak
itch [ɪtʃ] (kb)	:	gatal
lumberjack ['lʌmbədʒæk] (kb)	:	penebang pohon

massive ['mæsɪv] (ks)	:	raksasa
meditate ['medɪteɪt] (kki)	:	bersemedi
miracle ['mɪrəkl] (kb)	:	keajaiban
noble ['nəʊbl] (ks)	:	mulia
palace ['pæləs] (kb)	:	istana
pole [pəʊl] (kb)	:	tiang
pond [pɒnd] (kb)	:	kolam
rumour ['ru:mə] (kb)	:	rumor
scabies ['skeɪbi:z] (kb)	:	kudis
stinky [stɪŋkɪ] (ks)	:	bau tidak enak (busuk)
ulcer ['ʌlsə] (kb)	:	bisul

## Kyai Jegod



Once upon a time there was a king who ruled Mataram Kingdom. His name is Amangkurat IV. He was the grandfather of Sultan. He often meditated in a nearby forest, called Garjitarwati.

One day, when a gardener was gathering grass for his cattle in the forest, he looked for some water because it was so hot. He found a

small pond and when he was going to drink some water from it, a dragon came out of the under-water, but it was so friendly to him. The dragon said that if Sultan wanted to build his palace, it was supposed to be located in that forest. Then it disappeared.

Then Sultan started to build the palace in that forest. He demanded strong and old woods and the forest where those woods lied was said to be home of genies and spirits. His lumberjacks could not find anything to eat and the only thing they could have were some rice and water for three days, or sometimes they could not have anything.

Then Sultan ordered that the main pole in the palace's hall had to be built from special wood, which would give strong impression. One night, a servant who was sleeping in the forest heard loud and deep voice. The voice introduced itself as Kyai Jegod. The servant saw that Kyai Jegod was an old, tall, and massive tree. He said that he would voluntarily let himself be cut to make the main pole so that he could stay inside it forever.

The servant told it to Sultan and Sultan let Kyai Jegod stay inside it forever, while Kyai Jegod became the protector of that palace since then.

Adapted from: <http://www.st.rim.or.jp>

### Questions

1. Who is Sultan?
2. What happened to the gardener in the forest?
3. What kind of woods that Sultan wanted to build his palace with?
4. Who is Kyai Jegod? What does it look like?
5. What did Kyai Jegod say to the servant?
6. What has Kyai Jegod done till today?



## Task 15

---

**Study the following notes.**

The text in Task 14 is a narrative text that entertains and instructs the readers. It entertains because it deals with the unusual and unexpected development of events. It instructs because it teaches readers that problems should be confronted, and attempts made to resolve them. The text incorporates patterns of behaviour that are generally highly valued.

The text is organized to include:

- a stage that introduces the main character/s in a setting of time and place;
- a sequence of events, which may begin in a usual pattern, is changed in some way so that the pattern of events becomes a problem for one or more of the characters. The events are evaluated by the character/s, thus making it clear to the reader that a crisis has developed;
- the problem is resolved or attempted to be resolved; and
- a stage which makes explicit how the character has changed and what has been learned from the experience.

The grammatical features include:

- use of particular nouns to refer or to describe the particular people, animals and things that the story is about;
  - use of adjectives to build noun groups to describe the people, animals or things in the story;
  - use of time connectives and conjunctions to sequence events through time;
  - use of adverbs and adverbial phrases to locate the particular events;
  - use of past tense action verbs to indicate the actions; and
  - use of saying and thinking verbs to indicate what characters are feeling, thinking or saying.
- 



## Task 16

---

**Rearrange the jumbled paragraphs of the story entitled *Nyi Roro Kidul* into a good text by numbering the paragraphs. Look at the example.**

Once upon a time, there was a beautiful princess named Kadita. Because of her beauty she was called Dewi Srengenge. It means The Beautiful Sun. Her father was King Munding Wangi. Although he had a beautiful daughter, he was unhappy. It is because he always expected to have a son.

paragraph 1

The poor princess went alone. She did not know where to go. She almost could not cry anymore. But, she had a noble heart. She did not have any bad feeling about her step mother. She always prayed to God. She walked for almost seven days and seven nights. Then, she came to the South Ocean. The ocean was so clean and clear. She jumped into the water and swam.	paragraph ....
Dewi Mutiara called a black magician to curse Kadita. She wanted Kadita's beautiful body full of scabies and itch. The black magician did the order. In the night, Kadita's body was full of scabies and itch. When she woke up, she found her body full of ulcer. It also smelled stinky. The beautiful princess cried. She did not know what to do.	paragraph ....
Suddenly, there was a miracle. The ocean water cured her illness. The scabies and itch were gone. Even, she became more beautiful than before. Not only that, she also had a power to command the whole South Ocean. She became a fairy called Nyi Roro Kidul or The Queen of South Ocean.	paragraph ....
When the King heard the news, he was very sad. No one could cure his daughter's illness. The King did not want her daughter to be a rumour so he agreed to send his daughter away.	paragraph ....
The King decided to marry Dewi Mutiara. He had a son from her. He was very happy. Dewi Mutiara wanted her son to become a king in the future. She asked the King to send his daughter away. However, the King did not agree. He would not let anyone hurt his daughter.	paragraph ....



## Task 17

Match the words in Column A with the antonyms in Column B. Look at the example.

A

- beautiful
- strong
- sad
- clean
- loud
- first
- deep

B

- happy
- last
- quiet
- dirty
- ugly
- weak
- shallow





## Task 18

---

Summarize the text in Task 16.

---



## Task 19

---

Find two stories and write them in your own words. Ask your classmates to give you feedback. Revise your draft and then publish them in the school bulletin.

---

### C. Let's Do More



## Task 20

---

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box.

I'd love to.

That's OK.

Thank you very much.

It's marvellous!

I wish I have the ticket as well.

- Ruben : Hi, Arnys. Guess what? I won two free tickets to watch Nyi Roro Kidul Drama at the town square.
- Arnys : 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- Ruben : Yeah, I won it in the radio quiz.
- Arnys : That's great. Many people eager to watch the drama. However, the tickets are very limited. 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- Ruben : That's why I'm here. I will give you my second ticket.
- Arnys : Really? 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- Ruben : 4) \_\_\_\_\_ Shall we go to the drama tomorrow evening?
- Arnys : 5) \_\_\_\_\_
- 



## Task 21

---

In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate based on the following situations.

1. Your classmate told you that you are chosen to represent your school in the drama held by the local government.
  2. Your classmate allowed you to pick the flowers in her garden to decorate the stage.
  3. Your classmate told you that the teacher loves your performance and recommend you to join her drama club.
  4. Your classmate helped you write the script for the drama competition next month.
-



## Task 22

---

Complete the following story with the words in the box. Make any form changes if necessary.  
Look at the example.

give	hear	propose
come	forgive	learn
grow	find	die
have	want	

### Calon Arang

Calon Arang was a widow of Girah who **gave** birth to a daughter in the jungle. Her daughter ... up to be the famed beauty Ratna Menggali. Calon Arang ... her daughter to marry a prince from Airlangga's palace. However, no prince ... along. Infuriated by this, Calon Arang ... the art of black magic and practised it against the kingdom, causing many people to die.

When the king Airlangga ... of the epidemic in Girah, he consulted his high priest, Mpu Bharadah. The priest then sent his son to ... Ratna Menggali. Calon Arang was pleased, the curse ended, and the couple wed.

Calon Arang inscribed her black magic secret on a *lontar* (palm leaf book). One day, her son-in-law ... it and gave it to his father. When Calon Arang found out that Mpu Bharadah had learned her secrets, she was furious and declared war upon him. The priest ... no choice but to fight and, in a deadly struggle, destroyed the widow by casting a spell. Before she ..., Calon Arang asked forgiveness. Mpu Bharadah ... her and showed her the way to heaven.

Adapted from: <http://www.ball-directory.com>

---



## Task 23

---

Make a summary of the story entitled *Princess Loro Jonggrang* below.

### The Legend of Princess Loro Jonggrang

Once upon a time in Java Island, especially in Prambanan, there were two Hindu kingdoms, they were Pengging and Kraton Boko. Pengging Kingdom was a prosperous and wealthy kingdom led by a wise king named Prabu Damar Moyo who had a son named Raden Bandung Bondowoso.

Kraton Boko was a part of Pengging Kingdom jurisdiction led by a cruel king that was not a man but a giant who was a man eater, named Prabu Boko. However, Prabu Boko had a very beautiful daughter named Princess Loro Jonggrang. Prabu Boko also had a minister named Patih Gupolo that was a giant too. Prabu Boko had a desire to revolt and had control over Pengging Kingdom. Therefore, together with Patih Boko, they gathered the power by training men to become soldiers and collected goods from civil people as provisions.

After having enough preparation, Prabu Boko and all soldiers went to Pengging Kingdom to revolt. Then the war between Pengging and Boko Soldier happened in Pengging kingdom. A lot of soldiers died from both sides. People of Pengging became poor and suffered from starvation.

Knowing that his people were suffering and there were lots of soldiers died, Prabu Damar Moyo sent his son, Raden Bandung Bondowoso to have a battle with Prabu Boko. The fighting between Raden Bandung Bondowoso and Prabu Boko was very furious. Because of the power of Raden Bandung Bondowoso, Prabu Boko can be defeated, and then he died. When Patih Gupalo found out that his king died, he ran away from the battle. Raden Bandung Bondowoso chased him to Kraton Boko.

After he arrived at Kraton Boko, Patih Gupalo reported to Princess Loro Jonggrang that her father died in the battle, that he was killed by a Pengging knight named Raden Bandung Bondowoso. Then the princess cried, she was very sad because of the death of her father.

Raden Bandung Bondowoso finally arrived at Kraton Boko. He was surprised when he saw Princess Loro Jonggrang. She was very beautiful so he proposed her to become his wife. However, Princess Loro Jonggrang did not want to marry Raden Bandung Bondowoso because he killed her father. To refuse his proposal, Princess Loro Jonggrang had a strategy. She had two requests that should be fulfilled by Raden Bandung Bondowoso so that she would agree to marry him. First, she asked him to make Jalatunda well. Then, she asked him to make 1000 temples in one night.

Raden Bandung Bondowoso accepted the requests. Immediately he started to make Jalatunda well and asked Princess Loro Jonggrang to see it. Then, Princess Loro Jonggrang asked Raden Bandung Bondowoso to go into the well, and after that she ordered Patih Gupolo to pile up the well with stone. Both Princess Loro Jonggrang and Patih Gupolo thought that Raden Bandung Bondowoso already died in the well. However, Raden Bandung Bondowoso was still alive. He meditated and finally he could get out from the well safely.

Raden Bandung Bondowoso was very angry with Princess Loro Jonggrang. However, because of her beauty, he soon forgot about his anger. After that, Princess Loro Jonggrang asked Raden Bandung Bondowoso to do the second request which was to make 1000 temples in one night. Therefore Raden Bandung Bondowoso commanded genies to make the temples immediately. However Princess Loro Jonggrang intended to foil his effort to make the temples. She ordered the girls to pound and burn stubbles, so that the sky looked bright as if the morning had come. That made the cocks crow loudly.

Hearing the cocks crowing, people pounding rice, and seeing the brightness in the east, the genies stopped making temples. Genies reported to Raden Bandung Bondowoso that they could not continue building the temples because the morning had come. Raden Bandung Bondowoso got the feeling that the morning had not come yet. He asked Princess Loro Jonggrang to count the amount of the temples. The total was only 999 temples, so there was still 1 temple left. Therefore, Princess Loro Jonggrang refused to marry Raden Bandung Bondowoso. Feeling deceived, Raden Bandung Bondowoso was very angry and cursed her, "Loro Jonggrang, there is only 1 temple left, let you be the one to make it complete". It was a miracle that suddenly Princess Loro Jonggrang transformed to a stone statue.



Until today, the stone statue of Princess Loro Jonggrang is still in Candi Prambanan and Raden Bandung Bondowoso cursed the girls around Prambanan area to become old virgins because they helped Princess Loro Jonggrang. Based on what is believed by old people, the couple who are dating in Prambanan temple will break up.

Adapted from: <http://www.greatindonesia.com>  
Pictures: <http://www.e-smartschool.com>



---

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 24

---

**In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate in the following situations.**

- Your classmate won the national drama competition in Bandung. He also bought you a nice pair of shoes as a souvenir from Cibaduyut.
  - Your classmate told you that your script was chosen to be used in the next school drama and you will be the director of it. Then, you asked her to be your assistant in that event.
- 



### Task 25

---

**Find and write down any mystical story in Indonesia in this box.**

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to say that you are pleased, for example:
  - I'm very pleased with...
  - I'm really delighted.
  - Thank goodness!
  - I'm very glad about...
- 2) How to thank, for example:
  - Thanks a lot for ...
  - Thanks.
  - Thank you very much (for...)
- 3) How to respond to thanks, for example:
  - You're welcome.
  - My pleasure.
  - That's OK.
- 4). Passive forms

Present simple	am/is/are + V3
Past simple	was/were + V3

- 5). A narrative text is a text that entertains and instructs the readers. It entertains because it deals with the unusual and unexpected development of events. It instructs because it teaches readers that problems should be confronted, and attempts made to resolve them. The text incorporates patterns of behaviour that are generally highly valued.

## **UNIT IV**

# **CAN I SEE YOU AT 11 A.M.?**





<http://www.masuya.com.au>

In your daily life you often make appointments with others. Sometimes, you may also have to approve and cancel some appointments. Do you know how to do them?

It is always fun to find new recipes. At times, you might be interested in practising some of them. In this unit, there will be procedural texts on international food recipes. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Answer the following questions based on your experience. Compare your answers with your partner's.

1. Mention some foods from other countries you know.
2. Did you ever eat any of them?
3. What is your favourite one?



### Task 2

In pairs, study the following international foods. Match each with its name and origin based on your knowledge.



1

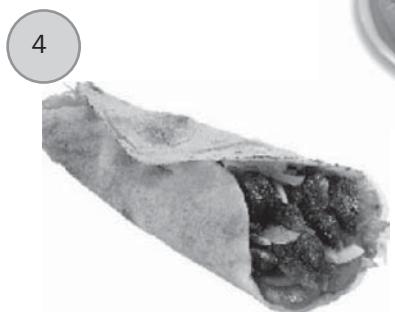


2

3



5



4



Kebab; Turkey

Pizza; Italy

Tempura; Japan

Hamburger; Germany

Nasi Lemak; Malaysia

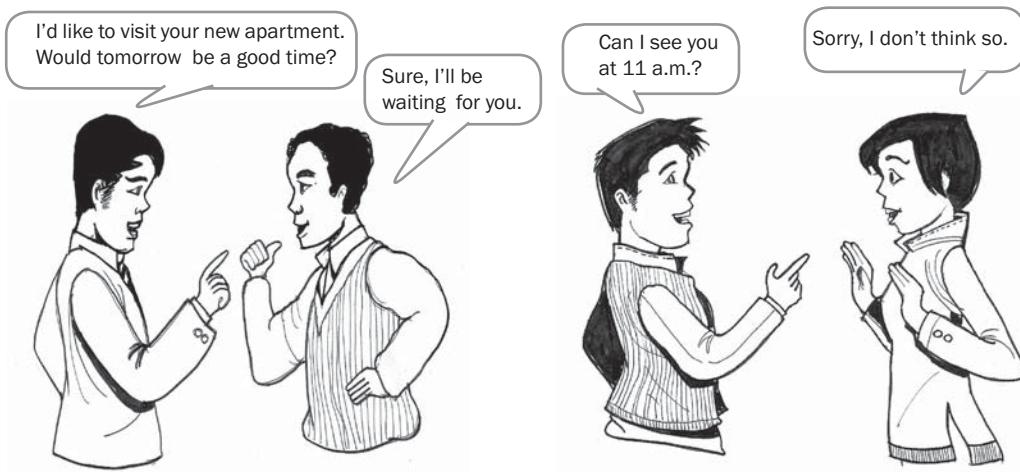
Pictures:

1. <http://www.masuya.com.au>
2. <http://www.resch-frisch.com>
3. <http://farm2.static.flickr.com>
4. <http://jamion.files.wordpress.com>
5. <http://www.cassville.org>



## Task 3

In pairs, study the following expressions.



## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



## Task 4

Listen carefully to the dialogue. Write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false. Correct the false statements. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

Situation: Arnys and Denias are talking about Kebab, a staple food in Turkey.

### Questions

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	Denias dislikes Kebab.	F	Denias likes Kebab.
2.	Arnys has no idea about what Kebab is.		
3.	Kebab is a staple food in Turkey.		
4.	Kebab is made of meat served with vegetables, bread, and sauces.		
5.	Denias invites Arnys for Kebab.		
6.	Arnys declines Denias's invitation.		



## Task 5

---

### Let's say it right.

In the dialogue between Arnys and Denias in **Task 4** you find the word 'wrap'. How do you pronounce it?

wrap [ræp]

### Note:

The letter 'w' is silent in words in which it is followed by '-r'.

Here are some other examples.

wreath [ri:θ]

wrist [rɪst]

wreck [rek]

write [raɪt]

wrinkle ['rɪŋkl]



## Task 6

---

**Listen to the dialogue and answer the questions. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

### Questions

1. Why does Virga invite Ayu to practise making pizza?
  2. Where are they going to practise making pizza?
  3. What does Ayu say when Virga asks her to come at 2 p.m.?
  4. What time will they finally practise making pizza?
- 



## Task 7

---

### Study the following expressions.

In **Task 4** and **Task 6** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
• Would tomorrow be possible?	Making appointments
• So, would tomorrow at 2 p. m. be possible?	
• How about at 4 p.m.?	
• Sure, that will be fine.	Approving appointments
• Great, it's a perfect time.	
• I'm afraid I can't.	Cancelling appointments

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Can I see you at 11 a.m.?</li><li>• Will it be convenient if I come at 3 p.m.?</li></ul>	Making appointments
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sure, I'll be waiting for you.</li><li>• Yes, I think so.</li></ul>	Approving appointments
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sorry, I don't think so.</li><li>• Sorry, I can't.</li><li>• I'm afraid not.</li><li>• No, I can't.</li></ul>	Cancelling appointments



## Task 8

**Study and practise the following dialogues in pairs.**

### Dialogue 1

- Marcell : Do you have a recipe book of making tempura?  
Arnys : Yes, I do.  
Marcell : Great! My sister needs it. May I borrow it?  
Arnys : Of course.  
Marcell : Can I see you at 10 a.m. tomorrow?  
Arnys : Sure, I'll be waiting for you.

### Dialogue 2

- Anita : I found a new recipe on making pizza. It is called fruit pizza.  
Adib : Really? I never heard of it.  
Anita : So, I'd like to invite you to make the fruit pizza together.  
Adib : That sounds nice. Will it be convenient if I come tomorrow at 5 p.m.?  
Anita : Sorry, I don't think so. How about at 7 p.m.?  
Adib : Okay, that will be fine.



### Cultural Tips

When you are doing business in the United States, you must be on time. Americans view someone being late as rude, showing a lack of respect and having sloppy, undisciplined personal habits. Being "on time" in business situations generally means being about five minutes early. Five minutes late is acceptable with a brief apology. Ten to fifteen minutes late requires a phone call to warn of the delay and to apologize.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## Task 9

---

Complete the short dialogues with appropriate expressions to make, approve and cancel an appointment. Look at the example.

- 1) Ayu : Can I see you tomorrow at 8 a.m.  
Retno : (approve) Yes, I think so.
  - 2) Ruben : I'd like you to help me decorate my new kitchen. Would tomorrow be possible?  
Anita : (cancel) .....
  - 3) Retno : (make) .....  
Arnys : I'm afraid I can't.
  - 4) Andi : Let's try the new restaurant at Amarylis Street No.5. How about Tuesday the fifth?  
Denias : (approve) .....
  - 5) Marcell : I need your help to make a chocolate cake. Would tomorrow morning be possible?  
Virga : (approve) .....
  - 6) Adib : Can I see you tomorrow at 5 p.m.  
Ayu : (cancel) .....
- 



## Task 10

---

Ask five of your classmates some of their favourite international foods. Look at the example.

No.	Name	Food
1.	Denias	Kebab, pizza, and hamburger
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		

---



## Task 11

Listen to the following monologue to complete the missing words. The listening script is in the Appendix. Then, list the ingredients and the steps.

### Making Crab Soup

Making crab soup is not difficult. What you need are 2 .... of fish stock, 2 medium-sized ...., 100 gram ...., 50 gram scallions, 50 gram Indonesian parsley, ...., and pepper to taste. First, make fish stock by .... fish bones in 8 cups of water. Then .... these bones after a few minutes. .... the crabs, split into several parts. .... ginger into very thin slices, the scallions and Indonesian parsley. After that, .... stock for about 5 minutes, put everything into the stock. Finally, .... salt and pepper to taste.

Ingredients:

1. .....
2. .....
3. etc.

Steps:

1. .....
2. .....
3. etc.



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 12

Put the steps in making pizza in the right order. You may work in pairs.



- Enjoy your Pizza
- Put pizza toppings
- Make pizza dough
- Put pizza sauce

Adapted from:  
<http://www.recipepizza.com>



## Task 13

Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text and answer the questions.

crisp [krɪsp] (ks)	:	renyah
dough [dəʊ] (kb)	:	adonan
gravy ['greɪvi] (kb)	:	kuah daging
sauce [sɔ:s] (kb)	:	saus
slice [slais] (kb)	:	irisar, potongan
squeeze [skwi:z] (kkt)	:	memeras
topping ['tɒpɪŋ] (kb)	:	cream, keju, dll yang diletakkan diatas makanan

### Nasi Lemak



<http://farm1.static.flickr.com>

#### Ingredients:

1 cup rice	salt to taste
3 screw pine leaves	1 grated coconut

#### Method:

- First, clean the rice and drain.
- Then, squeeze out 2 cups of thick coconut milk with screw pine leaves. Add in salt.
- If you desire, you can also add in some sliced onions and ginger.
- Finally, serve this rice with sliced hard-boiled eggs, cucumber, and Sambal Ikan Bilis.

#### Note:

Nasi Lemak is usually served with Sambal Ikan Bilis.

Sambal Ikan Bilis is made of dried ikan bilis (anchovies), bombay onion, onion, garlic, tamarind juice, dried chilies, shrimp paste, salt and sugar.

## Sambal Ikan Bilis

### Ingredients:

1 bombay onion  
1/2 cup dried ikan bilis (anchovies)  
1 clove garlic  
2 tbs tamarind juice  
4 onions  
8 dried chillies  
shrimp paste (belacan) (optional)  
salt and sugar to taste



### Method:

- First, fry the ikan bilis until crisp and put aside.
- Then, grind the shrimp paste together with onion, garlic, dried chilies. Slice the bombay onion into rings.
- After that, heat 2 tbs oil in a pan and fry the ground ingredients until fragrant. Add in the onion rings.
- Add tamarind juice, salt, and sugar.
- Cook, stirring occasionally until the gravy thickens.
- Add in the ikan bilis and mix well.
- Finally, serve with steaming hot Nasi Lemak.

Adapted from: <http://www-ieee.eecs.berkeley.edu>  
Picture: <http://feastmalaysia.blogspot.com>

### Notes:

As explained in Unit 3, a procedural text is a text that tells you how to do something. It is usually organized to include:

- the goal of the activity;
- any materials needed to achieve the goal; and
- steps to accomplish the goal.

The grammatical patterns of this procedural text include:

- the use of commands, e.g. 'cut', 'add', 'pour';
- the use of action verbs, e.g. 'wash', 'boil';
- the use of precise vocabulary, e.g. 'fry', 'boil', 'fragrant'
- the use of adverbials to express details of time and place, manner and so on, e.g. '1 inch thick', 'until fragrant', 'until chicken changes colour'.

## Questions

1. What do the texts tell you?
  2. What ingredients do you need to make Nasi Lemak?
  3. What are the steps to cook it?
  4. What ingredients do you need to make Sambal Ikan Bilis?
  5. What are the steps to cook it?
  6. How do you serve Nasi Lemak?
- 



## Task 14

---

In pairs, write the recipe on one of the following international foods.

a.



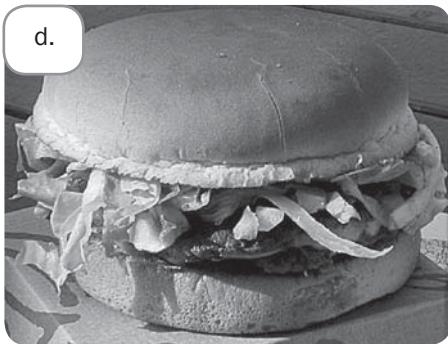
b.



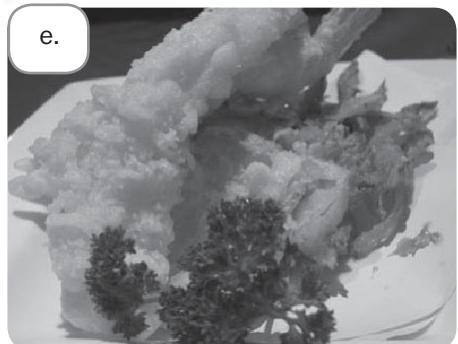
c.



d.



e.



### Pictures:

- a. <http://upload.wikimedia.org> b. <http://aniveldemyself.files.wordpress.com>  
c. <http://www.about-losangelesca.com> d. <http://plus.maths.org> e. <http://www.jenius.com.au>
-



## Task 15

Answer the questions and then find the answers in the box by circling them. Compare your answers with your partner's. Look at the example.

1. room where you cook food
2. large nut from a type of palm tree
3. The biscuits are not ..... any more, they have gone soft.
4. ..... originated in Hamburg.
5. material which goes to make something
6. the synonym of to "blend"
7. sauce from meat during cooking
8. thin piece cut off something to eat
9. substance that you use to make food sweet
10. "tsp" stands for .....
11. cream, melted cheese, etc., put on the top of food such as cakes, pizzas, ice cream, etc.

K	I	T	C	H	E	N	U	Z	C	R	I	S	P	V
A	I	R	T	X	F	M	V	A	I	R	C	B	W	P
R	J	S	M	I	X	N	T	B	J	S	I	B	E	G
G	K	H	U	Y	G	O	O	C	K	T	R	C	Y	X
O	R	A	V	Y	H	P	P	D	L	U	E	L	C	T
B	L	M	V	Z	I	Q	P	E	M	V	N	K	O	L
C	M	B	W	A	S	L	I	C	E	W	G	H	C	M
D	N	U	S	B	J	R	N	F	N	X	H	V	O	I
E	O	R	U	C	I	N	G	R	E	D	I	E	N	T
F	P	G	G	D	K	S	W	G	O	Y	H	I	U	R
G	T	E	A	S	P	O	O	N	P	Z	Y	D	T	G
H	Q	R	R	E	L	T	X	H	Q	A	J	J	M	A

## C. Let's Do More



### Task 16

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box.

Would Saturday at 3 p.m. be possible?

I'm afraid, I can't

how about Sunday at 10.30 a.m.?

Great, it's a perfect time.

Andi : Retno, have you tried Japanese tempura at Diponegoro street?

Retno : No, I haven't.

Andi : Will you accompany me to go there?

Retno : Sure, when?

Andi : 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Retno : Umm ... 2) \_\_\_\_\_ I have a dancing class next Saturday.

Andi : I see. So, 3) \_\_\_\_\_

Retno : 4) \_\_\_\_\_

Andi : Okay, see you next Sunday.

Retno : See you.



### Task 17

Complete the following recipe of making **Chinese Fried Rice** with words in the box.

heat

egg

fork

pan

brown

#### Chinese Fried Rice

##### Ingredients:

2 eggs -- beaten

1 red or green pepper -- chopped

2 large onions -- chopped

10 ml garlic -- minced

2 tsp corn oil

3 green onions -- chopped

1/4 cup soy sauce -- optional

1 cup instant rice

3 stalks celery -- chopped

1 cup water -- boiling

**Directions:**

1. Cook the eggs in a large ... over low heat until set.  
Break up with a ... Remove from pan.
2. Combine the onions, oil, and 2 tsp of the soy sauce in the pan. Cook and stir until onion is ... Add remaining ingredients and ... to boiling.
3. Reduce heat, simmer 1 minute. Stir in reserved ...  
Remove from heat, cover tightly, let stand 5 minutes.  
Stir before serving.



Adapted from: <http://www.recipeatlas.com>

Picture: <http://www.dkimages.com>



### **Task 18**

**Write down your favourite food recipe from another country.**

---



### **Task 19**

**Find two recipes from other countries and present them to the class.**

---

## **D. Let's Check Your Competence**



### **Task 20**

**In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate. Include expressions of making, approving, and cancelling appointments.**

- You and your classmate plan to visit a new Kebab restaurant.
  - You want to practise making Spaghetti. You need your friend's help.
  - You want to borrow some cooking stuffs from your friend.
-



## Task 21 –

**Find two international food recipes. Then, write them down in the boxes.**

1)

A large gray square frame with black dots at the corners and along the edges.

2)

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

1) How to make appointments, for example:

- Would tomorrow be possible?
- Can I see you at 11 a.m.?

2) How to approve appointments, for example:

- That will be fine.
- Great, it's a perfect time.

3) How to cancel appointments, for example:

- I'm afraid I can't.
- Sorry, I don't think so.

4) Procedural texts

A procedural text is a text that aims to tell you how to do something. It is usually organized to include:

- the goal of the activity
- any materials needed to achieve the goal
- steps to accomplish the goal

# UNIT REVIEW SEMESTER 1

I. Listen to short conversations between two people. Choose the best answer to each question.  
The listening script is in the Appendix.

1. What is the intention of Anita's expression?
  - a. to ask how Denias is
  - b. to greet Denias
  - c. to say how she is
  - d. to say goodbye
  - e. to state how she is
2. What is Virga's intention?
  - a. to introduce Retno
  - b. to introduce herself
  - c. to ask how Retno is
  - d. to state how she is
  - e. to greet Retno
3. What does Arnys mean?
  - a. She says that she is pleased.
  - b. She wants to borrow the novel.
  - c. She will lend Ruben the novel.
  - d. She responds to Ruben's thanks.
  - e. She would like to thank Ruben for the novel.
4. What does Andi mean?
  - a. He wants to ask about Adib's condition.
  - b. He wants Ayu to know that Adib got an accident.
  - c. He shows his sympathy.
  - d. He knew that Adib got an accident.
  - e. He wants to apologize to Adib.
5. What does Ayu mean?
  - a. She wants to make a chocolate pudding with Retno.
  - b. She does not want to make a chocolate pudding.
  - c. She wants Retno to make her a chocolate pudding,
  - d. She accepts Retno's invitation.
  - e. She declines Retno's invitation.

6. What does Arnys imply?
  - a. She accepts Adib's invitation.
  - b. She declines Adib's invitation.
  - c. She wants to have dinner at another place.
  - d. She wants to have dinner with somebody else.
  - e. She asks Adib to have dinner at another restaurant.
7. What does Virga mean?
  - a. She does not have time tomorrow.
  - b. She will not go to the market tomorrow.
  - c. She asks Anita to buy some fruits.
  - d. She declines an appointment.
  - e. She approves an appointment.
8. What does Retno imply?
  - a. She really wants to win the poetry reading competition.
  - b. She wants to express that she is pleased.
  - c. She wants to join the poetry reading competition.
  - d. She wants to thank Marcell.
  - e. She wants to tell Marcell that she won the competition.

**II. Choose the best expressions to complete each of the following dialogues.**

9. Ruben : Can I see you at 9 a.m. tomorrow?  
Ayu : \_\_\_\_\_ I have a class at 9 a.m.
  - a. Sorry, I don't think so.
  - b. Sure, that will be fine.
  - c. I'll be waiting for you.
  - d. Yes, I think so.
  - e. Great. It's a perfect time.
10. Arnys : Marcell promised to take me to the boutique, but he did not come. He didn't tell me why he couldn't make it.  
Adib : \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. How upsetting.
  - b. How marvellous.
  - c. That sounds nice.
  - d. That's great!
  - e. That's fantastic!

11. Denias : My uncle will be directing a drama for a TV programme. He would like to ask you to play in it.

Ayu : \_\_\_\_\_

- a. I'm delighted to hear about that.
- b. How annoying.
- c. I'm sorry to hear that.
- d. That's a pity.
- e. Don't mention it.

**Questions 12 - 16 are based on the following text.**

### The Football Match

My brother and I went to a football match yesterday. Our school team was playing against another High School team. Our team wore red and white shirts, white shorts, and red stockings. The other team wore orange and black shirts, orange shorts, and black stockings. "They look like bees", my brother said, and we laughed.

They played like bees too. They ran very fast, attacked very hard, and passed the ball to each other very fast. Soon they scored their first goal. My brother and I shouted and shouted, "Come on, Valley School! Come on, the Valleys!" Our headmaster was near us and he was shouting too. He seemed very enthusiastic. However, the high school scored another goal. We were very sad.

Then, one of the "bees" stopped the ball with one of his hands, so our team got the free kick. Our captain took it and scored a goal. We shouted, "Hooray!" The score was now 2:1. That was better.

Now our team began to play better—or the "bees" were getting tired. Our team scored another goal before half-time. In the second half of the match, both teams tried very hard, but neither scored, so at the end the score was still two all.

Adapted from: L.A. Hill, 1963

12. The text tells about ...

- a. joining a football match
- b. winning a football match
- c. attending a football match
- d. the school football team
- e. playing football

13. What did the writer and his brother do after the rival team scored the first goal?

- a. They shouted to support their school team.
- b. They shouted to the headmaster.
- c. They laughed at their school team.
- d. They ran very fast.
- e. They played like bees.

14. Which statement is true according to the text?
- The writer and his brother will watch a football match.
  - The writer's school team wore orange and black shirts.
  - The writer called his school team the "bees".
  - The writer's school team scored the first goal.
  - The opponent scored the first goal.
15. A word in the text which has the same meaning as "leader" is ...
- brother
  - goal
  - captain
  - team
  - score
16. "He seemed very enthusiastic." The antonym of the underlined word is ...
- energized
  - excited
  - eager
  - apathetic
  - impatient

**Questions 17 - 20 are based on the following text.**

### Pempek Palembang

#### Ingredients

Main Ingredients:

- 250 gr cod or any white meat fish
- 125 gr tapioca or corn flour
- 2 tbsp light soya sauce
- Salt and pepper
- 1 tbsp oil (to prevent the dough sticky)
- For type *Kapal selam*, you need 3 hard boiled eggs slice half

Soup Ingredients:

- 5 chillies
- 100 gr palm sugar
- 2 tbsp sugar

- Salt and pepper
- 2 tbsp light soya sauce
- 2 tbsp *ebi* (dried prawn)
- Handful diced cucumber
- 4 tbsp rice vinegar
- 1 tsp tamarind
- 250 ml water

### **Method**

Soup Method

Boil all soup ingredients into sauce pan

Serving:

1. Blend all the ingredients into food processor until the smooth like a dough, you could put splash of water if you need it.
2. Put enough fish cake into your hand and put half boiled egg in the middle and cover it with the dough and put into boiled water until floating.
3. Drain all the water, deep fry it and add some of the soup.

*Adapted from: www.cest-ma-maison.net*

17. The text tells you about ...
  - a. how to make Pempek Palembang
  - b. how to eat Pempek Palembang
  - c. the soup ingredients to make Pempek Palembang
  - d. how to prepare the ingredients to make Pempek Palembang
  - e. the equipment needed to make Pempek Palembang
18. The followings are the main ingredients you need to make Pempek Palembang, except ...
 

...

  - a. pepper
  - b. sugar
  - c. corn flour
  - d. soya sauce
  - e. salt
19. What is the use of the food processor?
  - a. to boil the ingredients
  - b. to measure the ingredients
  - c. to fry the ingredients
  - d. to blend the ingredients
  - e. to heat the ingredients

20. Why is oil needed to prepare the dough?
- to fry the dough
  - to clean the dough
  - to heat the dough
  - to make the dough softer
  - to prevent the dough from being sticky

**Questions 21 - 30 are based on the following text.**

### **Queen Aji Bidara Putih**

Muara Kaman lies along the Mahakam River, in eastern Borneo. In the past the area was a kingdom ruled by Queen Aji Bidara Putih. She was a typical queen of myths: beautiful, wise, and sensitive. Many princes and kings proposed to her but she always refused them because she was more concerned with ruling her country and guarding her people.

One day, a Chinese boat came to eastern Borneo. First, the people thought it was a merchant ship but the boat was loaded with trade goods and highly trained soldiers. Their envoys brought gold and porcelain to announce the marriage proposal from a prince of China. The queen didn't refuse instantly and replied that she had to ponder the proposal first. After the envoys left the palace, the queen called a court officer and ordered him to infiltrate the Chinese boat to gather information on the prince.

When night fell the officer sneaked onto the boat, got by all the guards, and finally found the prince's room. The large door would not open and he couldn't find a peek hole, so the officer put his ear to the wall, trying to catch sounds from inside. He heard that the prince was having his dinner and the noise of his chewing and slurping surprised the officer. It was like a boar that he had once heard when he was hunting.

He quickly left the boat and returned to the palace. He reported that the prince must have been a phantom, not a human. He believed that the phantom could be in a human's form only during the daytime. The queen was so surprised and got angry. On the next day, she refused his proposal.

The enraged prince ordered his troops to raid Muara Kaman. The battle was won by the prince's huge band of troops. As they drew near to the palace, Queen Aji Bidara Putih chewed a leaf of betel vine and sang a mantra while holding it. When she threw it at the Chinese troops, it turned to giant centipedes. The Chinese troops started to retreat but three centipedes chased them and sank the boat. The site of the sunken ship is now known as Danau Lipan (Lake of Centipedes), with Chinese treasures hidden on the lake's bed.

Adapted from: [www.st.rim.or.jp](http://www.st.rim.or.jp)

21. The text tells about ...
- Queen Aji Bidara Putih
  - The Mahakam River
  - The Prince's Proposal
  - The Sunken Ship
  - The Chinese Troops

22. Where did the story take place?
- in a kingdom in China
  - in western Borneo
  - in the area that is now called Muara Kaman
  - in a sunken ship
  - in the Lake of Centipedes
23. How was Queen Bidara Putih like?
- beautiful, sensible, and sensitive
  - beautiful, uncaring, and sensitive
  - pretty, wise, and indifferent
  - pretty, sensible, and indifferent
  - beautiful, wise, and unconcerned
24. Why did the envoys bring gold and porcelain?
- to trade them for stocks
  - to announce the marriage proposal from a prince of China
  - to load their ship
  - to share them with the residents
  - to sell them to the queen
25. How did Queen Aji Bidara Putih respond to the proposal?
- She agreed with the proposal instantly.
  - She approved the proposal right away.
  - She did not refuse the proposal immediately.
  - She did not reply the proposal.
  - She refused the proposal.
26. Why did the prince raid Muara Kaman?
- because the queen was spying on the prince
  - because the queen did not accept his proposal
  - because the queen attacked the prince's kingdom
  - because the queen returned the prince's gifts
  - because the queen chased the prince away
27. Which statement is not true according to the text?
- The prince wanted to marry the queen.
  - The prince had gold and porcelain to announce the marriage proposal.
  - The prince ordered his troops to attack Muara Kaman.
  - The prince won the battle.
  - The prince turned into a giant centipede.

28. The word “he” (paragraph 3, sentence 3) refers to ...
- a. the court officer
  - b. the prince
  - c. the envoy
  - d. the phantom
  - e. the giant centipedes
29. “Their envoys brought gold and porcelain to ...” The synonym of “envoy” is ...
- a. team
  - b. messenger
  - c. troop
  - d. advocate
  - e. squad
30. “... prince ordered his troops to raid Muara Kaman.” The synonym of “raid” is ...
- a. establish
  - b. ascertain
  - c. attack
  - d. expand
  - e. enlarge

# **IT WAS THE LEAST I COULD DO.**





<http://www.sunkisvillas.com>

You thank others for what they give to you and you may also have to respond when someone thanks you. Do you know how to do them very well?

Stories generally interest us. Many are from overseas. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Work in pairs to answer the following questions based on your knowledge.

1. Do you know some overseas folktales? Mention them.
2. What is your favourite one?
3. Mention the characters of the story.
4. What does the story tell you?



### Task 2

The followings are characters of some overseas folktales. Match each with the suitable title of the folktale.

Cinderella

Mermaid

Bloody Mary

Vampire



Pictures:

1. <http://www.michaelspronanimation.com>
2. <http://www.worth1000.com>
3. <http://www.shadowlandtoys.com>
4. <http://www.disney-vacation-time.com>

## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 3

---

Listen to the dialogue carefully. Then, answer the following questions. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Situation:** Adib is at Retno's house. He has bought her a novel.

#### Questions

1. What did Adib bring for Retno?
  2. What did Retno feel about the present? What did she say to Adib?
  3. Why did Retno need it badly?
  4. What did Retno promise when she was finished with her writing?
  5. What did Adib say to show his gratitude to Retno?
- 



### Task 4

---

In pairs, study the following expressions.

In Task 3 you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions presented in a table.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Thank you very much for your kindness.</li><li>• Thank you.</li></ul>	Thanking
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It was the least I could do.</li><li>• Don't mention it.</li></ul>	Responding to thanks

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Function
• That was really nice of you.	Thanking
• Thanks a million (for...)	
• I'm very grateful to you.	
• I'm much obliged.	
• You're welcome.	Responding to thanks
• It's no trouble at all.	
• Delighted I was able to help.	

---



## Task 5

### Let's say it right.

In the dialogue between Adib and Retno in Task 3 you find the word ‘because’. How do you pronounce it?

because [br'kɒz]

### Note:

The letter ‘s’ is pronounced ‘z’ when in the final syllable preceded and/or followed by a vowel symbol. Here are some other examples.

choose [tʃu:z]

refuse ['refju:z]

please [pli:z]

surprise [sə'praɪz]

present ['prezənt]

use [ju:z]



## Task 6

**Listen carefully to the following dialogues. Complete the missing expressions. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

- 1) Arnys : Thank you very much for your kindness. I wouldn't be able to do that by myself.  
Ruben : \_\_\_\_\_ You can call me any time you need me.
- 2) Marcell : I got A for my story telling assignment. You're the one who gave me the idea about the story I told the class. \_\_\_\_\_  
Anita : I'm glad it's helpful.
- 3) Adib : I have given the story book we bought yesterday to my sister. She loves the book you have chosen. That was really nice of you.  
Ayu : \_\_\_\_\_ You know, most girls love to read romantic stories.
- 4) Retno : Thank you very much for lending me all of your story books. I have my niece stay at home all day long.  
Virga : \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) Andi : I was blessed for having you as my friend. You are always there when I need your help. \_\_\_\_\_  
Denias : It was the least I could do. That's what friends are for.



### Cultural Tips

In the United Kingdom, whenever you have been a guest in a home, you should definitely send a hand-written thank-you note. Indeed, it is a thoughtful gesture to thank your hosts in writing for any hospitality, even a short drinks party.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>



## Task 7

---

In pairs, have a short dialogue with your classmate. Use expressions of thanking and responding to thanks.

- You thank your classmate for picking you up while your brother was still working.
  - You thank your mother for cooking your favourite cake.
  - You thank your classmate for accompanying you to buy a book of foreign folktales.
  - You thank your sister for helping you take care of your novel collection.
- 



## Task 8

---

Listen to the following monologue to complete the missing information. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Blue Hen's Chicks**  
**retold by**  
**S. E. Schlosser**

A Delaware man ... to war during the American Revolution. For entertainment, he ... with him two fighting cocks. When asked about these chickens, the soldier ... slyly: "They are the chick's of a blue hen I have at home."

Well, these cocks ... fight! They were so fierce, they ... quite a stir among the men. It did not take long for the Delaware troops to begin boasting among the troops from the other states that they could out-fight anyone, just like those famous fighting cocks. "We're the Blue Hen's Chickens. We will fight to the end!" ... the theme of the Delaware troops. The other troops ... to calling the men from Delaware "The Blue Hen's Chicks", and to this day, Delaware is known as the Blue Hen State.

Adapted from: <http://www.americanfolklore.net>



## Task 9

---

Tell the class about your favourite overseas story. Look at Task 8 as a model.



### By the Way...

One of the popular overseas stories is Cinderella. The word "Cinderella" means one who unexpectedly achieves recognition or success after a period of obscurity and neglect.

Adapted from: <http://wikipedia.org>



## 2. Read and Write



### Task 10

---

**Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text and answer the questions.**

barn [bɑ:n] (kb)	:	gudang
cloak [kləʊk] (kb)	:	mantel; jubah
commotion [kə'məʃən] (kb)	:	keributan
enchant [ɪn'tʃa:nt] (kkt)	:	memikat
frantic ['fræntɪk] (ks)	:	kalut
hut [hʌt] (kb)	:	pondok
murmur['mə:mə] (kki)	:	berbisik
pellet ['pelɪt] (kb)	:	butiran
rattle['rætl] (kkt)	:	menderak-derakkan
rein [reɪn] (kb)	:	tali kekang
soothe [su:ð] (kkt)	:	menenangkan
spear ['spiə] (kb)	:	tombak
stalk [stɔ:k] (kkt)	:	mengikuti
suspicious [sə'spiʃəs] (ks)	:	curiga
wicked ['wɪkɪd] (ks)	:	jahat

### The Snow Bride



Many years ago, when great forests still covered the hills of Japan, a samurai named Hikaru lost his way in a sudden winter storm. Snow pellets sharp as spears pierced his cloak and drove him blindly into the deep woods.

Cold stalked him, and he had no weapon to battle this invisible enemy. Finally his horse burst into a clearing. The wind rattled the tree limbs, but no snow fell here. A wooden house squatted beside a huge camphor tree. The snow was a smooth white carpet. This quiet place seemed peaceful enough, but he sensed someone watching, waiting in silence.

A door opened. A white-haired woman studied him. Holding out her arms, she murmured, "Welcome, my lord. Enter and feel no fear."

Hikaru smiled. He had killed fear long ago. But his horse ran away from the tiny hut. The samurai pulled the reins and drove it forward until the horse reluctantly moved forward. He found a lean-to built on the side of the hut, sheltered on one side by the hut and on the other by the tree. When his mount discovered some hay, its hunger drove out all fear. He left the animal peacefully grazing and went to find his hostess.

The hut was simply furnished, though firelight created a golden sparkle off the dishes and cups she set before him. Where had this woman found such luxuries, he wondered as she silently served him.

After he had eaten, he fixed his eyes on her. "Who are you?"

She kept her gaze modestly lowered. "I am called Yuki, my lord. This place is my home."

Yuki glided around the room in a silken whisper. Gradually he became aware of how quiet the woods had become. "Are you not lonely here?"

Her lips quirked in a shadow of a smile. "You are here, my lord. As long as you are pleased with me, how could I be lonely?"

Time passed, but it was always winter. Hikaru forgot everything but the lovely woman who anticipated his wants. As soon as he thought, "I want – " Yuki was there, offering food and drink to fill his belly or song to soothe his soul. Yet men are never content. For a warrior, even an earthly paradise can become a wicked prison.

One day, Hikaru woke with anger. Nothing Yuki said or did pleased him.

Dashing dishes off the table, the tiny crashes echoed how he'd destroyed his enemies in the past. The memory inflamed his temper. Enough of this quiet and inaction! He could find that in death.

"My lord, tell me how I have displeased you. I – "

"You, woman!" he snapped. "You've kept me prisoner in this place far too long!"

He rushed to the door and flung it open. A cold breeze brushed his cheek. Yuki grasped his sleeve. "My lord! Do not leave!"

"Enough!" The samurai jerked from her grip. Rage boiled in his heart as he backhanded her. "Out of my way, woman!"

"As you wish." The mark of his hand seemed a dark bruise on her pale skin. "I will bother you no more." Head bowed, Yuki stepped aside. The door swung shut between them.

A low moan shuddered amongst the trees. Wind whipped his helm from his head and his cloak off his shoulders. Cold knifed his body, just beneath the heart.

"Yuki?" Blinded, Hikaru stumbled backwards, but tree bark scraped his questing hands. Where was the hut? It was cold, so cold.

Spring came late that year. Birdsong welcomed the sun's return. The golden fingers of the goddess Amateratsu caressed the still alabaster face of the sleeping man. But he never wakened. As she continued her journey across the sky, cherry trees covered the silken clad form with tiny pink-edged petals, a living blanket of snow.

Adapted from: <http://mariannh.com>

## Questions

1. Where does the story come from?
2. Who is Hikaru?
3. What happened to him?
4. How was the weather then?
5. What happened to Hikaru after she met Yuki?
6. What made Hikaru want to leave Yuki's hut?
7. What happened to Yuki when she tried to restrain Hikaru's anger?
8. What happened after Yuki stepped aside?
9. Do you think this story has a happy ending or sad ending? Why?

**Note:**

The text in Task 10 is a narrative text. As explained in Unit 5, a narrative text is a text that entertains and instructs the readers. It entertains because it deals with the unusual and unexpected development of events. It instructs because it teaches readers that problems should be confronted, and attempts made to resolve them. The text incorporates patterns of behaviour that are generally highly valued.

---



## Task 11

---

**Find words in the story which mean the opposite to the following words. Compare your answers with a classmate's. Look at the example.**

- (a) blunt : sharp
  - (b) visible : ....
  - (c) violent : ....
  - (d) willingly : ....
  - (e) unconscious : ....
  - (f) coarse : ....
  - (g) rouse : ....
  - (h) excite : ....
  - (i) ineffective : ....
  - (j) bright : ....
- 



## Task 12

---

**Rearrange the jumbled paragraphs of the story of *Bloody Mary from Pennsylvania* into a good text by numbering the paragraphs. Look at the example.**

Once upon a time, there was a maiden lived deep in the forest in a tiny cottage. She sold herbal remedies for a living. Folks living in the town nearby called her Bloody Mary, and said she was a witch. None dared cross her cottage for fear that their cows would go dry, their food-stores rot away before winter, their children take sick of fever, or any number of terrible things that an angry witch could do to her neighbours.	paragraph 1
---	-------------

<p>The desperate cries of the miller and his wife woke the neighbours. They came to assist the frantic couple. Suddenly, a sharp-eyed farmer gave a shout and pointed towards a strange light at the edge of the woods. A few townsmen followed him out into the field and saw Bloody Mary standing beside a large oak tree, holding a magic stick that was pointed towards the miller's house. She was glowing with an unearthly light as she set her evil spell upon the miller's daughter.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>Then came the night when the daughter of the miller rose from her bed and walked outside, following an enchanted sound no one else could hear. The miller's wife had a toothache and was sitting up in the kitchen treating the tooth with an herbal remedy when her daughter left the house. She screamed for her husband and followed the girl out of the door. The miller came running in his nightshirt. Together, they tried to restrain the girl, but she kept breaking away from them and heading out of town.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>As she burned, Bloody Mary screamed a curse at the villagers. If anyone mentioned her name aloud before a mirror, she would send her spirit to revenge herself upon them for her terrible death. When she was dead, the villagers went to the house in the wood and found the unmarked graves of the little girls the evil witch had murdered. She had used their blood to make her young again.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>Then the little girls in the village began to disappear, one by one. No one could find out where they had gone. Grief-stricken families searched the woods, the local buildings, and all the houses and barns, but there was no sign of the missing girls. A few brave souls even went to Bloody Mary's home in the woods to see if the witch had taken the girls, but she denied any knowledge of the disappearances. Still, it was noted that her haggard appearance had changed. She looked younger, more attractive. The neighbours were suspicious, but they could find no proof that the witch had taken their young ones.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>From that day to this, anyone foolish enough to chant Bloody Mary's name three times before a darkened mirror will summon the vengeful spirit of the witch. It is said that she will tear their bodies to pieces and rip their souls from their mutilated bodies. The souls of these unfortunate ones will burn in torment as Bloody Mary once was burned, and they will be trapped forever in the mirror.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>
<p>The townsmen grabbed their guns and their pitchforks and ran toward the witch. When she heard the commotion, Bloody Mary broke off her spell and fled back into the woods. The far-sighted farmer had loaded his gun with silver bullets in case the witch ever came after his daughter. Now he took aim and shot at her. The bullet hit Bloody Mary in the hip and she fell to the ground. The angry townsmen leapt upon her and carried her back into the field, where they built a huge bonfire and burned her at the stake.</p>	<p>paragraph ....</p>

Adapted from: <http://www.americanfolklore.net>



## Task 13

---

After you arrange the jumbled paragraphs in Task 12, summarize the story in your own words.

---



## Task 14

---

Find two stories from overseas and write them down in your own words. Present them to the class.

---

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 15

---

Complete the following conversation with the expressions in the box. Then, act it out with your partner.

Thanks a million for this.  
What are you doing here?  
Delighted I was able to help.  
See you later.  
How many stories have you got so far ?  
Of course.

- Marcell : Hi, girls!
- Arnys & Anita : Hi, Marcell!
- Marcell : 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- Arnys : As you see, we're collecting the fairytales from around the world.
- Anita : Yeah, Ms Hana asked us to work in pairs to make a clipping about it.
- Marcell : It sounds interesting. 2) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Anita : Only some. We have The Tooth Fairy, The Piskies, Black Annis, Berguess and The Spriggans. They are all the fairies from British Isles.
- Marcell : That's pretty good. By the way, my sister has a complete collection of folktales. Maybe some of them are fairy tales, who knows.
- Anita : Really? Can we borrow them?
- Marcell : 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- Arnys : I'm very grateful to you.
- Marcell : 4) \_\_\_\_\_
- Arnys : Anyway, is she free this afternoon?

- Marcell : Well, I think so. She said to me this morning that she would try the new cake recipe. However, I can help you if she is too busy.
- Anita : 5) \_\_\_\_\_
- Marcell : Don't mention it. It's good to know that I can do something for you.
- Arnys : That's great. So we can finish this assignment soon.
- Marcell : Yeah, good luck for you!
- Arnys
- & Anita : Thank you.
- Marcell : Well, I'm afraid I must go now. 6) \_\_\_\_\_
- Arnys
- & Anita : See you.
- 



## Task 16 —

Make a summary of the story below.

### Cinderella

Once upon a time, there lived an unhappy young girl. She was unhappy because her mother was dead, and her father had married another woman, a widow with two daughters. Her stepmother didn't like her. All the nice things, kind thoughts and loving touches were for her own daughters. Not just the kind thoughts and love, but also dresses, shoes, delicious food, comfy beds, as well as every home comfort. All this was laid on for her daughters. For the poor unhappy girl, there was nothing at all. No dresses, only her stepsisters' hand-me-downs. No lovely dishes, nothing but scraps. No nice rests and comfort. For she had to work hard all day, and only when evening came was she allowed to sit for a while by the fire, near the cinders. That is how she got her nickname, for everybody called her Cinderella. Cinderella used to spend long hours all alone talking to the cat. The cat said,

"Meow", which really meant, "Cheer up! You have something neither of your stepsisters have and that is beauty."

It was quite true. Cinderella, even dressed in rags with a dusty gray face from the cinders, she was a lovely girl. While her stepsisters, no matter how splendid and elegant their clothes, were still clumsy, lumpy and ugly and always would be.

One day, beautiful new dresses arrived at the house. A ball was to be held at Court and the stepsisters were getting ready to go to it. Cinderella, didn't even dare ask, "What about me?" for she knew very well what the answer to that would be:

"You? My dear girl, you're staying at home to wash the dishes, scrub the floors and turn down the beds for your stepsisters. They will come home tired and very sleepy." Cinderella sighed at the cat.

"Oh dear, I'm so unhappy!" and the cat murmured "Meow".

Suddenly something amazing happened. In the kitchen, where Cinderella was sitting all by herself, there was a burst of light and a fairy appeared.

"Don't be alarmed, Cinderella," said the fairy. "The wind blew me your sighs. I know you would love to go to the ball. And so you shall!"

"How can I, dressed in rags?" Cinderella replied. "The servants will turn me away!" The fairy

smiled. With a flick of her magic wand, Cinderella found herself wearing the most beautiful dress, the loveliest ever seen in the realm.

"Now that we have settled the matter of the dress," said the fairy, "we'll need to get you a cart. A real lady would never go to a ball on foot!" "Quick! Get me a pumpkin!" she ordered.

"Oh of course," said Cinderella, rushing away. Then the fairy turned to the cat.

"You, bring me seven mice!"

"Seven mice!" said the cat. "I didn't know fairies ate mice too!"

"They're not for eating, silly! Do as you are told! And, remember they must be alive!"

Cinderella soon returned with a fine pumpkin and the cat with seven mice he had caught in the cellar.

"Good!" exclaimed the fairy. With a flick of her magic wand... wonder of wonders! The pumpkin turned into a sparkling cart and the mice became six white horses, while the seventh mouse turned into a coachman, in a smart uniform and carrying a whip. Cinderella could hardly believe her eyes.

"I shall present you at Court. You will soon see that the Prince, in whose honour the ball is being held, will be enchanted by your loveliness. But remember! You must leave the ball at midnight and come home. For that is when the spell ends. Your cart will turn back into a pumpkin, the horses will become mice again and the coachman will turn back into a mouse and you will be dressed again in rags and wearing clogs instead of these beautiful slippers! Do you understand?" Cinderella smiled and said, "Yes, I understand!"

When Cinderella entered the ballroom at the palace, a hush fell. Everyone stopped in mid-sentence to admire her elegance, her beauty and grace.

"Who can that be?" people asked each other. The two stepsisters also wondered who the newcomer was, for never in a month of Sundays, would they ever have guessed that the beautiful girl was really poor Cinderella who talked to the cat!

When the prince set eyes on Cinderella, he was struck by her beauty. Walking over to her, he bowed deeply and asked her to dance. And to the great disappointment of all the young ladies, he danced with Cinderella all evening.

"Who are you, fair maiden?" the Prince kept asking her. But Cinderella only replied:

"What does it matter who I am! You will never see me again anyway."

"Oh, but I shall, I'm quite certain!" he replied.



Cinderella had a wonderful time at the ball. But, all of a sudden, she heard the sound of a clock: the first stroke of midnight! She remembered what the fairy had said, and without a word of goodbye she slipped from the Prince's arms and ran down the steps. As she ran she lost one of her slippers, but not for a moment did she dream of stopping to pick it up! If the last stroke of midnight were to sound... oh... what a disaster that would be! Out she fled and vanished into the night.

The Prince, who was now madly in love with her, picked up her slipper and said to his ministers,

"Go and search everywhere for the girl whose foot this slipper fits. I will never be content until I find her!" So the ministers tried the slipper on the foot of all the girls and on Cinderella's foot as well. Surprise! The slipper fitted perfectly.

"That awful untidy girl simply cannot have been at the ball," snapped the stepmother. "Tell the Prince he ought to marry one of my two daughters! Can't you see how ugly Cinderella is! Can't you see?"

Suddenly she broke off, for the fairy had appeared.

"That's enough!" she exclaimed, raising her magic stick. In a flash, Cinderella appeared in a splendid dress, shining with youth and beauty. Her stepmother and stepsisters gaped at her in amazement, and the ministers said,

"Come with us, fair maiden! The Prince awaits to present you with his engagement ring!" So Cinderella joyfully went with them, and lived happily ever after with her Prince. And as for the cat, he just said "Meow"!

Adapted from: <http://ivyjoy.com>

Pictures: 1. <http://images.amazon.com> 2. <http://www.mailorder2000.co.uk>

3. <http://www.sunkissvillas.com>



## Task 17

---

**Study the rule below.**

In the story of Cinderella in **Task 16** you find sentences:

"Now that **we have settled** the matter of dress, ..."

" ... and her father **had married** another woman, ..."

The first sentence is called Present Perfect and the second sentence is called Past Perfect.

**Present Perfect have/has + V3**

We use the present perfect to give new information or to announce a recent happening.

For example:

Denias **has lived** in Jakarta for seven years.

The students **have not cleaned** the classroom for days.

**Past perfect had + V3**

We use the past perfect to say something had already happened before this time.

For example:

Arnys **had just got** home when Virga phoned her.

Retro **had seen** The Calon Arang drama twice.

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 18

In pairs, have dialogues with your classmate based on the following situations. Include the expressions of thanking and responding to thanks.

- You thank your classmate for telling you the story of The Tooth Fairy.
- You thank your classmate for helping you make the clipping of American myths.
- You thank your classmate for preparing the Vampire costume for the Halloween party.
- You thank your classmate for giving you a good book of fairytales.
- You thank your classmate for helping you compile the versions of Cinderella story from around the world.



### Task 19

Recall one of the stories from overseas that you are already learnt and write it down in your own words.

## Music Corner

### Thank You by Dido

My tea's gone cold  
I'm wondering why  
I got out of bed at all  
The morning rain clouds up my window  
and I can't see at all  
And even if I could it'd all be grey  
but your picture on my wall it reminds me that  
it's not so bad  
it's not so bad  
  
I drank too much last night got bills to pay  
My head just feels in pain  
I missed the bus and there'll be hell today  
I'm late for work again  
And even if I'm there  
There'll all imply that  
I might not last the day  
And then you call me  
And it's not so bad  
It's not so bad

I want to thank you  
For giving me the best day of my life  
Oh just to be with you  
Is having the best day of my life  
  
Push the door, I'm home last  
And I'm soaking through and through  
Then you handed me a towel and all I see is you  
And even if my house falls down now,  
I wouldn't have a clue  
Because you're near me and



Taken from: <http://www.lyrics007.com>

Picture: <http://www>

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---



---



---

What I don't like in this unit:

---



---



---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---



---



---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

1) How to thank someone, for example:

- That was really nice of you.
- Thanks a million (for...)
- Thank you very much for your kindness.

2) How to respond to thanks, for example:

- You're welcome.
- It's no trouble at all.
- Don't mention it.

3) Past Perfect and Present Perfect

Present Perfect      have/has + V3

Past Perfect      had + V3

4) Narrative texts

A narrative text is a text that entertains and instructs the readers. It entertains because it deals with the unusual and unexpected development of events. It instructs because it teaches readers that problems should be confronted, and attempts made to resolve them.

# **WHAT A NICE HAIR CUT!**





<http://www.exposay.com>



<http://genasik.telkomsel.com>

You often compliment and congratulate others in many ways. When they do the same to you, you also respond to them. Do you know how to do them very well?

Reading and writing are very important skills. The texts that you read and write may include descriptive texts on people. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Look at the following photos of celebrities. Do you recognize them? In pairs, write down their names. Look at the example.



Number	Celebrity Name	Number	Celebrity Name
1	Drew Barrymore	5	.....
2	.....	6	.....
3	.....	7	.....
4	.....	8	.....

Pictures:

1. <http://www.poster.net>
2. <http://redlights.files-wordpress.com>
3. <http://www.suaramerdeka.com>
4. <http://www.batamevent.com>
5. <http://upload.wikimedia.org>
6. <http://www.aolcdn.com>
7. <http://office.indonesiacelebriti.com>
8. <http://www.wallpaperbase.com>



## Task 2

Based on Task 1, answer the following questions. The words in the box below may help you answer the questions. Then, compare your answers with your partner's.

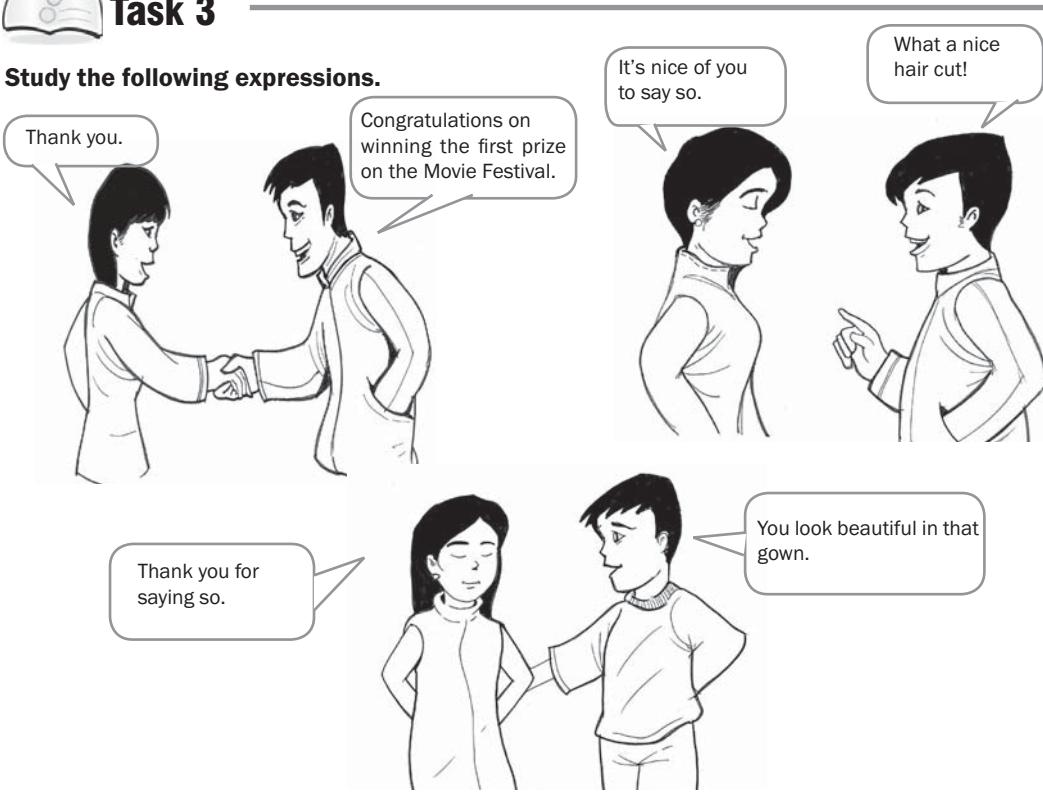
bearded ['bi:ədɪd] (ks)	:	berjenggot
charming ['tʃa:min] (ks)	:	mempesona
cute [kjut:] (ks)	:	manis
gorgeous ['gɔ:dʒəs] (ks)	:	menawan
gown [gaʊn] (kb)	:	gaun
slim [slɪm] (ks)	:	ramping
wavy ['weɪvi] (ks)	:	bergelombang

1. Is any of them your favourite actor or actress?
2. If none of them is your favourite actor or actress, who is your favourite actor/actress?
3. What makes you adore him/her?
4. What do you know about him/her?
5. Do you want to be like him/her?



## Task 3

Study the following expressions.



## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 4

---

Listen carefully to the dialogue. Write T if the statement is true and F if the statement is false. Correct the false statements. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Situation:** Ayu won tickets to watch a movie in the cinema.

#### Questions

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	Ayu is wearing a cute hat.	F	Denias is wearing a cute hat.
2.	Ayu won a free ticket from the radio.		
3.	Ayu asks Denias to go to the cinema with her.		
4.	Denias refuses Ayu's invitation.		
5.	Denias cannot come at 7.		
6.	Ayu and Denias are going to the cinema tomorrow evening.		

---



### Task 5

---

#### Study the following expressions.

In the dialogue in **Task 4** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions.

Expressions	Functions
• You look cute with that hat.	Complimenting
• Congratulations!	Congratulating
• Thank you for saying so. • Thank you.	Responding to compliments and congratulations

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• What a ...!</li><li>• That's a very nice ...</li><li>• I like your ...</li><li>• You're looking good!</li></ul>	Complimenting
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Congratulations on winning ...</li><li>• I'd like to congratulate you on ...</li><li>• I must congratulate you on your ...</li><li>• Well done.</li></ul>	Congratulating
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Thanks.</li><li>• Oh, not really.</li><li>• It's nice of you to say so.</li><li>• How kind of you to say so.</li></ul>	Responding to compliments and congratulations



## Task 6

Listen to the dialogues to complete the missing expressions. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

- 1) Ruben : Congratulations on getting a free coupon to borrow movies from 'Nemo' DVD rental.  
Anita : Thank you.
- 2) Adib : I like your shoes.  
Denias : ....  
Adib : Where did you buy them?  
Denias : I bought them in the new department store near my house.
- 3) Arnys : .... Everybody in the club loves your work.  
Marcell : Thank you.  
Arnys : Where did you get the idea?  
Marcell : A scene in The Lord of The Rings inspired me.
- 4) Retno : I saw your performance on TV yesterday. .... You have impressed the jury.  
Andi : Thanks. I worked hard to prepare everything.
- 5) Virga : It seems that your diet programme works on you. You're looking good.  
Ayu : ....
- 6) Anita : ....  
Retno : Oh, not really.  
Anita : Where did you get it?  
Retno : I made it myself.



## Task 7

---

In pairs, complete the following conversation with the expressions in the box. Then, perform it with your partner.

You look charming in that white gown.  
What a gorgeous boy!  
Congratulations on your birthday.  
Thank you.

- Arnys : Congratulations on your 16th birthday.  
Retno : Thank you.  
Anita : 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
Retno : Thank you for saying so. You look so sweet in that red vest.  
Anita : Thanks. Look, Denias is coming! 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
Arnys : He looks so cute with his new hair cut.  
Retno : Yes, you're right.  
Denias : Hi, Retno. 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
Retno : Thanks. By the way, congratulations on winning the first prize on Photography Competition.  
Denias : 4) \_\_\_\_\_  
Anita : Your idea was brilliant. I think you're a genius.  
Denias : Oh, not really.  
Retno : Anyway, let's start the party.
- 



## Task 8

---

### Let's say it right.

In the conversation in Task 7 you find the word 'gown' and 'gorgeous'. How do you pronounce it?

gown [gaʊn]                  gorgeous ['go:dʒəs]

### Note:

The letter 'g' is pronounced 'g' when followed by 'o'. Here are some other examples.

goal [gəʊl]	gossip ['gɒsɪp]
golf [gɔlf]	govern ['gʌvən]
goose [qu:s]	



## Task 9

---

Have dialogues with your partner based on the following situations.

- Your classmate got the best mark on the Drama class.
  - Your classmate wears a brown sweater. He looks great in it.
  - You and your classmate attend a birthday party. Your classmate wears a nice suit.
  - Your classmate won a free ticket to watch Hillary Duff's concert in Singapore.
- 



## Task 10

---

Listen to the following monologue and fill in the missing words. The listening script is in the Appendix.

### My Favourite Actor

My favourite 1) \_\_\_\_\_ is Ringgo Agus Rahman. I like him because he is a good actor. He is also very 2) \_\_\_\_\_. Moreover, he is 3) \_\_\_\_\_. He has bright 4) \_\_\_\_\_ and slanting 5) \_\_\_\_\_. His facial expression makes him look funny. If I had a chance to meet him, I would ask him to sign my photograph.

---



## Task 11

---

Tell the class your favourite celebrity and his or her physical appearance. Look at Task 10 as a model.

---



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 12

---

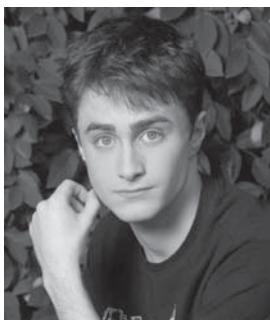
Study and pronounce the following words. Then, read the text and fill in the table. Look at the example. Compare your answers with a partner's.

active ['æktrɪv] (ks)	:	aktif
bald [bɔ:lд] (ks)	:	botak
careful ['keəfʊl] (ks)	:	hati-hati; teliti
careless ['keələs] (ks)	:	sembrono
cheerful ['tʃi:əfʊl] (ks)	:	ceria

confident ['kɒnfɪdənt] (ks)	:	percaya diri
determined [dɪ'tə:mɪnd] (ks)	:	tegas
diligent ['dɪlɪdʒənt] (ks)	:	rajin
energetic [enə'dʒetɪk] (ks)	:	enerjik
extrovert ['ekstrəvə:t] (ks)	:	ekstrovet
friendly ['frendli] (ks)	:	ramah
generous ['dʒenərəs] (ks)	:	dermawan; murah hati
humorous ['hju:mərəs] (ks)	:	humoris
intelligent [ɪn'telɪdʒənt] (ks)	:	pintar
introvert ['intrəvə:t] (ks)	:	introvet
lazy ['leɪzɪ] (ks)	:	malas
muscular ['mʌskjʊlə] (ks)	:	berotot
sensitive ['sensɪtɪv] (ks)	:	sensitif
shy [ʃaɪ] (ks)	:	malu
skinny ['skɪni] (ks)	:	kurus
slanting ['slæntɪŋ] (ks)	:	sipit
stingy ['stɪndʒɪ] (ks)	:	pelit
stubborn ['stʌbən] (ks)	:	keras kepala
stupid ['stju:pɪd] (ks)	:	bodoh
wrinkle ['rɪŋkl] (ks)	:	keriput

### The Rising Stars

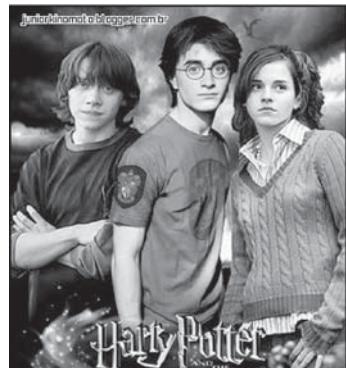
The success of Harry Potter movies has made Daniel Radcliffe, Emma Watson, and Rupert Grint the centre of public attention. The three rising stars have grown up on screen and grown into his or her role as an actor.



<http://www.enjoyfrance.com>

Daniel Jacob Radcliffe was born in Fulham, London, 23 July 1989. His nickname is Dan. He is the only child of Alan Radcliffe and Marcia Gresham. Dan has dark brown hair and blue eyes. His height is about 168 cm. He is a loyal, shy, down-to-earth, and humorous person. He is also intelligent and somewhat mysterious. He loves football, Formula One racing and gymnastics.

Emma Charlotte Duerre Watson was born in Paris, France, 15 April 1990. Her nickname is Emma. She is the daughter of Chris Watson and Jacqueline Luesby. She lived in Paris until the age of five before she moved with her mother and younger brother Alexander to Oxford, England. Emma has wavy brown hair. Her height is 165 cm. She is a generous, friendly, and determined person. She also said that she is a little bit stubborn. Emma loves dancing, singing, tennis and art.



<http://data1.blog.de>



<http://readingharry.com>



<http://images.google.co.id>

Rupert Alexander Grint was born in Hertfordshire, England, 24 August, 1988. His nickname is Rupert. He is the oldest son of Nigel Grint and Jo Parsons. Rupert has bright red hair.

His height is 180 cm. He is an active and humorous person. He's also very humble. However, he is the shyest of the three Harry Potter co-stars. Rupert is arachnophobic. It means that he is afraid of spiders. He likes all kinds of music, but his favourite is classic rock and roll. His favourite school subject is Chemistry.

These Hogwarts trio have been really good friends, not only on screen but also in real life. Their secret of friendship is that they always understand each other although they have different backgrounds and personalities.

Adapted from: <http://www.wikipedia.org>

**Complete the column below based on the text.**

Names	Physical Appearance	Characters
Daniel Radcliffe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hair : brown</li><li>• Eyes : blue</li><li>• ...</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• loyal</li><li>• shy</li><li>• down-to-earth</li><li>• ...</li><li>• ...</li><li>• ...</li></ul>
Emma Watson		
Rupert Grint		



## Task 13

**Study the following note.**

The text in Task 12 is a descriptive text. Basically, the aim of a descriptive text is to give information to the readers by making them see, hear, feel, etc. what is described in the text.

A descriptive text focuses on the characteristic features of a person, an animal, or a particular thing. Descriptive texts often use neutral and objective language. The present tense is mostly used in descriptive texts. The past tense is also used to describe an object that does not exist anymore.



## Task 14

**In pairs, study the following explanation.**

- To describe a person's physical appearance, you can use the following words.

Physical Appearances					
Height	Body	Age	Hair	Face	Eyes
tall	slim	young	long	round	big
short	thin	old	short	oval	round
	plump	teenager	bald	square	blue
	fat	in 20s, 30s,	straight	wrinkles	brown
	skinny	40s	curly	pale	green
	muscular		wavy	bearded	slanting
			black	shaved	
			red		
			brown		

- To describe a person's characters (qualities & habitual behaviour), you can use the following words.

Characters	
careful	careless
intelligent	stupid
confident	shy
extrovert	introvert
generous	stingy
diligent	lazy

Characters	
active	
cheerful	
determined	
energetic	
friendly	
humble	
humorous	
sensitive	
stubborn	



## Task 15

Complete the following text about Mike Mohede with the words in the box. Look at the example.

### The Cute Mike



Michael Prabawa Mohede was born on November 7, 1983. He is better known as Mike. He has a beautiful voice. He is the winner of the second season of Indonesian Idol. He also represented Indonesia in Asian Idol.

Mike has a ... smile. His body is ... His ... cheeks make him cute. Mike is a nice and ... person. He is very friendly to everyone. Some of his fans call him "Teddy Bear" because of his plump body and nice character.

Picture: <http://yance.files.wordpress.com>

cheerful      chubby      nice      plump      beautiful



## Task 16

Look at the following celebrities. In pairs, describe their physical appearances. Look at the example.

1.



Sherina Munaf

Physical appearance:

- She is tall.
- Her body is slim.
- She is a teenager.
- She has black straight hair.
- Her face is oval.
- She has round eyes.

2.



Tobey Maguire

Physical appearance:

3.



Hillary Duff

Physical appearance:

4.



David Beckham

Physical appearance:

5.



Kirsten Dunst

Physical appearance:

6.



Ade Rai

Physical appearance:

7.



Jang Nara

Physical appearance:

**Pictures:** 1. <http://corefight.or.id> 2. <http://www.boxofficepsychics.com> 3. <http://www.wallpapergate.com>  
 4. <http://img2.timeinc.net> 5. <http://www.image-search.com> 6. <http://www.yarisgroovy.com> 7. <http://english.kbs.co.kr>



## Task 17

Ask three of your classmates to describe the physical appearance of their idols. Then, record them in this table.

No	Your classmates	Their idols	Physical appearances
1			
2			
3			



## Task 18

Based on the data in Task 17, write descriptions of two idols. Ask your classmates to give you feedback to revise your descriptions. Put your revised drafts in the school magazine.

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 19

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box.

Congratulations!  
What a nice red sweater!  
You're looking good.  
I like your ribbon.

Retno : Hi, Anita. 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Anita : It's nice of you to say so.

Retno : I've never seen you in that sweater. Is that new?

Anita : Well, my sister bought me this sweater yesterday.

Retno : I see.

Anita : Anyway, 2) \_\_\_\_\_ It makes you look sweet.

Retno : Oh, not really. Look, Virga is coming!

Anita : Hi, Virga. 4) \_\_\_\_\_ Who did your haircut?

Virga : Thanks. My Mom did it.

Retno : By the way, I heard you won a quiz on the radio yesterday.

5) \_\_\_\_\_

Virga : Thank you.



### Cultural Tips

#### The Way They Dress in America

- Men: socks should match your suit. No leg should show between pant hem and shoe. Remove your hat when indoors.
- Women: do not overdress for daytime or wear noisy jewellery. American women do not wear a lot of make-up to the office. Low-cut blouses, short skirts, and tight clothing are not appropriate office attire.



## Task 20

Work in groups of three. Describe the physical appearance of each character of the following movies.



**CHARLIE'S ANGELS**  
<http://wallpaper.diq.ru>



**NUTTY PROFESSOR II**  
<http://www.klumps.com>



**PRINCESS HOURS**  
<http://jadehwang.files.wordpress.com>

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 21

Find two texts describing celebrities. Then, write them down in your own words.



### Task 22

Have a dialogue with your partner. Include expressions of complimenting, congratulating, and responding to compliments/congratulations.

- Your classmate wears a cute bracelet. She made it herself.
- Your classmate has just joined a singing competition. He won the second place.
- Your classmate has just been chosen as the captain of the class.
- You and your classmate are going to the cinema to watch Aming's new movie. You wear a new shirt. Your classmate wears a nice blue skirt.



### Task 23

Work in pairs. Write down a description of somebody you know. Let your classmate guess who he or she is.



### Task 24

Write a short text about your idol.

## Music Corner

You can find expressions of compliment in many songs. One of those songs is entitled *You Are So Beautiful* by Westlife.

### *You Are So Beautiful*

You are so beautiful  
To me  
You are so beautiful  
To me  
Can't you see  
You're everything I hoped for  
You're everything I need  
You are so beautiful to me



Taken from:  
<http://www.lyricsandsongs.com>

You are so wonderful  
To me  
You are so wonderful  
To me  
Can't you see  
You're everything I hoped for  
You're everything I need  
You are so beautiful (3x)  
To me

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to compliment someone, for example:
  - What a ...!
  - That's a very nice ...
  - I like your ...
  - You're looking good!
- 2) How to congratulate someone, for example:
  - Congratulations!
  - I'd like to congratulate you on ...
  - I must congratulate you on your ...
  - Well done.
- 3) How to respond to compliments and congratulations, for example:
  - Thanks.
  - Oh, not really.
  - It's nice of you to say so.
- 4) Descriptive text is a text which is telling about the characteristics of a particular thing, such as person's characteristics or description.

## UNIT VIII

# I FIND IT VERY INTERESTING.





<http://img.dailymail.com>

At times, you feel excited and you want to express it.

Do you know how to express it appropriately?

Do you sometimes read and/ or write descriptions of animals? Can you read and write such texts effectively? Let's explore descriptive texts and more in this unit.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Work in pairs to answer the following questions.

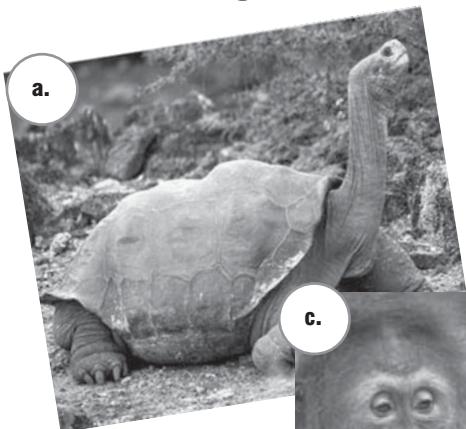
1. What is your favourite animal?
2. Do you own one? What is its name?
3. Describe it. Use the points below to help you describe your pet (animal).
  - a. size (length and height)
  - b. weight
  - c. colour
  - d. special body part and its use
  - e. how it moves



### Task 2

Look at the following animals. Name each according to its description.

a.



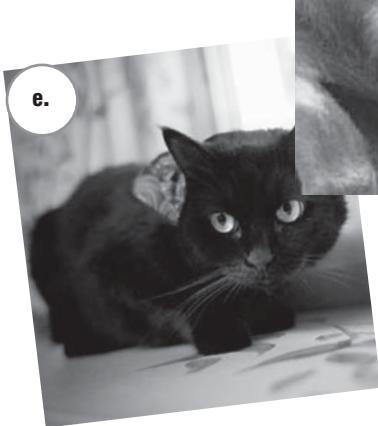
c.



b.



e.



d.



f.

Picture:

- a. <http://www.raskraska.ru>   b. <http://wwwimage.cbsnews.com>   c. <http://images.jupiterimages.com>  
d. <http://animals.nationalgeographic.com>   e. <http://blogs.kansascity.com>   f. <http://img.dailymail.co.uk>

	Ah Meng is a female Orangutan. She belongs to the rare Sumatran Orangutan species. She is a tourism icon of Singapore.
	Harriet is a Galápagos tortoise. She was born in 1830. Harriet spends a majority of her day napping at her home pond. Her favourite food is hibiscus flowers.
	Gemina is a giraffe who lives in the Santa Barbara Zoo. She becomes notable for the peculiar deformity in her neck, which is bent by almost ninety degrees.
	The mule Idaho Gem was born on 4 May 2003. It is the first clone born in the horse family.
	Nora is a gray tabby cat. Nora was named after the artist Leonora Carrington. She is famous for “playing” the piano.
	India “Willie” Bush is US President’s George W. Bush’s and Laura Bush’s black cat. He has lived with the Bush family for more than ten years.

## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 3

Listen to the following monologue about Andi's pets and then fill in the table with correct information. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.

Andi's Pets	Descriptions		
Felix (cat)	colour weight habit	black and white 4 kg It likes to sleep for hours.	
Deborah (cat)	colour weight habit	...	
Brandy (Dog)	colour height habit	...	
Bora (Hamster)	colour habit	...	



## Task 4

---

### Let's say it right.

In the monologue in Task 3 you find the word 'male'.

How do you pronounce it?

male [meɪl]

### Note:

The vowel letter 'a' is pronounced 'er' when followed by a consonant plus '-e'. Here are some other examples.

came [keɪm] same [seɪm]

change [tʃeɪndʒ] take [teɪk]

game [geɪm] tame [teɪm]

---



## Task 5

---

Tell the class your favourite pet. Refer to the monologue in Task 3 as a model.

---



## Task 6

---

Listen to the following dialogue between Anita and Denias. Then, choose the right statements by circling the letter a, b, c, or d. The listening script is in the Appendix.

**Situation: Anita and Denias are talking about a famous piano playing cat.**

1. a. Denias has read the article in the latest school magazine.  
b. Denias hasn't read the article in the latest school magazine.  
c. Denias has read all the articles in the latest school magazine.  
d. Denias hasn't bought the school magazine.
2. a. Anita asks Denias to write an article in the school magazine.  
b. Anita asks Denias to read an article in the school magazine.  
c. Anita asks Denias whether he has read an article in the school magazine.  
d. Anita asks Denias whether he has an article about the school magazine.
3. a. The article is about a strange tabby cat.  
b. The article is about a cat playing the piano.  
c. The article is about a strange piano.  
d. The article is about a singing cat.

4. a. Nora is a cat who rarely plays the piano.  
b. Nora is a gray tabby cat who plays the piano.  
c. Nora is a tabby cat who has the gray piano.  
d. Nora is a gray cat who does not like piano.
  5. a. Denias is going to search information about Nora on the internet.  
b. Denias is going to promote Nora on the internet.  
c. Denias is going to write an article about Nora on the internet.  
d. Denisa is going to search information about Nora's cat on the internet.
- 



## Task 7

---

In pairs, study the following expressions.

### Saying You Are Excited

In the dialogue in **Task 4** you find some expressions used to say that you are excited, such as:

- Really? That's wonderful.
- I find it very interesting.

Here are some other expressions.

- Fantastic!
  - That's terrific!
  - (How) exciting!
  - I'm very enthusiastic!
  - I cannot deny my enthusiasm for ...
- 



## Task 8

---

What do you say in the following situations?

- Your classmate tells you that he will give you one of her kittens.
  - Your classmate tells you that he will invite you to see his new pet.
  - Your classmate asks you to go with him to watch an animal contest.
- 



## Task 9

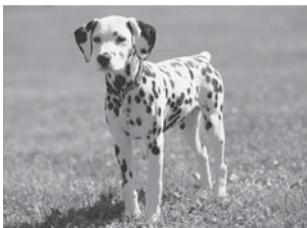
---

Have dialogues with your partner based on the situations below. Include the expressions to show that you are excited.



<http://www.thejessicawells.com>

You have just found a cute hamster at the backyard of your classmate's house. It is a white and brown hamster. It has a very small nose. It runs very quickly. You really want to keep it.



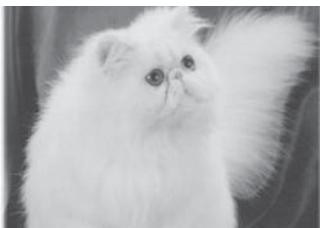
<http://4simpsons.files.wordpress.com>

Your classmate has a Dalmatian. It is 0.5 m tall. It has a red ribbon around on its neck. It is very smart and tame. One day your classmate took his Dalmatian to join a dog contest in your town. His Dalmatian was chosen as the Most Favourite Pet.



<http://www.desktoprating.com>

You had wanted to have a pet for a long time. One day your father bought you a parrot. It is a lovely one. It is quite colourful. It has six colours on its body: red, blue, green, yellow, white, and black. It also sings beautifully. You tell your classmate about the good news.



<http://www.gotthelookpersiancats.com>

Your classmate was given a cat for his birthday present. When you visit his house, he shows you his cat. It is a big white cat of 8 kg. It has soft thick fur. It looks beautiful. Your classmate tells you that you may keep it for two days. You are very excited.



## Read and Write



## Task 10

**Read the following advertisements on animals for sale on the internet. Then, in pairs, answer the questions.**



<http://upload.wikimedia.org>

### Beautiful Golden Retriever

I have a beautiful 2 year old Golden Retriever with silky light brown hair. I have named her Goldie. She is about 0.5 m tall, and weighs 20 kg. She is a very good pet. She is great with kids and other dogs. If you are interested in my dog, please call Aji at (021) 532 444, or email ajipurnomo@yahoo.com.



<http://www.cat-domain.com>

### Exotic Shorthair

I have an exotic brown female cat. Her name is Ruby. She is one year old. She weighs about 8 kg. She is extremely affectionate and playful. If you are interested in my cat, please call Dina at (031) 332 222, or email dina05@yahoo.com.



<http://www.horseclassified.com>

### Amarillo

“Amarillo” is a dark brown stallion (adult male horse) of 6 years old. He is 153 cm tall, and weighs 1200 lbs. He is quiet in nature. If you are interested, please visit 9107 Ridge Road, Castorland, New York, or call 315 376 5915.

## Questions

1. Describe the dog in the first ad.

name	:	...
type	:	...
age	:	...
colour	:	...
height	:	...
weight	:	...
other characteristics	:	...

2. If you are interested in the dog in the first advertisement, how can you get it?

3. Describe the cat in the second advertisement.

name	:	...
type	:	...
age	:	...
colour	:	...
height	:	...
weight	:	...
other characteristics	:	...

4. If you are interested in the cat in the second advertisement, how can you get it?

5. Describe the horse in the third advertisement.

name	:	...
type	:	...
age	:	...
colour	:	...
height	:	...
weight	:	...
other characteristics	:	...

6. If you are interested in the horse in the third advertisement, how can you get it?

---

### Note:

- advertisement [əd've:tɪzment] (kb)
  - advertisement is announcement which tries to make sure that people know that something is for sale, that something is going to happen, that a show is on.
  - advertisement is commonly abbreviated as “ad”.
-



## Task 11

Read the following information about celebrities and their pets and then complete the statements. First, study the following words.

curl [kʌdl] (kkt)	:	memeluk
fierce ['fɪəs] (ks)	:	galak
fur [fə:] (kb)	:	rambut binatang
marking ['ma:kɪŋ] (kb)	:	tanda
poodle ['pu:dł] (kb)	:	anjing pudel (berambut keriting)
pug [pʌg] (kb)	:	jenis anjing kecil berhidung pesek
puppy ['pʌpi] (kb)	:	anak anjing
shepherd ['ʃepəd] (kb)	:	anjing gembala



### Jessica Alba and Her Pets

Jessica Alba looks very cheerful with her two pugs. She named them Sid and Nancy. The two dogs look similar. Both have white fur and brown markings. They also wear the same red ribbon around their necks.



### Hilary Duff and Her Pet

Hilary takes a few moments to get down with her little dog. She named it Lola. Lola is a cute Chihuahua. Its colour is light brown. It looks pretty in pink.



### Jake Gyllenhaal and His Pet

Jake has a German shepherd. Its name is Atticus. It is mostly brown with large black marking. Its height is around 75 cm. It looks fierce.



### Joss Stone and Her Pet

Joss Stone really loves to cuddle his poodle puppy. Its name is Dusty. It is white. The hair is a bit curly and covers half of its eyes. It looks cute in the pink clothes.

Adapted from: <http://pets.aol.com/>

#### Questions

1. Sid and Nancy are ...'s pets. They have ... fur and ... markings.
2. Hillary Duff's chihuahua is named ... Its colour is ...
3. Atticus is of .. type. Its colour is ... It is around ... tall.
4. Jake Gyllenhaal's dog looks ....
5. Dusty is a ... It belongs to ....

---

#### Note:

The text in Task 11 is a descriptive text. As explained in Unit 7, a descriptive text is basically aimed at giving information to the readers about characteristic features of a thing, person, or animal. Descriptive texts often use neutral and objective language. The present tense is mostly used in descriptive texts. The past tense is also used to describe an object that does not exist anymore.

---



### Task 12

---

Match the words with their definitions. Compare your answers with a classmate's.

curlie

way of doing things

fierce

striped black, brown, and grey cat

marking

very angry and likely to attack

fur

coloured patterns

tabby

soft coat of an animal

tame

to hug someone or something

behaviour

not wild



## Task 13

Describe the following animals.



Descriptions

<http://www.cfasouthwest.org>



Descriptions

<http://www.goodbyecitylife.com>



Descriptions

<http://www.fuzzypups.com>



Descriptions

<http://www2.mcdaniel.edu>



Descriptions

<http://r306.files.wordpress.com>



### By the Way...

Surveys say that nearly 10 % of American households dress their pets in Halloween costumes.



## Task 14

Write a short paragraph about your pet or an animal that you like most. Use the following guidelines.

- What is your pet's name?
- What is it?
- How old is it?
- Describe it.
  - size
  - height
  - colour
  - weight
  - habit

## C. Let's Do More



## Task 15

Complete the following dialogues with correct words, phrases, and expressions in the box.

**Situation 1: Denias and his sister are going to watch a circus.**

elephant show

Fantastic!

circus

smart

- Denias : Tomorrow my sister and I are going to watch the... at the town square.
- Arnys : How exciting! I went there two days ago with my parents. You have to see the elephant show.
- Denias : Well, I didn't know if they have that kind of show.
- Arnys : They have the greatest ... I have ever seen. They are very ... Elephants are really good at remembering things.
- Denias : .. By the way, would you join us tomorrow?
- Arnys : I'd love to.

**Situation 2: Ayu really wants to have a pet.**

pet

Really? That's wonderful.

promise

kitten

- Virga : Mom, may I have a ....?
- Mother : Sure.
- Virga : ... Thanks.
- Mother : But you have to ... me to take care of it.
- Virga : I will.
- Mother : Anyway, what would you have?
- Virga : I think I'll take care of my friend's ... She has five little kittens.  
She offered me one yesterday.
- Mother : Okay.



## Task 16

---

Find two texts describing animals in the internet and/ or library. Rewrite and describe the animals in your own words.

---



## Task 17

---

Find five animals in your neighbourhood, and then describe them.

No.	Animals	Descriptions

---

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 18

Have a dialogue with your partner based on the following situation.

You and your classmate go to the pet shop. You see a very cute little puppy. You really want it. However, you remember that your parents will not let you have any pet. Then, your classmate offers you a smart solution. You will have the pet and keep it at your classmate's house.



### Task 19

Write a description of an animal that you like best as a pet.



### Cultural Tips

Eating horses and ponies is taboo in British culture and causes friction with its nearest European neighbour, France.

Taken from: <http://www.ediplomat.com>

## Music Corner

There have been some songs about animals. One of them is a famous old song about a pet by Patti Page.

### How Much is That Doggie in the Window

How much is that doggie in the window?  
(arf! arf!)  
The one with the waggle tail  
How much is that doggie in the window?  
(arf! arf!)  
I do hope that doggie's for sale  
  
I must take a trip to California  
And leave my poor sweetheart alone  
If he has a dog, he won't be lonesome  
And the doggie will have a good home

I read in the paper there are robbers (roof! roof!)  
With flashlights that shine in the dark  
My love needs a doggie to protect him  
And scare them away with one bark

I don't want a bunny or a kitty  
I don't want a parrot that talks  
I don't want a bowl of little fishies  
He can't take a goldfish for a walk

How much is that doggie in the window? (arf! arf!)  
The one with the waggle tail  
How much is that doggie in the window?(arf! arf!)  
I do hope that doggie's for sale  
I do hope that doggie's for sale



Taken from: <http://www.metrolyrics.co>  
Picture: <http://www.sfgate.com>

**Note:**

(arf! arf!) sounds like a small dog.  
(roof! roof!) sounds like a bigger dog.

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

- 1) How to say that you are excited, for example:
  - Really? That's wonderful.
  - I find it very interesting.
  - Fantastic!
  - That's terrific!
  - (How) exciting!
  - I find it very interesting!
  - I'm very enthusiastic!
- 2) A descriptive text is basically aimed at giving information to the readers about characteristic features of a thing, person, or animal. Descriptive texts often use neutral and objective language. The present tense is mostly used in descriptive texts. The past tense is also used to describe an object that does not exist anymore.

# UNIT IX

## I DON'T BELIEVE IT!





<http://www.imnotobsessed.com>

In your daily life you often find things that surprise you or things you do not believe. When you are in such a situation, you need to express your feelings. Do you know how to do that?

To follow the development, you need to read news regularly. The texts that you read may include news items on celebrities around the world. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn those and more in this unit through challenging tasks with up to date news.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Study the following pictures and then answer the questions based on your experience. Compare your answers with your partner's.



#### Questions

1. Do you like reading magazines or newspapers?
2. What is the name of the magazine or newspaper you often read?
3. How often is it published? Weekly or monthly?
4. What column do you like the most? Is it sports, entertainment, business, or politics? Why?

## B. Let's Act



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 2

---

Listen to the following monologue to complete the missing information. The listening script is in the Appendix.

#### Wilson Returns after Suicide Attempt

The Jakarta Post

Thursday, February 21, 2008

Los Angeles: Owen Wilson is going back to work for the first time since his reported ..... attempt last summer.

Wilson, 39, and co-star Jennifer Aniston begin shooting March 10 on 20<sup>th</sup> Century Fox's Marley & Me, the studio said. It tells the tales of a couple who ..... a dog to give parenthood a trial run, then find the mischievous pooch more than they bargained for.

After he was ..... last August, Wilson dropped out of his summer's ..... Tropic Thunder, which already had been in ..... He was replaced by Mathew McConaughey.

Due out Christmas Day, Marley & Me is directed by David Frankel and based on the book by John Grogan, Alan Arkin co-stars.



*Picture:* <http://www.imnotobsessed.com>



### Task 3

---

Study and pronounce the words below before you listen to a dialogue between Arnys and Marcell. Then, state whether the statements are true (T) or false (F). The listening script is in the Appendix.

abuse [ə'bju:s] (kb)	:	penyalahgunaan
accomplice [ə'kʌmplɪs] (kb)	:	kaki tangan
alleged [ə'ledʒd] (ks)	:	diduga sebagai
apprehend [æpri'hend] (kkt)	:	menahan
arrest [ə'rest] (kkt)	:	menangkap
dealer ['di:lə] (kb)	:	pedagang
drug [drʌg] (kb)	:	obat-obatan
raid [reɪd] (kb)	:	razia

**Situation: Arnys and Marcell meet at the canteen. They talk about Roy Marten.**

No.	Statements	T/F	Correction
1.	Arnys and Marcell go to the canteen together.	F	They meet at the canteen.
2.	Arnys brings bad news.		
3.	Denias has read The Jakarta Post.		
4.	Roy Marten was accused of being a drug dealer.		
5.	Roy Marten was arrested together with four other people.		
6.	Roy Marten was apprehended in Surabaya.		
7.	The police found 47 grams of crystal meth.		



## Task 4

**Study the following expressions.**

In **Task 3** you find some expressions with different functions. Here are the expressions.

Expressions	Functions
Are you serious?	Expressing disbelief
Really?	Expressing surprise

Below are some other expressions.

Expressions	Functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• No! I don't believe it!</li><li>• You must be joking!</li><li>• You're kidding!</li></ul>	Expressing disbelief
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• That's very surprising.</li><li>• What a surprise!</li><li>• My goodness!</li></ul>	Expressing surprise



## By the Way...

The word "News" is actually an acronym standing for the 4 cardinal compass points: North, East, West, and South.



## Task 5

---

**Listen to the dialogues to complete the missing expressions. Look at the example. The listening script is in the Appendix.**

- 1) Andi : Did you know that Heath Ledger died?  
Arnys : You're kidding.  
Andi : No, I'm not. I read it in a magazine this morning.  
Arnys : Oh, my goodness!
  
  - 2) Retno : Kian Egan has announced his engagement to Jodi Albert.  
Anita : ....  
Retno : Why should I? The engagement was announced in the newspaper.  
Anita : Oh, he breaks my heart.
  
  - 3) Virga : Did you know that Mulan Kwok has changed her name into Mulan Jameela?  
Adib : ... How did you know?  
Virga : I read it in my mom's magazine.
  
  - 4) Ayu : Ariel 'Peterpan' and his wife are getting a divorce. I read the news in the newspaper.  
Denias : ....  
Ayu : Of course. I'll bring the newspaper and show it to you.
  
  - 5) Marcell : Your rock idol is caught using drugs.  
Ruben : Ahmad Albar? ....  
Marcell : I say the truth. I read the news this morning.
- 



## Task 6

---

### Let's say it right.

In the dialogue between Arnys and Marcell in **Task 3** you find the word 'news'. How do you pronounce it?

news [nju:z]

### Note:

The letter 'n' is pronounced 'nj' when followed by '-e'.

Here are some other examples.

knew [nju:]

new [nju:]

newsletter ['nju:zletə]

newspaper ['nju:zpeɪpə]



## Task 7

---

In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate. Include the expressions of disbelief and surprise.

- You tell your classmate that his/her idol has broken up with his girlfriend because he has an affair with a new model.
  - You tell your classmate that your favourite actress is going to get married with her boyfriend next month.
  - You tell your classmate that an actor that he/she doesn't like was nominated for The Best Actor of The Year.
- 



## 2. Read and Write



## Task 8

---

Read the text and guess the meanings of the following words based on the context. Do it in pairs.

allegation [ælɪ'geɪʃn] (kb)	: ....
discharge [dɪs'tʃɑ:dʒ] (kkt)	: ....
estranged ['ɪstreɪndʒd] (ks)	: ....
fortitude ['fɔ:tɪtju:d] (kb)	: ....
investigation [ɪn'vesti'geɪʃn] (kb)	: ....
offset [ɒf'set] (kkt)	: ....
possession [pə'zeʃn] (kb)	: ....
psychiatric [saɪktri'ætrɪk] (ks)	: ....
restraining order [rɪ'streɪning 'ɔ:rdə] (kb)	: ....
testimony ['testɪməni] (kb)	: ....
trivialize ['trɪviəlaɪz] (kkt)	: ....

### Britney Spears - Lutfi Investigated for 'Drugging' Spears

Caption: Britney Spears is followed by a frenzy of photographers while shopping at Fred Segal in West Hollywood. Los Angeles, California - 15.02.08

Britney Spears estranged manager Sam Lutfi is under investigation by Los Angeles police over allegations he drugged the troubled star. Lutfi was served a restraining order earlier this month (Feb 2008) and was instructed to keep his distance from the Spears family after Britney's mother Lynne claimed the manager had admitted he



drugged her daughter. According to website TMZ, the allegations are now being investigated by the Major Crimes Division of the Los Angeles Police Department. Lutfi's new spokesman Michael Sands tells TMZ.com he is aware of the investigation. Spears had been hospitalized for psychiatric evaluation at Los Angeles UCLA Medical Centre, but was discharged last week (06 Feb 2008) after a seven-day stay.

Adapted from: <http://www.contactmusic.com>



## Task 9

**Study the rule below.**

In the news item in Task 8 you find the sentence:

“ ... the allegations are now being investigated by ... ”

The sentence is the passive form of the present continuous.

The pattern is: **am/is/are      being + V3**

For example:

The patient **is being examined** by the doctor.

The students **are being given** the lesson about drugs.



## Task 10

**Read the text again and then answer the questions below. Compare your answers with your partner's.**

### Questions

1. Who is Sam Lutfi?
2. Why was he instructed to keep his distance from the Spears family?
3. Who is Lynne? What did she do?
4. Who is Lutfi's new spokesman? What did he say to TMZ.com?
5. Where did Britney Spears get her psychiatric evaluation? How long did she spend her time there?



## Task 11

**Study the following notes.**

The text in **Task 8** is a news item telling information about event of the day which is considered newsworthy or important. The text includes:

- newsworthy event : recounts the event in summary form.
- background events : elaborate what happened, to whom, in what circumstances.
- sources : comments by participants in, witnesses to and authorities expert on the event.



## Task 12

---

Complete the following text with the words in the box. You may use your dictionary. Look at the example.

response	campaigns	public	friend	case
artists	danger	theme	infotainment	user

### Roy Marten's Arrest

Thursday, November 22, 2007

Roy Marten's arrest for narcotic possession has received a different 1) response from the infotainment industry. Nearly all the 2) ... broadcast by private TV stations has tried to offset Roy's alleged crime by presenting the humanitarian 3) ... of "a wife's fortitude".

At least Roy has been seized twice in the drug 4) ..., the latest taking place after his testimony on the great 5) ... of narcotics to his life. It means that Roy also deceived the public and trivialized law enforcers' anti-narcotic 6) ....

Therefore, Roy's behavior does not deserve the continuous defense of TV infotainment programs, even by his 7) ..., Alex Asmasoebrata. Such developments make the 8) ... wonder whether the shows have been financed by narcotic syndicates.

The fact that Roy had just received about an ounce of shabu when he was captured indicates that he may have been an active 9) ... as well as a drug trafficker.

His case is thus more serious than the previous arrests of fellow 10) ... Gogon, Derry, Polo and Doyok. Why do infotainment circles so aggressively defend Roy?

Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>

Picture: <http://celebrity.okezone.com>



## Task 13

---

Read the following news about Lindsay Lohan. Find the words in the text which have similar meanings to the following words. Look at the example.

- |                |        |
|----------------|--------|
| 1. observe     | = see  |
| 2. penalty     | = .... |
| 3. minor crime | = .... |
| 4. corpse      | = .... |
| 5. basement    | = .... |

## Lohan's Sentence to Visit Morgue

BEVERLY HILLS, California: Lindsay Lohan is about to see dead people.

In June, the 21-year-old actress will visit the morgue as part of her punishment for misdemeanour drunken driving.

"She's going to see bodies. We'll have anywhere from 20 to 50 people in the class and she's treated like any other individual," Los Angeles County Coroner's Assistant Chief Ed Winter said Friday.

Lohan was arrested twice last year on DUI charges and pleaded guilty in August to misdemeanour drunken driving and cocaine charges.

"The morgue visits include a walk-through of the service floor where autopsies are taking place along with the processing of the deceased. They also wind up seeing deceased people in our crypt," Winter said.

"It's to show them what reality is."

Adapted from: *The Jakarta Post*, January 21, 2008  
Picture : <http://img2.timeinc.net>



### Task 14

---

Find two news items in the newspaper and rewrite them in your own words.

---



### Task 15

---

Write a news item about any event in your school that you think important to be published. Put your final draft in the school bulletin.

---



### Cultural Tips

In United Kingdom there are some topics which are best avoided for small talk, such as:

- Age, e.g. "How old are you?"
- Appearance or weight, e.g. "You seem to have put on some weight"
- Personal gossip about somebody you know
- Jokes that might offend (especially sexist or racist jokes)
- Money, e.g. "How much do you earn?"
- Previous or current relationships, e.g. "Do you have a girl friend?"
- Politics, e.g. "Who did you vote for at the last election?"
- Religion, e.g. "Do you believe in God?"
- Criticisms or complaints, e.g. "Why is British food so bad?"

## C. Let's Do More



### Task 16

Complete the following dialogue with the expressions in the box. Then, perform it with your partner.

- What was the cause of his death?
- Really?
- Oh, I'm sorry to hear that.
- I hope so.

Ruben : Anita, why do you look so miserable?

Anita : I've just read the news about Heath Ledger. It states that he passed away.

Ruben : 1) \_\_\_\_\_.

Anita : It's okay.

Ruben : You must be very sad.

Anita : Yes, he's one of my favourite actors. He was a good actor. I have watched all his movies and I love them all.

Ruben : 2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Anita : The police still investigate this case. He might have died of overdose.

Ruben : 3) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Anita : He was found lying in his bed with some pills beside him. The police have not made any conclusion yet.

Ruben : I hope they'll get the cause soon.

Anita : 4) \_\_\_\_\_. Ledger's family called his death very tragic, untimely and accidental.

Ruben : I'm sure his fans feel the great loss of him.

Anita : Heath was a down-to-earth, generous, kind-hearted, life-loving, unselfish individual extremely inspirational to many.



### Task 17

Read the news about Eddie Murphy then answer the questions.

#### Murphy Starts New Year with Marriage

LOS ANGELES: Actor Eddie Murphy celebrated New Year's Day by tying the knot with film producer Tracey Edmonds, their representatives told People magazine.

The pair exchanged vows Tuesday on a private island off Bora Bora in French Polynesia in front of a small group of family and friends, the magazine reported.

Murphy and Edmonds began dating last year and were engaged in July.

Murphy, 46, has five children from his marriage to Nicole Mitchell Murphy, who filed for divorce in 2005. He also has a daughter with Spice Girls singer Melanie Brown.

Edmonds, 40, has two sons from her 13-years of marriage to singer Kenneth "Babyface" Edmonds. As head of Edmonds Entertainment group, Inc., she has produced the film and television series Soul Food.

Murphy's film credits include Dreamgirls, the Beverly Hills Cop, The Nutty Professor, Shrek, and Dr. Doolittle movies.

Adapted from: *The Jakarta Post*, January 4, 2008

#### Question

1. Where did Murphy and Edmonds hold the wedding?
  2. Who is Murphy's ex-wife?
  3. Who is Kenneth "Babyface"?
  4. How many children do Murphy and Edmonds have after their marriage?
  5. Mention Murphy's film credits.
- 

## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 18

---

**Have a dialogue with your partner. Include the expressions of disbelief and surprise based on the following situations.**

- Your classmate tells you that he/she accidentally met your favourite singer. Your classmate has a chat with him for a while and asked his autograph for you.
  - Your classmate tells you that your favourite actress and her boyfriend have been married for four years but they hide it from public. It was revealed on the magazine.
  - Your classmate tells you that he/she won the radio quiz to have a dinner with his/her idol. A private TV station will broadcast this candlelight dinner.
- 



### Task 19

---

**Find and read two news items in the newspaper about any Indonesian celebrity. Then, make a summary of the news by completing the table. Look at the example.**

Newsworthy event	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Tisdale Has No Regrets about Nose Job</b></p> <p>NEW YORK: High School Musical star Ashley Tisdale says she was somewhat distressed when she first saw her new profile after her recent nose job.</p>
------------------	---

Background events	<p>The 22-year-old actress-singer “kind of freaked out,” she tells People magazine in its Jan. 28 issue. “I was so swollen, I was like, ‘Oh my gosh, is it going to stay like this?’”</p> <p>Tisdale says she does not regret having the surgery but is sorry she decided to sing in public two weeks later.</p> <p>Tisdale had surgery Nov. 30 to correct a deviated septum that worsened over the years and contributed to breathing problems. Tisdale says she decided to talk about her surgery because she “didn’t want to play a game of denying it or being coy.”</p>
Sources	<p>“I wanted my fans to know because I don’t take plastic surgery lightly,” she says.</p> <p>Adapted from: <i>The Jakarta Post</i>, January 21, 2008</p>

**Write your summary here.**

Newsworthy event:	
Background events:	
Sources:	

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

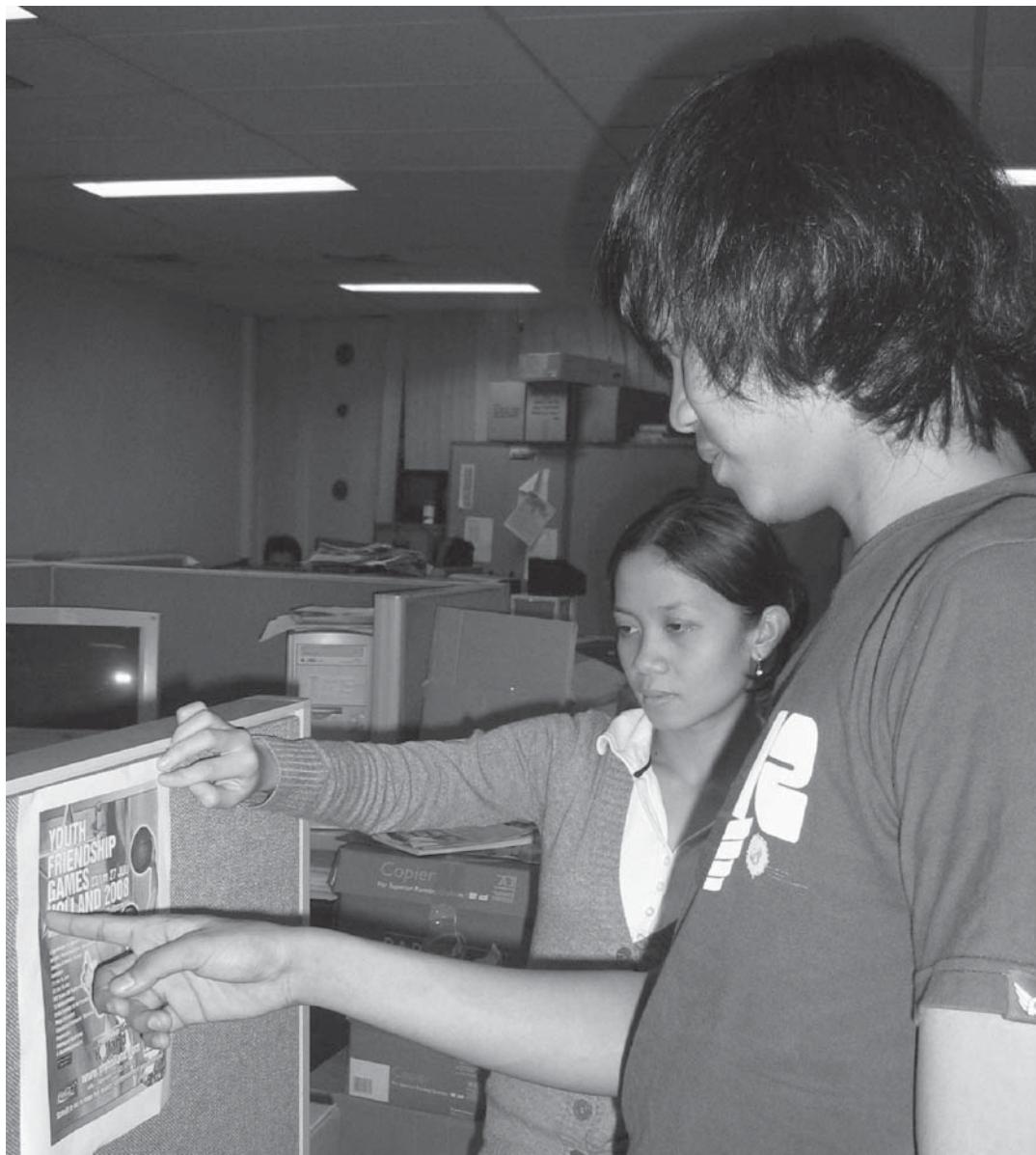
- 1) How to express disbelief, for example:
  - I don't believe it!
  - Are you serious?
  - You must be joking!
- 2) How to express surprise, for example:
  - Really?
  - That's very surprising.
  - What a surprise!
- 3) News item text is a text which is telling information about even of the day which is considered newsworthy or important. It includes the newsworthy event, the background event, and the sources.
- 4) Passive (present continuous)

The pattern of the passive form of the present continuous is:

**am/is/are being + V3**

## UNIT X

**THAT'S VERY KIND  
OF YOU.**





<http://www.momsville.edu>

In your daily life you often have to respond to offers or invitations from others. Do you know how to do them very well?

You love reading news item, don't you? The news items may include news items on sports. Can you read and write such texts effectively? Learn how to read and write news items further in this unit.

## A. Let's Get Ready



### Task 1

Answer the following questions. Compare your answers with your classmate's.

1. What is your favourite sport?
2. Who is your favourite athlete?
3. Do you like reading sport news in the newspapers and magazines?



### Task 2

Study the following kinds of sport. Name each. Look at the example.

swimming



1.



2.

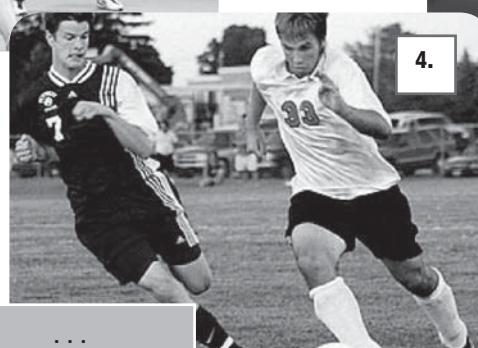


5.

3.



4.



...

Picture:

1. <http://www.mornsville.edu>
2. <http://www.brisbanetimes.com.au>
3. <http://www.olympics.org.uk>
4. <http://www.sysa.com>
5. <http://newsimg.bbc.co.uk>

## B. Let's Act'



### 1. Listen and Speak



### Task 3

Listen to the following monologue to complete the missing information. The listening script is in the Appendix.

#### Sentul to Host First Speedcar Race

*The Jakarta Post, Saturday, January 26, 2008*

Indonesia will play host to the first series of the US\$3 million Speedcar Championships. The Indonesian ..... will take place at the Sentul International Circuit in Bogor, West Java, from Feb. 16 to 17. Indonesia will ..... its drivers Ananda Mikola and Moreno Soeprapto in the race.

Moreno said he hoped he would ..... from the home crowd and stand on the podium. He added that if he should ..... to win the race, he would be able to ..... more sponsors to help ..... him in higher budget Formula races in the future.

The Speedcar ..... will feature 24 drivers behind their eight-valve cars with 620 horsepower, similar to the ones used in Nascar. Physically and skill wise, it's more demanding than Formula 1 as it is heavier. Speedcars ..... 1,300 kg, compared to the 600-kg Formula car.

Moreno and Ananda will race against a number of world-class ....., including former Formula 1 drivers Jean Alessi and Johnny Herbert, in the races.

The speedcar championships, held in partnership with GP2 Asia, will ..... the winner US\$600,000. The next series will be held in Malaysia, Bahrain and Dubai. (dre)



Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>  
Picture <http://www.pertaminaracing.com>



#### By the Way...

Pittsburgh is the only city where all major sports teams have the same colours: black and gold.



## Task 4

---

Listen to the news again and then choose the right statements by circling the letter a, b, c, or d.

1. a. The first series of the Speedcar Championships will be held in Malaysia.  
b. The first series of the Speedcar Championships will be held in Indonesia.  
c. The first series of the Speedcar Championships will be held in Bahrain.  
d. The first series of Speedcar Championships will be held in Dubai.
  2. a. Indonesia will replace Ananda Mikola with Moreno Soeprapto in the race.  
b. Indonesia will place Jean Alessi and Johnny Herbert in the race.  
c. Indonesia will place Ananda Mikola and Moreno Soeprapto in the race.  
d. Indonesia will not replace Ananda Mikola and Moreno Soeprapto in the race.
  3. a. Moreno hoped to get more sponsors to help finance him in Formula races in the future.  
b. Moreno got many sponsors from Speedcar races.  
c. Moreno would like to be the sponsor of Speedcar races.  
d. Moreno did not get many sponsors from Speedcar races.
  4. a. The Speedcar series will feature 24 drivers.  
b. The Speedcar series will feature 620 horses.  
c. The Speedcar series will feature 8 cars.  
d. The Speedcar series will feature 620 cars.
  5. a. Speedcars weigh the same as Formula cars.  
b. Speedcars weigh less than Formula cars.  
c. Speedcars weigh more than Formula cars.  
d. Speedcars weigh twice more than Formula cars.
- 



## Task 5

---

List the words in Task 3 which are unfamiliar to you. Then, find the equivalents in Indonesian according to the context. Do it in pairs.

Unfamiliar words	Equivalents in Indonesian

---



## Task 6

---

In pairs, study the following expressions

Would you like me to give you a glass of water?

That's very kind of you.

Shall we watch the tennis match at Senayan tomorrow?

I'd love to.



## Task 7

---

Study and practise the following dialogue. Pay attention to the expressions printed in bold.  
Work in pairs.

- Andi : Hey, Den. What are you reading?  
Denias : Oh, I'm reading the sports column in the Jakarta Post.  
Andi : Is there anything interesting?  
Denias : Well, there is one entitled "Athletes take up English lessons to improve performances".  
Andi : What is it about?  
Denias : It is mentioned that some Indonesian athletes currently have another item on their training schedule. They are to improve their performance by learning English.  
Andi : Really? Why do they do so?  
Denias : It is said that the inability to speak English restricts players' efforts to socialize. They tend to be introverted when mingling with athletes from other countries.  
Andi : Well, it seems that learning English is getting more important.  
Denias : You're right. By the way, I'd like to visit the new gym centre near the town square. Shall we go there tomorrow?  
Andi : **I won't say no.** Anyway, would you like to have a cup of coffee and some biscuits? I'm going to the kitchen.  
Denias : **I'd love to.** Thanks.  
Andi : You're welcome.



## Task 8

---

In pairs, study the following expressions.

In the dialogue in **Task 7** you find expressions, such as:

- I won't say no.
- I'd love to.

The expressions above are used to accept an invitation and an offer. Here are some other expressions.

### Accepting an Offer/Invitation

That's very kind of you.

I'd be delighted.

Lovely!



## Task 9

---

**Let's say it right.**

In the dialogue between Andi and Denias in **Task 7** you find the word 'athlete'.

How do you pronounce it?

athlete ['æθli:t]

**Note:**

The vowel letter 'a' is pronounced 'æ' when taking the initial position in words. Pronounce the words below.

absent ['æbsənt]

actor ['ækto]

accident ['æksɪdənt]

ambition [æm'bɪʃn]

action ['ækʃən]

angry ['æŋgri]

active ['æktɪv]

anxious ['æŋkʃəs]



## Task 10

---

**In pairs, have a dialogue with your classmate based on the following situations.**

- You and your classmate have just finished exercising. Both of you are very tired and thirsty. You ask your classmate whether he would like to have some drink. Your classmate accepts your offer.

- Your classmate has never gone to the gym centre. She tells you that she really wants to go there. Next Sunday you are going to go to the gym centre. You ask your classmate to go there with you. Your classmate is very excited. She accepts your invitation.
  - Your parents buy you a new set of chess game yesterday. You really want to play it. You ask your classmate to come to your house to play chess with you. He accepts your invitation.
  - Your classmate finds some difficulties in searching information about extreme sports on the internet. You want to help him. Your classmate accepts your offer.
- 



## 2. Read and Write



### Task 11

---

**Read the following news on Chris John and find the meanings of the following words recording to the context. Do it in groups of three.**

bout [baʊt] (kb)	:	....
champion ['tʃæmpɪən] (kb)	:	....
defence [dɪ'fens] (kb)	:	....
dominate ['dɒmɪneɪt] (kkt)	:	....
pressure ['preʃə] (kb)	:	....
punch [pʌnʃ] (kkt)	:	....

#### Chris Retains WBA Belt with TKO

Sunday, 27 January 2008

World Boxing Association featherweight champion Chris “the Dragon” John successfully defended his belt for the ninth time with a technical knockout of Roinet Caballero of Panama on Saturday at Bung Karno Indoor Stadium in Senayan, Central Jakarta.

Caballero’s ring threw in the towel before the start of the eighth round, signalling that their fighter was unable to continue.

Chris dominated the

Panamanian from the first round, with a combination of powerful punches and solid defence.

In the third round, Chris had several chances to floor the 24-year-old Caballero, connecting with hooks and upper cuts to the jaw of the challenger, who fired very little in reply.

Chris kept up the pressure and in the sixth round unleashed a flurry of punches to put the challenger down.



Caballero tried to fight back in the seventh round, but Chris' defence was simply too solid. The Panamanian was unable to continue the bout, which was scheduled for 12 rounds.

With the victory, Chris stretched his record to 47 wins, no defeats and one draw, with 21 KOs and one TKO.

Chris received Rp2 billion (US\$215,000) for the fight, while Caballero earned Rp650 million.

On the undercard, lightweight Alex Bajawa of Indonesia was knocked out by Saddam Kietyongyuth of Thailand in the fifth round. Another Indonesian boxer, Andreas Seran, defeated Sam Setu of Samoa by KO in the first round of their scheduled four-round fight. (JP/dre/trw)

Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>

Picture: <http://www.fightnews.com>

#### Note:

As explained in Unit 9, a news item tells information about event of the day which is considered newsworthy or important. The text is organized to include:

- newsworthy event : recounts the event in summary form.
- background events : elaborate what happened to, to whom, in what circumstances expert on the event.
- sources : comments by participants in, witnesses to and authorities expert on the event.



## Task 12

Read the text again and then answer the questions below. Compare your answers with a partner's.

1. What is the news about?
2. How many times has Chris John defended his belt successfully?
3. Who was Chris John's rival in the WBA championship in Bung Karno Indoor Stadium in Senayan?
4. Mention Chris John's fight record.
5. "His" (paragraph 1, sentence 1) refers to ....



## By the Way...

A technical knockout (also referred to as a T.K.O.) is often declared when the referee or other judges (such as official ring physician, the fighter himself, or the fighter's corner men) decide that a fighter cannot continue the match, even though he does not fail the count.



## Task 13

Read the news about Asian Beach Games. Then, make a summary of the news by listing important information in your own words in the box.

### Asian Beach Games to cost Rp300 billion

Thursday, January 31, 2008

The first Asian Beach Games, which will be held in Bali from October 18-26, will cost an estimated Rp300 billion (around US\$32 million), says National Sports Council (KONI) chairwoman Rita Subowo.

Rita said here Wednesday that the organizing committee and KONI would strive to secure the funding from the government and sponsors. "The Coordinating Ministry for the People's Welfare will provide Rp100 billion," Rita said. "A New Zealand apparel company has signed an agreement with the organizing company to provide a sponsorship of \$1.5 million." Rita said she was hopeful KONI and the organizing committee would find other sponsors to cover the budget.

"We are still negotiating with local and other international companies to sponsor the tournament. Some of them probably will support us in cash, while some others will provide equipment, like computers," she said, adding that the organizing committee would use Ernst & Young as its financial adviser.

The Asian Beach Games is a multisport event that will be held every two years for athletes representing 45 countries from across Asia. A total of 17 sports disciplines, including beach soccer, volleyball, sepak takraw, jet skiing, surfing and sailing will be included in the Games.

To finance the training of Indonesian athletes participating in the event, Rita said the State Ministry for Youth and Sports Affairs would provide some Rp15 billion, which is not included in the Rp300 billion budget for organizing the Games. (trw)

Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>

Where and when will the first Asian Beach Games be held?

---

---

How much will the event probably cost?

---

---

How will they probably get the fund for holding the first Asian Beach Games?

---

---

What will the Asian Beach Games be like? Mention some branches included.

---

---

How will they manage to finance the training of Indonesian athletes participating in the event?

---

---



## Task 14

**Study the rule below.**

In the text in **Task 13** you find the following sentences:

- ...**will** cost an estimated Rp300 billion ...
- ...**will** provide Rp100 billion ...
- Some of them probably **will** support us in cash, ...

The word **will** above is used when we decide to do something, at the time of speaking. The word **will** is always followed by **Verb 1**.

For example:

They **will give** a big support to the team.

They **will hold** training for new members.



## Task 15

**Write your own news item about sport. Make it simple. The following guidance may help you.**

- Pick one topic about sport. You may search it in magazines, newspapers, or the internet.
- List important information on the topic (what it is about, when and where it happened, etc.).
- Arrange the important information you have got to write the news.

## C. Let's Do More



### Task 16

In pairs, create a dialogue with your classmate based on the following information.

You find an advertisement about a sports exhibition. The event will be held in the town's centre building from 5–10 April. You are very excited about it. You tell your classmate about the advertisement. You say that you would like to go there with him. Your classmate agrees. He says that it is the event he has been waiting for.

You and your classmates take a swimming course at 3 p.m. today. Both of you are about to leave when you realize that you forgot to bring your towel. Your classmate says that you may borrow one of his towels.



### Task 17

Find two news items about sports. Pick any topic you are interested in. You may search it in the magazines, newspapers, internet, etc. Then, rewrite the news items in your own words.



#### Cultural Tips

##### Irish Road Bowling

The sport of road bowling is most popular in County Armagh and County Cork in Ireland, although it was once also quite popular in Scotland and England. This kind of sport always attracts crowds as it is played outside on the road.

Picture: <http://www.post-gazette.com>



## D. Let's Check Your Competence



### Task 18

---

Complete the following dialogue with correct words, phrases, and expressions in the box.

canteen

drink

I won't say no.

tennis racket

That's very kind of you.

**Situation: Retno and Virga are at the tennis court.**

Retno : Hey, Virga. Have you seen Denias? He said he would be here today.

Virga : No, I haven't. Adib told me that he and Denias would come at 4 p.m. They have to go to the sports shop first. Adib needs a new 1) \_\_\_\_\_

Retno : I see. Shall we go to the 2) \_\_\_\_\_ now? I'm very thirsty and I need to drink.

Virga : 3) \_\_\_\_\_ By the way, let me buy you a 4) \_\_\_\_\_. I'd like to thank you for teaching me to play tennis today.

Retno : 5) \_\_\_\_\_. Okay, let's go there.

---



### Task 19

---

In groups, have a short dialogue with your classmates. Include the expressions of inviting, accepting, and declining the invitation of a football match.

---



### Task 20

---

Read the text and list the important information on the news. Compare your points with your classmate's.

---

#### Simon Stuns Taufik in Malaysia

The Jakarta Post, Friday, January 18, 2008

Indonesia's No. 1 Taufik Hidayat saw his hopes of collecting the first title this year dashed by his junior compatriot Simon Santoso in the second round of the US\$200,000 Malaysia Open Super Series badminton tournament in Kuala Lumpur on Thursday.

The 2004 Olympic gold medallist was routed by the fitter Simon in 40 minutes 21-18, 21-16. He refused to make any excuse. “There is no excuse for my bad performance today. I simply lost,” he was quoted as saying by AFP.

With the victory, Simon advanced to the quarterfinals to take on top seed Lee Chong Wei of Malaysia. Lee secured semi final berth after beating Przemyslaw Wacha of Poland 21-5, 15-21, 21-8 in 43 minutes. Lee has beaten Simon twice, the last time was at the French Super Series last November where he also became the eventual winner. Simon is the lone prospect for Indonesia in men’s singles after Andre Kurniawan Tedjono fell to eighth seed Chen Yu of China 13-21, 9-21.

In mixed doubles, world champion Nova Widianto and Lilyana Natsir took another step toward the quarterfinals after beating German’s pair Ingo Kindervater and Kathrin Piotrowski 21-11, 21-23, 21-19. They will play Korean duo Lee Yong Dae and Lee Hyo Jung in the quarterfinal. The Korean pair defeated Danish duo Thomas Laybourn and Kamilla Rytter Juhl 21-15, 20-22, 21-19. This would be the first encounter for the Indonesians and the Koreans.

“They are a new pair. Korea has repeatedly made changes in their doubles pairings. We never met them before,” Nova said as quoted by Antara. “It will be an interesting game. But, we are optimistic to win the match,” he said.

Meanwhile, Indonesia also saw its best prospects in women’s doubles tumble during the second round of the tournament. Jo Novita and Greysia Polii were trounced by Korean pair Lee Won Kyung and Lee Hyo Jung 18-21, 10-21 in 41 minutes, while teammates Lilyana Natsir and Vita Marissa fell to Miyuki Maeda and Satoko Suetsuna of Japan 19-21, 16-21 in 45 minutes.



Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>  
Picture: <http://www.indomedia.com>

Newsworthy event	
Background events	
Sources	

## E. Let's Make a Reflection

**Reflect on your learning in this unit and write down your reflection in the space below.**

What I like best in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

What I don't like in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

The improvement I have made after learning English in this unit:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## F. Let's Make a Summary

In this unit you learn:

1) How to accept an offer or invitation, for example:

- I won't say no.
- I'd love to.
- That's very nice of you.

2) News Items

A news item tells information about event of the day which is considered newsworthy or important. The text is organized to include newsworthy event, background events, and sources.

3) Will

Will is used when we decide to do something at the time of speaking. "Will" is always followed by Verb 1.

# UNIT REVIEW SEMESTER 2

I. Listen to short conversations between two people. Choose the best answer to each question. The listening script is in the Appendix.

1. What does Marcell mean?
  - a. He found it as a trouble to help Arnys.
  - b. He could not help Arnys.
  - c. He would not help Arnys.
  - d. He might help Arnys.
  - e. He loves to help Arnys.
2. What does Retno mean?
  - a. She wanted to help Andi.
  - b. She could not help Andi.
  - c. She bought a bracelet yesterday.
  - d. She responds to Andi's thanks.
  - e. She would help Andi.
3. What does Virga mean?
  - a. She asks Adib to create a new logo.
  - b. She congratulates Adib's work.
  - c. She gives Adib a logo for their club.
  - d. She helps Adib to make a new logo.
  - e. She wants to create a new logo for the club.
4. What is Anita's intention?
  - a. She likes Ayu's gown.
  - b. She congratulates Ayu.
  - c. She compliments Ayu.
  - d. She invites Ayu.
  - e. She makes an appointment with Ayu.
5. What does Arnys imply?
  - a. She does not believe the news.
  - b. She wants to have the kittens.
  - c. She is afraid of the kittens.
  - d. She is excited with the news.
  - e. She compliments Ruben.
6. What does Anita mean?
  - a. She is excited.
  - b. She would like to join the contest.
  - c. She wants her dog to join the contest.
  - d. She will go to the contest next week.
  - e. She wants to buy a dog in the contest.

7. What does Andi mean?
- He doesn't believe in the news.
  - He wants to believe in the news.
  - He believes in the news.
  - He wants to become a rock idol.
  - He wants to buy the newspaper.
8. What does Virga imply?
- She refuses Denias's invitation.
  - She does not want to go with Denias.
  - She accepts Denias's invitation.
  - She wants to go to the match by herself.
  - She says 'no' to Denias's invitation.
9. Ayu : Thanks a million for your help.  
Arnys : \_\_\_\_\_.
- Don't mention it.
  - I'd love to.
  - Really?
  - That's wonderful.
  - Terrific!
10. Adib : That's a very cute sweater.  
Retno : \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's no trouble at all.
  - Thank you for saying so.
  - With my pleasure.
  - Very well, thanks.
  - That would be nice.
11. Marcell : \_\_\_\_\_.  
Virga : Really? That's wonderful!
- My lovely kitten died last night.
  - My little sister killed my hamster.
  - My horse has been sick for three days,
  - My dog won a swimming contest yesterday.
  - My rabbit was hit by a car this morning.
12. Denias : I heard the news that Pasha "Ungu" was put on probation for eight months.  
Andi : \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't believe it!
  - That's great.
  - I'd love to.
  - It's no trouble at all.
  - Don't mention it.

13. Virga : Won't you have a dinner with my family tomorrow night?

Adib : \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. You must be joking!
- b. My goodness!
- c. That would be great.
- d. Well done.
- e. Congratulations!

**II. Read the texts and choose the best answer to each question.**

**Questions 14 – 20 are based on the following text.**

### **The White Butterfly**

An old man named Takahama lived in a little house behind the cemetery of the temple of Sozanji. He was extremely friendly and generally liked by his neighbours, though most of them considered him a little mad. That was because he was very old but he did not want to get married. He did not have the desire for intimate relationship with women.

One summer day he became very ill, so ill, in fact, that he sent for his sister-in-law and her son. They both came and did all they could to bring comfort during his last hours. While Takahama fell asleep, they watched a large white butterfly flew into the room and rested on the old man's pillow. The young man tried to drive it away with a fan; but it came back three times, as if it was very loath to leave the sufferer.

At last Takahama's nephew chased it out into the garden, through the gate, and into the cemetery beyond, where it lingered over a woman's tomb, and then mysteriously disappeared. On examining the tomb the young man found the name "Akiko" written upon it, together with a description narrating how Akiko died when she was eighteen. Though the tomb was covered with moss and must have been erected fifty years previously, the boy saw that it was surrounded with flowers, and that the little water tank had been recently filled.

When the young man returned to the house he found that Takahama had passed away, and he returned to his mother and told her what he had seen in the cemetery.

"Akiko?" murmured his mother. "When your uncle was young he was betrothed to Akiko. She died shortly before her wedding day. When Akiko left this world your uncle resolved never to marry, and to live ever near her grave. For all these years he has remained faithful to his vow, and kept in his heart all the sweet memories of his one and only love. Every day Takahama went to the cemetery, whether the air was fragrant with summer breeze or thick with falling snow. Every day he went to her grave and prayed for her happiness, swept the tomb and set flowers there. When Takahama was dying, and he could no longer perform his loving task, Akiko came for him. That white butterfly was her sweet and loving soul."

Adapted from: <http://www.pitt.edu>

14. The text tells you about ...

- a. an old man with his faith
- b. an old man with his neighbours
- c. a mad old man
- d. a crazy old man
- e. dying old man

15. How was Takahama's characters?
- He was a humorous person.
  - He was an indolent person.
  - He was a pathetic person.
  - He was a sociable person.
  - He was a hilarious person.
16. Who was Akiko?
- She was Takahama's fiancé.
  - She was Takahama's niece.
  - She was Takahama's sister I law.
  - She was Takahama's sister.
  - She was Takahama's mother.
17. Which statement is not true according to the text?
- Takahama went every day to Akiko's grave and prayed for her happiness.
  - Takahama lived near Akiko's grave.
  - Takahama resolved not to marry after Akiko's death.
  - Takahama became very ill on summer day.
  - Takahama chased the white butterfly out into the garden.
18. The word "It" (paragraph 3, sentence 2) refers to ...
- the garden
  - the cemetery
  - the tomb
  - the white butterfly
  - the gate
19. Which of the following words is the antonym of 'resolved'?
- undecided
  - resolute
  - unyielding
  - determined
  - unbendable
20. Which of the following words is the synonym of 'betrothed'?
- alienated
  - divided
  - separated
  - estranged
  - engaged

**Questions 21 – 26 are based on the following text.**

### **My Very Best Friends**

I believe that a friend is an angel who lifts us off our feet when our wings have trouble remembering how to fly. It means that our friends are people who will always be there for us any time we need them.

I'm so lucky because I have three best friends. They are Firsty, Ronald and Jonathan. We have known each other since we were four years old. We met in the kindergarten. Since then, we always go to the same school. Moreover, our houses are still in the same block. We do everything together. Our motto is "United we stand, divided we fall". It means "together we are stronger". Now, let me introduce my friends one by one.

Firsty is the youngest among us because she was born in December. We call her "The Sweety Firsty". Her father is French. She is tall and slim. She's about 171 cm. She has long straight hair. Actually the color of her hair is blonde. However, she dyed her hair black since last year. She has beautiful blue eyes, an oval face and pointed nose. "The Sweety Firsty" is a cheerful, confident, and determined girl. However, she is a little bit careless and stubborn. She has many cats in her house. There are about nine cats. She loves them all. One of her favourite is a little orange cat. She calls her 'Shinny'. Firsty loves to dance and sing. Nevertheless, she wants to be a model.

Ronald's nickname is Ron. Most of girls in our school love and adore him. There's no doubt about his good looking. We call him "The Charming Ron". His height is 176 cm. Ron has straight hair and perfect face. He is an intelligent and introvert person. Above all, he is humble. He was crowned as The Best Student this year. He won so many prizes on Math, Chemistry and Physic competition. However, his favourite subject is Chemistry. He wants to be a chemist someday.

Jonathan is a funny person. He can always find a way to make the people around him laugh. I wonder what it is in his head for he can create jokes spontaneously. Jonathan's nick name is Jo. He is plump. He's about 168 cm tall. His weight is 80 kg. That's why we call him "The Big Jo". He has a round face with brown eyes. His spiky hairstyle makes him easily recognized. Jo is a humorous, friendly and an easy going person. He is a movie freak. He would never miss any new movie in the cinema. He dreams of becoming a famous actor one day.

About me? Well, my name is Hana. I'm the shortest one among them. I'm about 160 cm tall. I have long wavy hair with round face. My friends call me "The Chubby Hana" because I also have a chubby check. Most people, even my parents say that I'm a careful, generous and diligent person. They also say that I'm a bit sensitive. I love painting. I spend much time in my small studio just painting.

That's all about me and friends of mine. Even though we are quite different, we love each other and will keep this relationship for good.

21. The purpose of the text is ...
  - a. to describe persons and characters
  - b. to tell a sequence of events
  - c. to entertain the readers
  - d. to persuade the readers to have many friends
  - e. to teach the readers how to make friends

22. The followings are Firsty's characters, except ...
- cheerful, humorous, and sensitive
  - cheerful, confident, and strong-minded
  - determined, sensitive, and funny
  - determined, humorous, sensitive
  - sensitive, confident, serious
23. What is Jonathan like?
- He is fat, easy going, and funny.
  - He is fat, stubborn, and funny.
  - He is chubby, diligent, and sensitive.
  - He is plump, humble, and sensitive.
  - He is friendly, easy going, and slim.
24. What is Hana's favourite?
- She loves Chemistry.
  - She loves cats.
  - She loves watching TV.
  - She loves painting.
  - She loves singing.
25. Which statement is true according to the text?
- Firsty has a round face.
  - Jonathan wants to be a chemist.
  - Ron wants to be an artist.
  - Hana has long straight hair.
  - Jonathan is plump..
26. A word in the text that has the same meaning as “strong-minded” is ...
- sensitive
  - friendly
  - determined
  - confident
  - cheerful

**Questions 27 – 30 are based on the folowing text.**

### **Inul aims to drill after haj**

JAKARTA: Dangdut singer Inul Daratista says she will not stop performing her raunchy hip-gyrating dance, “the drill” after recently completing a spiritual pilgrimage to Mecca.

“Uztad (cleric) advised me to run my business as usual after the haj. He only told me to stop if I was too tired. How am I supposed to feed my family if I don’t sing and dance?” said the singer whose dancing was once the source of a major controversy here.

Inul said she wouldn’t be changing her typically-tight stage outfits like many other actresses and female singers who start wearing headscarves after coming back from the haj.

“..... (the costume) depends on the songs: If I was ordered to sing qasyidah (Arabic songs). I’d have to adjust.” Inul said quoted by Detikcom.

Inul who travelled to Mecca with her husband, Adam Suseno, said they had been impressed by the beauty of the city and were planning to make a return trip within the next four months.

"Next year, four months from now, we'll take the umroh (minor haj program), " she said.

**Adapted from: *The Jakarta Post*, December 27, 2007**

27. With whom did Inul take haj?
  - a. alone
  - b. her friend
  - c. Ustad
  - d. her husband
  - e. her parents
28. What is Inul's decision after haj?
  - a. She will stop her raunchy dance.
  - b. She will run her business as usual.
  - c. She will sing Arabic songs.
  - d. She will start wearing headscarves.
  - e. She will take a break for four months.
29. What Inul planned four months ahead?
  - a. She will take the umroh.
  - b. She will travel to Mecca.
  - c. She will sing qasyidah.
  - d. She will start wearing headscarves.
  - e. She will stop performing her raunchy dance.
30. A word in the text that has the same meaning as "vulgar" is ...
  - a. usual
  - b. spiritual
  - c. minor
  - d. major
  - e. raunchy

# DAFTAR PUSTAKA

Hill, L. A.. 1963. *Elementary Comprehension Pieces*. London: Oxford University Press.

Madya, Suwarsih. 2000. *Learning English Pronunciation Systematically*. Yogyakarta: State University of Yogyakarta.

Murphy, Raymond. 1985. *English Grammar in Use*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

## **Magazines:**

KGRE Magazine, September 2006

## **Newspapers:**

The Jakarta Post, February 21, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 31, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 27, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 26, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 21, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 18, 2008

The Jakarta Post, January 4, 2008

The Jakarta Post, December 27, 2007

## **Websites:**

<http://4simpsons.files.wordpress.com>

<http://animals.nationalgeographic.com>

<http://blogs.kansascity.com>

<http://bp2.blogger.com>

<http://celebrity.okezone.com>

<http://corefight.or.id>

<http://data1.blog.de>

<http://english.kbs.co.kr>

<http://esorang.cafe24.com>

<http://h1.ripway.com>

<http://farm1.static.flickr.com>

<http://farm2.static.flickr.com>

<http://feastmalaysia.blogspot.com>

<http://genasik.telkomsel.com>

<http://images.egullet.com>

<http://images.google.co.id>

<http://images.amazon.com>

<http://images.jupiterimages.com>

<http://img.dailymail.co.uk>

<http://img2.timeinc.net>

<http://img47.imageshack.us>

<http://img.thesun.co.uk>

<http://indonesian-street-foods.blogspot.com>

<http://ivyjoy.com>

<http://jadehwang.files.wordpress.com>

<http://jamion.files.wordpress.com>  
<http://k53.pbase.com>  
<http://mariannh.com>  
<http://news.bbc.co.uk>  
<http://newsimg.bbc.co.uk>  
<http://office.indonesiaselebriti.com>  
<http://onokinegrindz.typepad.com>  
<http://original-indonesian-recipe.blogspot.com>  
<http://pets.aol.com>  
<http://plus.maths.org>  
<http://r306.files.wordpress.com>  
<http://readingharry.com>  
<http://redlights.files.wordpress.com>  
<http://upload.wikimedia.org>  
<http://wallpaper.diq.ru>  
<http://warunglele.com>  
<http://wikipedia.org>  
<http://yance.files.wordpress.com>  
<http://www2.mcdaniel.edu>  
<http://www-ieee.eecs.berkeley.edu>  
<http://www.about-losangelesca.com>  
<http://www.americanfolklore.net>  
<http://www.aolcdn.com>  
<http://www.bali-directory.com>  
<http://www.batamevent.com>  
<http://www.boxofficepsychics.com>  
<http://wwwbrisbanetimes.com.au>  
<http://www.cassville.org>  
<http://www.cat-domain.com>  
<http://www.cest-ma-maison.net>  
<http://www.cfasouthwest.org>  
<http://www.contactmusic.com>  
<http://www.disney-vacation-time.com>  
<http://www.desktoprating.com>  
<http://www.dkimages.com>  
<http://www.e-hon.jp>  
<http://www.e-smartschool.com>  
<http://www.ediplomat.com>  
<http://www.elyrics.net>  
<http://www.enjoyfrance.com>  
<http://www.exposay.com>  
<http://www.fightnews.com>  
<http://www.fortunecity.com>  
<http://www.fuzzypups.com>  
<http://www.geocities.com>  
<http://www.goodbyecitylife.com>  
<http://www.gotthelookpersiancats.com>  
<http://www.greatindonesia.com>  
<http://www.horseclassified.com>  
<http://wwwimage.cbsnews.com>  
<http://www.image-search.com>  
<http://www.img.thesun.co.uk>  
<http://www.imnotobsessed.com>  
<http://www.indolists.com>  
<http://www.indomedia.com>

<http://www.jenius.com.au>  
<http://www.klumps.com>  
<http://www.lyrics007.com>  
<http://www.lyricsandsongs.com>  
<http://www.mailorder2000.co.uk>  
<http://www.masuya.com.au>  
<http://www.metrolyrics.com>  
<http://www.michaelsporanimation.com>  
<http://www.moblog.com.sg>  
<http://www.morrisville.edu>  
<http://www.mp3lyric.com>  
<http://www.mytelus.com>  
<http://www.olympics.org.uk>  
<http://www.pertaminaracing.com>  
<http://www.post-gazette.com>  
<http://www.poster.net>  
<http://www.rabbasa.or.id>  
<http://www.raskraska.ru>  
<http://www.recipeatlas.com>  
<http://www.recipepizza.com>  
<http://www.resch-frisch.com>  
<http://www.rocksbackpages.com>  
<http://www.saritaksu.com>  
<http://www.sfgate.com>  
<http://www.shadowlandtoys.com>  
<http://www.shinystyle.tv>  
<http://www.st.rim.or.jp>  
<http://www.suaramerdeka.com>  
<http://www.sunkissvillas.com>  
<http://www.sysa.com>  
<http://www.thejakartapost.com>  
<http://www.thejessicawells.com>  
<http://www.wallpaperbase.com>  
<http://www.wallpapergate.com>  
<http://www.wikipedia.org>  
<http://www.worldisround.com>  
<http://www.worth1000.com>  
<http://www.yarisgroovy.com>

# LISTENING SCRIPT

## UNIT I LET ME INTRODUCE MYSELF

### Task 2

- 1) Ayu : Good morning.  
Andi : Good morning.  
Ayu : Do you know when the class meeting starts?  
Andi : It starts at 9 a.m. today.  
Ayu : I see. Thanks for telling.  
Andi : You're welcome.
- 2) Virga : How are you, Den?  
Denias : I'm fine, thanks.  
Virga : Well, you look different today.  
Denias : Really? How do I look?  
Virga : You look great.  
Denias : Thanks. You do too.
- 3) Retno : I think we need to discuss our plan for next month.  
Arnys : You're right.  
Retno : What if we meet at the canteen this afternoon.  
Arnys : Sure.  
Retno : So, see you later.  
Arnys : See you.

### Task 6

- Andi : Good morning. My name is Andi.  
Denias : Good morning Andi. I'm Denias.  
Andi : Denias, this is Adib. We were classmates the Junior High School.  
Denias : Hi, Adib. How do you do?  
Adib : How do you do.  
Andi : By the way, did you join pencak silat extracurricular activity in the Junior High School?  
Denias : Yes, I did.  
Andi : Oh, that's great. Adib and I have never joined it before.  
Adib : We hope you can help us.  
Denias : Sure.  
Andi : Okay, see you this afternoon.  
Adib : See you Denias.  
Denias : See you.

## **UNIT II I'M SORRY TO HEAR THAT**

### **Task 3**

- Denias : Hi, Retno.
- Retno : Hi, Denias.
- Denias : You were absent for two days. Where were you?
- Retno : My family and I went to my cousin's wedding party.
- Denias : I see. Where was it?
- Retno : It was in Surabaya. It took five hours to get there.
- Denias : How was the party?
- Retno : It was great, but there was something bad that happened.
- Denias : Really? What was that?
- Retno : The bride fainted after the party was over.
- Denias : Oh, I'm sorry to hear that. Was she sick?
- Retno : Actually, she was not. She was just too tired. Fortunately, she soon recovered.
- Denias : That's good. Anyway, the bell is ringing. Let's go back to the class.
- Retno : Okay.

### **Task 10**

Last year, my family and I visited our relatives in Greece. We flew to Athens via Singapore. After two hours from Athens, we arrived in Hydra where our relatives were. The interesting thing about Hydra is that no vehicle allowed. We have to walk to get anywhere. People often get around on horses or mules. After Hydra, we visited Satorini by ferry. Then we took a high speed catamaran to Mykonos. At least in Mykonos they have taxis and buses so we did not have to walk to go everywhere. From Mykonos we flew to the island of Skiathos where we spent a lovely week visiting beaches and eating wonderful Greek food. Finally it was time to go back to Athens and end our trip. After wandering around the old part of the city and taking lots of photos of the Acropolis and other ancient Greek monuments and statues, we had to get my taxi to the airport.

*Adapted from: KGRE Magazine, September 2006*

## **UNIT III THAT SOUNDS A NICE IDEA**

### **Task 3**

1. First, prepare all the ingredients.
2. Next, slightly beat eggs and mix with flour and half cup of water.
3. Then, mash bananas with fork and mix thoroughly with flour and egg mixture.
4. After that, deep-fry bananas and flour mixture in hot oil until golden brown.
5. Finally, drain on absorbent paper and dust with cheese.
6. The Fried Bananas with Cheese are ready to serve.

#### **Task 4**

- Ayu : This afternoon I'd like to practise making fried rice. Would you like to come to my house to help me?
- Retno : That sounds a nice idea. However, I don't think I can cook.
- Ayu : Don't worry. We'll learn together how to cook fried rice.
- Retno : Would you tell me how to do it before practising?
- Ayu : Sure, let me tell you. First, prepare the spices, egg, and cooked rice. Grind some garlic, chilli, and salt. Then, cut some onions into very thin pieces. Fry them together until it smells good. After that, add the egg and scramble them together. Finally, fry them together with the cooked rice until they are well mixed.
- Retno : And then you have your fried rice done.
- Ayu : Right.
- Retno : That sounds easy. I can't wait to practise it.
- Ayu : Neither can I. By the way, do you want me to pick you up?
- Retno : No, thank you.

### **UNIT IV CAN I SEE YOU AT 11 A.M.?**

#### **Task 4**

- Arnys : Denias, do you like to try some food from other countries?
- Denias : Yes, I do.
- Arnys : What is your favourite one?
- Denias : My favourite one is Kebab, actually.
- Arnys : Kebab? I've never heard of it.
- Denias : Well, the Kebab originated in Turkey. It is a staple food there.
- Arnys : What kind of food is it?
- Denias : It is made of sliced roasted meat served with fresh vegetables and wrapped in Lebanese bread with a choice of sauces.
- Arnys : Hmm ... It sounds delicious.
- Denias : Yes, it is. Anyway, let me invite you to try it. Would tomorrow be possible?
- Arnys : Sure, that will be fine.

#### **Task 6**

- Virga : Ayu, have you ever made your own pizza?
- Ayu : No, I haven't. What about you?
- Virga : I haven't either. Anyway, I'd like to invite you to practise making pizza.
- Ayu : Really? Where?
- Virga : Well, it's going to be in my aunt's kitchen.
- Ayu : So, she's going to teach us.
- Virga : No, she's not actually. We'll only use my recipe book.
- Ayu : Are you sure? That's going to be challenging.
- Virga : So, would tomorrow at 2 p.m. be possible?

- Ayu : I'm afraid I can't. I will be attending my music course.  
Virga : How about at 4 p.m.?  
Ayu : Great, it's a perfect time.

### Task 11

#### Making Crab Soup

Making crab soup is not difficult. What you need are 2 liters of fish stock, 2 medium-sized crabs, 100 gram ginger, 50 gram scallions, 50 gram Indonesian parsley, salt, and pepper to taste. First, make fish stock by boiling fish bones in 8 cups of water. Then remove these bones after a few minutes. Wash the crabs, split into several parts. Cut ginger into very thin slices, the scallions and Indonesian parsley. After that, heat stock for about 5 minutes, put everything into the stock. Finally, add salt and pepper to taste.

Adapted from: <http://www.indo.com>

## UNIT V I M DELIGHTED TO HEAR THAT

### Task 4

- Virga : Ayu, yesterday Mrs Irene told me that the role of Ratna Manggali goes to you.  
Ayu : Really? I'm delighted to hear about that.  
Virga : Well, congratulations!  
Ayu : Thank you. By the way, who's going to take the role of Calon Arang?  
Virga : Don't be surprised, Mrs. Irene has chosen me!  
Ayu : Great! Nobody can do it better than you.  
Virga : I'm not that sure. I still need more references about Calon Arang to improve my acting.  
Ayu : Don't worry about that, I will help you find more sources.  
Virga : Will you?  
Ayu : Yes, of course. That's what friends are for.  
Virga : Thank you very much for your kindness.  
Ayu : Don't mention it.

### Task 6

- 1) Andi : Mr. Joe likes the story and lets us use it in the next play.  
Denias : I'm delighted to hear about that.
- 2) Arnys : Thanks a lot for telling me the story.  
Retno : Any time.
- 3) Virga : Thank you for your help.  
Marcell : Don't mention it.
- 4) Ruben : Thank you very much for lending me your story book.  
Ayu : That's all right.
- 5) Adib : You got A for your writing assignment.  
Anita : It's marvellous.

### Task 10

Brawijaya, the king of Majapahit, had a beautiful daughter named Roro Anteng. Later she got married to a priest named Joko Seger. Because of an unfortunate situation, they were forced to leave the kingdom. They settled an area in the mountain named Tengger.

They were unhappy because they did not have a child. They climbed the peak of the mountain and prayed to the gods. Betara Bromo promised them many children with one condition: they would have to sacrifice their youngest child. They finally had twenty-five children. However, they broke their promise to sacrifice the youngest, Kesuma. Suddenly, an eruption occurred and Kesuma fell into the crater. His voice was heard saying, "I have to be sacrificed so that you will all live. From now on you should arrange an annual ceremony on the 14th of Kesodo."

Kesuma's brothers and sisters held the offering ceremony every year by offering fruits, vegetables, rice and meats. This ceremony is still held today as a Kesada ceremony.

Adapted from: <http://www.strim.or.jp>

### UNIT REVIEW 1

1. Anita : How are you?  
Denias : Very well, thanks.
2. Retno : Hi, my name is Retno.  
Virga : Hi, Retno. I'm Virga.
3. Ruben : Thank you very much for lending me the novel.  
Arnys : Don't mention it.
4. Ayu : Adib told me that he got an accident yesterday.  
Andi : I'm sorry to hear that.
5. Retno : Tomorrow I'm going to make a chocolate pudding. Would you like to come?  
Ayu : Thank you, I'd like to.
6. Adib : Shall we have dinner at the Japanese restaurant tonight?  
Arnys : I'd like to, but I have another plan.
7. Anita : We need to go to the market to buy some fruits. Would tomorrow be possible?  
Virga : Sure, that will be fine.
8. Marcell : Hey, Retno. They told me that you won the poetry reading competition.  
Retno : Thank goodness!

## **UNIT VI IT WAS THE LEAST I COULD DO.**

### **Task 3**

- Adib : Hi Retno, I've got something for you.
- Retno : Really? What's that?
- Adib : Here you are.
- Retno : Oh, thank you very much for your kindness.
- Adib : It was the least I could do.
- Retno : Adib, this is the only thing I want it right now. I've been looking for this novel for months, but I couldn't find it anywhere. How could you find it?
- Adib : Two days ago I went to Bandung, and I found it in a small bookstore. By the way, why do you need it badly?
- Retno: I really need this novel because I have limited sources to support my writing on Japanese folktales.
- Adib : Oh, I see. Anyway, I'm glad I can help you. I hope I will be the first to read your writing.
- Retno: Of course you will.
- Adib : Thank you.
- Retno: Don't mention it.

### **Task 6**

- 1) Arnys : Thank you very much for your kindness. I wouldn't able to do that by my self.
- Ruben : It's no trouble at all. You can call me any time you need me.
- 2) Marcell : I got A for my story telling assignment. You're the one who gave me the idea about the story I would tell to the class. I'm very grateful to you.
- Anita : Don't mention it.
- 3) Adib : I have given the story book we bought yesterday to my sister. She loves the book you have chosen. That was really nice of you.
- Ayu : Delighted I was able to help. You know, most of girls love to read romantic story.
- 4) Retno : Thank you very much for lending me the all of your story books. I have my niece stayed at home all day long.
- Virga : It's no trouble at all.
- 5) Andi : I was blessed for having you as my friend. You always there when I need your help. I'm much obliged.
- Denias : It was the least I could do. That's what friends are for.

### Task 8

**Blue Hen's Chicks**  
retold by  
**S. E. Schlosser**

A Delaware man went to war during the American Revolution. For entertainment, he brought with him two fighting cocks. When asked about these chickens, the soldier said slyly: "They are the chick's of a blue hen I have at home."

Well, these cocks could fight! They were so fierce, they caused quite a stir among the men. It did not take long for the Delaware troops to begin boasting among the troops from the other states that they could out-fight anyone, just like those famous fighting cocks. "We're the Blue Hen's Chickens. We will fight to the end!" became the theme of the Delaware troops. The other troops took to calling the men from Delaware "The Blue Hen's Chicks", and to this day, Delaware is known as the Blue Hen State.

## UNIT VII WHAT A NICE HAIR CUT!

### Task 10

**My Favourite Actor**

My favourite actor is Ringgo Agus Rahman. I like him because he is a good actor. He is also very funny. Moreover, he is cute He has bright skin and slanting eyes. His facial expression makes him look funny. If I had a chance to meet him, I would ask him sign my photograph.

### Task 4

- Ayu : You look cute with that hat.  
Denias : Thank you for saying so. By the way, I heard from Andi that you won two free tickets to watch 'I am Legend' in the cinema.  
            Congratulations!  
Ayu : Thank you. I joined a quiz in the radio and I won it.  
Denias : That's great. What would you do with the tickets?  
Ayu : Well, actually I'm going to ask you to go with me to watch the movie. Shall we?  
Denias : Really? I'd love to.  
Ayu : So, can you pick me up at 7 tomorrow evening?  
Denias : Of course. I'll be there on time.  
Ayu : I'll be waiting for you.

### Task 6

- 1) Ruben : Congratulations on getting a free coupon to borrow movies from 'Nemo' DVD rental.  
Anita : Thank you.
- 2) Adib : I like your shoes.  
Denias : It's nice of you to say so.

- Adib : Where did you buy them?  
Denias : I bought them in the new department store near my house.
- 3) Arnys : I must congratulate you on designing the new poster for our drama club. Everybody in the club loves your work.  
Marcell : Thank you.  
Arnys : Where did you get the idea?  
Marcell : A scene in 'The Lord of The Rings' inspired me.
- 4) Retno : I saw your performance on TV yesterday. Well done, Andi. You have impressed the jury.  
Andi : Thanks. I worked hard to prepare everything.
- 5) Virga : It seems that your diet programme works on you. You're looking good.  
Ayu : How kind of you to say so.
- 6) Anita : That's the nicest skirt I've ever seen.  
Retno : Oh, not really.  
Anita : Where did you get it?  
Retno : I made it myself.

## UNIT VIII I FIND IT VERY INTERESTING.

### Task 3

#### Andi's Pets

Andi has many pets. He has two cats, a dog, and a hamster. His cats are Felix and Deborah. Felix is a male cat. It is a black and white cat. It weighs 4 kg. It likes to sleep for hours. Deborah is a small white female cat. It weighs 1.5 kg. It is very cute. It likes to play with a tennis ball. Both cats are tame. His dog, Brandy, is a big brown dog. It is 75 cm tall. It is very smart. It can run very fast. Andi named his hamster Bora. It is a cute small hamster. It is a brown one. It likes to eat bread. Andi made it a small hamster house. Andi loves all of his pets.

### Task 6

- Anita : Hey, Den. Have you read the article in the latest school magazine?  
Denias : Which article do you mean?  
Anita : It's the one about Nora the Piano Playing Cat.  
Denias : Well, I haven't read anything about it. The title sounds strange.  
What is it actually about?  
Anita : It is about a cat named Nora. She is a gray tabby cat. She is famous for "playing" the piano.  
Denias : Really? That's wonderful.  
Anita : There have also been many talk shows about Nora. She has attracted the interest of both musicians and scientists, who are fascinated by her rare behavior.  
Denias : Wow, I find it very interesting. I think I'm going to search more information about Nora on the internet.  
Anita : I was thinking about it too.

## **UNIT IX I DON'T BELIEVE IT!**

### **Task 2**

#### **Wilson returns after suicide attempt**

The Jakarta Post

Thursday, February 21, 2008

Los Angeles: Owen Wilson is going back to work for the first time since his reported suicide attempt last summer.

Wilson, 39, and co-star Jennifer Aniston begin shooting March 10 on 20<sup>th</sup> Century Fox's Marley & Me, the studio said. It tells the tales of a couple who adopt a dog to give parenthood a trial run, then find the mischievous pooch more than they bargained for.

After he was hospitalized last August, Wilson dropped out of his summer's comedy Tropic Thunder, which already had been in production. He was replaced by Mathew McConaughey.

Due out Christmas Day, Marley & Me is directed by David Frankel and based on the book by John Grogan, Alan Arkin co-stars.

### **Task 3**

- Arnys : Hi Marcell!
- Marcell : Hi! How are you doing?
- Arnys : Very well, thanks. What about you?
- Marcell : Not so bad, thanks.
- Arnys : Have you read The Jakarta Post this morning?
- Marcell : No, I haven't. What's in there?
- Arnys : Bad news. Roy Marten was arrested again in a drug raid.
- Marcell : Are you serious?
- Arnys : Yeah, I'm not kidding.
- Marcell : He was once jailed for nine months for drug abuse. I thought he would learn a lesson from that. When did it happen and how?
- Arnys : Roy was arrested on early Tuesday morning. He was apprehended together with an alleged drug dealer, Hartanto alias A Hong, two accomplices identified as Matatula and Didit Kesit Cahyadi, and a woman named Winda. They were caught in a hotel in Surabaya.
- Marcell : What did the police find in this case?
- Arnys : They found 43 grams of crystal meth, an inhaling tube, a plastic bag of crystal meth, and other drug-taking paraphernalia.
- Marcell : Really? That's a pity.
- Arnys : Yes, and it's going to be a hot issue along this week.

### **Task 5**

- 1) Andi : Did you know that Heath Ledger died?  
Arnys : You're kidding.  
Andi : No, I'm not kidding. I read it in a magazine this morning.  
Arnys : Oh, my goodness!

- 2) Retno : Kian Egan has announced his engagement to Jodi Albert.  
 Anita : You must be joking!  
 Retno : Why should I? The engagement was announced in the newspaper.  
 Anita : Oh, he breaks my heart.
- 3) Virga : Did you know that Mulan Kwok has changed her name into Mulan Jameela?  
 Adib : Really? How did you know?  
 Virga : I read it in my mom's magazine.
- 4) Ayu : Ariel 'Peterpan' and his wife are getting divorce. I read the news in the newspaper.  
 Denias : Are you serious?  
 Ayu : Of course. I'll bring the newspaper and show it to you.
- 5) Marcell : Your rock idol is caught using drugs.  
 Ruben : Ahmad Albar? No! I don't believe it!  
 Marcell : I say the truth. I read the news this morning.

## **UNIT X THAT'S VERY KINO OF YOU**

### **Task 3**

#### **Sentul to host first Speedcar race**

Saturday, January 26, 2008

The Jakarta Post, Jakarta

Indonesia will play host to the first series of the US\$3 million Speedcar Championships. The Indonesian races will take place at the Sentul International Circuit in Bogor, West Java, from Feb. 16 to 17. Indonesia will field its drivers Ananda Mikola and Moreno Soeprapto in the race.

Moreno said he hoped he would benefit from the home crowd and stand on the podium. He added that if he should manage to win the race, he would be able to attract more sponsors to help finance him in higher budget Formula races in the future.

The Speedcar series will feature 24 drivers behind their eight-valve cars with 620 horsepower, similar to the ones used in Nascar. Physically and skill wise, it's more demanding than Formula 1 as it is heavier. Speedcars weigh 1,300 kg, compared to the 600-kg Formula car.

Moreno and Ananda will race against a number of world-class drivers, including former Formula 1 drivers Jean Alessi and Johnny Herbert, in the races.

The speedcar championships, held in partnership with GP2 Asia, will award the winner US\$600,000. The next series will be held in Malaysia, Bahrain and Dubai. (dre)

**Adapted from: <http://www.thejakartapost.com>**

## **UNIT REVIEW 2**

1. Arnys : Thank you very much for your kindness.  
Marcell : It's no trouble at all.
  
2. Andi : I have given my sister the bracelet we bought yesterday. She likes the motif you  
have chosen. That was really nice of you.  
Retno : Delighted I was able to help.
  
3. Virga : I must congratulate you on recreating a new logo for our club.  
Adib : Thank you. I hope everybody likes it.
  
4. Anita : You look beautiful with that purple gown.  
Ayu : Thank you for saying so.
  
5. Ruben : You know what, my cat, Bella, gave birth to five kittens last night.  
Arnys : Really? That's terrific!
  
6. Marcell : There will be a dog contest next week.  
Anita : I find it very interesting!
  
7. Adib : Your rock idol was arrested for drugs case. I read the news this morning.  
Andi : No! I don't believe it!
  
8. Denias : Would you like to go with me to the baseball match tomorrow?  
Virga : I won't say no.

# ANSWER KEY

## SEMESTER 1

1. A    11.    A    21.    A  
2. B    12.    C    22.    C  
3. A    13.    A    23.    A  
4. C    14.    E    24.    B  
5. D    15.    C    25.    C  
6. B    16.    D    26.    B  
7. E    17.    A    27.    E  
8. A    18.    B    28.    A  
9. B    19.    D    29.    B  
10. D    20.    E    30.    C

## SEMESTER 2

1. E    11.    D    21.    A  
2. D    12.    A    22.    B  
3. B    13.    C    23.    A  
4. C    14.    A    24.    D  
5. D    15.    D    25.    E  
6. A    16.    A    26.    C  
7. A    17.    E    27.    D  
8. C    18.    C    28.    B  
9. A    19.    A    29.    A  
10. B    20.    E    30.    E

# SUBJECT INDEX

## A

accepting an offer/invitation 39, 40, 54, 167, 176  
approving appointments 59, 60, 70  
asking how someone is 4, 5, 18

## C

cancelling appointments 59, 60, 70  
complimenting 118, 130  
congratulating 118, 130

## D

declining an offer/invitation 39, 40, 54

## E

expressing disbelief 151, 160  
expressing surprise 151, 160

## G

giving instructions 40, 54  
greeting someone 4, 5, 18

## I

introducing someone 6, 7, 18  
introducing yourself 6, 7, 18

## M

making appointments 59, 60, 70

## R

responding to compliments and congratulations 118, 130  
responding to thanks 88, 100, 112

## S

saying good bye 4, 5, 18  
saying how you are 5, 18  
saying you are excited 136, 146  
saying that you are pleased 76, 88  
showing attention 23, 24, 34  
showing sympathy 23, 24, 34  
simple past tense 30, 34

## T

thanking 75, 76, 88, 112

# MINI DICTIONARY

absorbent [əb'zɔ:bənt] (ks)	: menyerap
abuse [ə'bju:s] (kb)	: penyalahgunaan
accomplice [ə'kʌmplɪs] (kb)	: kaki tangan
achievement [ə'tʃi:vment] (kb)	: prestasi
active ['æktyv] (ks)	: aktif
adjudicator [ə'dʒu:dɪkeɪtə] (kb)	: penilai
allegation [æl'gelʃn] (kb)	: dugaan
alleged [ə'ledʒd] (ks)	: diduga sebagai
announcement [ə'naunmənt] (kb)	: pengumuman
annoy [ə'nɔɪ] (kkt)	: menganggu; menjengkelkan
anxious ['æŋkʃəs] (ks)	: gelisah
apprehend [æpri'hend] (kkt)	: menahan
arrested [ə'restid] (kkt)	: menangkap
attainment [ə'teinmənt] (kb)	: pencapaian
attend [ə'tend] (kkt)	: menghadiri
audience ['ɔ:diəns] (kb)	: penonton
award [ə'wɔ:d] (kb)	: penghargaan
bald [bɔ:lđ] (ks)	: botak
barn [ba:n] (kb)	: gudang
battle ['bætl] (kb)	: perang
bay leaf [beɪ li:f] (kb)	: daun salam
beat [bi:t] (kkt)	: mengalahkan
benefit ['benɪft] (kki)	: mengambil keuntungan
black magician [blæk mə'dʒɪʃn] (kb)	: dukun jahat
boil [bɔ:l] (kkt)	: didihkan
bout [baut] (kb)	: pertandingan
bride [braɪd] (kb)	: pengantin wanita
bridegroom ['braɪdgru:m] (kb)	: pengantin laki - laki
budget ['bʌdʒɪt] (kb)	: anggaran
campaign [kæm'peɪn] (kb)	: kampanye
candlenut ['kændlnʌt] (kb)	: kemiri
careful ['keəfʊl] (ks)	: hati-hati; teliti
careless ['keələs] (ks)	: sembrono
cart [ka:t] (kb)	: kereta
cattle ['kætl] (kb)	: ternak
ceremony ['seriməni] (kb)	: upacara
champion ['tʃæmpiən] (kb)	: juara
chant [tʃa:nt] (kb)	: nyanyian
charcoal ['tʃa:kəul] (kb)	: arang
cheerful ['tʃi:əfʊl] (ks)	: ceria

cheese [tʃi:z] (kb)	:	keju
chop [tʃɒp] (kkt)	:	memotong
cloak [kləʊk] (kb)	:	mantel; jubah
clog [klɒg] (kb)	:	tekelek; bakiak
clove [kləʊv] (kb)	:	butir; siung
club [klʌb] (kb)	:	klub; perkumpulan
coffin ['kɒfin] (kb)	:	peti mati
commotion [kə'məʃən] (kb)	:	keributan
competition [kəm'pɪtɪʃn] (kb)	:	perlombaan
compliment ['kɒmplɪmənt] (kkt)	:	memuji
confident ['kɒnfɪdənt] (ks)	:	percaya diri
congratulate [kən'grætjuleɪt] (kkt)	:	memberi selamat
content [kən'tent] (ks)	:	bahagia
coriander seed [kɔri'ændə sɪ:d] (kb)	:	ketumbar
corpse [kɔ:ps] (kb) :	:	jenazah
costume ['kɒstjum] (kb)	:	kostum
couple ['kʌpl] (kb)	:	pasangan
coy [kɔɪ] (ks)	:	malu
crisp [krɪsp] (ks)	:	renyah
cruel ['kruəl] (ks)	:	kejam
crypt [kript] (kb)	:	ruang bawah tanah
curlie [kʌdl] (kkt)	:	memeluk
curse [kə:s] (kb)	:	kutukan
dealer ['di:lə] (kb)	:	pedagang
decorate ['dekəreɪt] (kkt)	:	menghias
defence [dɪ'fens] (kb)	:	pertahanan diri
deformity [dɪ'fɔ:mɪtɪ] (kb)	:	kelainan bentuk
delicious [dɪ'lɪʃəs] (ks)	:	lezat; enak
delighted [dɪ'laitɪd] (ks)	:	gembira
desire [dɪ'zaɪə] (kb)	:	hasrat
determined [dɪ'tə:mɪnd] (ks)	:	tegas
diligent ['dɪlɪdʒənt] (ks)	:	rajin
discharge [dɪs'tʃa:dʒ] (kkt)	:	meninggalkan
dissolve [dɪ'zolv] (kkt)	:	melarutkan
distressed [dɪ'strest] (ks)	:	sedih
dominate ['dəmɪneɪt] (kkt)	:	mendominasi
dough [dəʊ] (kb)	:	adonan
drain [dreɪn] (kkt)	:	tiriskan
drug [drʌg] (kb)	:	obat-obatan
elaborate [ɪ'læbərət] (ks)	:	rumit
enchant [ɪn'tʃa:nt] (kkt)	:	memikat
encounter [ɪn'kauntə] (kb)	:	pertemuan
energetic [enə'dʒetɪk] (ks)	:	enerjik
enthusiastic [ɪnθju:zi'aɛstɪk] (ks)	:	antusias
estranged [ɪ'streɪndʒd] (ks)	:	sudah tidak akrab
eventual [ɪ'ventjuəl] (ks)	:	akhir

extracurricular ['ekstrəkə'rɪkjula:] (ks)	:	ekstrakurikuler
extrovert ['ekstrəvə:t] (ks)	:	ekstrovet
faint [feɪnt] (kki)	:	pingsan
fairy ['feəri] (kb)	:	peri
feast [fi:st] (kb)	:	pesta
fierce ['fɪəs] (ks)	:	galak
flour ['flauə] (kb)	:	tepung
foil [fɔɪl] (kkt)	:	mengagalkan
fork [fɔ:k] (kb)	:	garpu
fortitude ['fɔ:tɪtjur:d] (kb)	:	ketabahan
frantic ['fræntɪk] (ks)	:	tergesa-gesa
friendly ['frendli] (ks)	:	ramah
fry [fraɪ] (kkt)	:	menggoreng
funeral ['fju:nərəl] (kb)	:	pemakaman
fur [fə:] (kb)	:	rambut binatang
galangal (kb) ['gæləngeɪl]	:	laos
garlic ['ga:lɪk] (kb)	:	bawang putih
generous ['dʒenərəs] (ks)	:	dermawan; murah hati
grate [greɪt] (kkt)	:	memarut
graveyard ['greɪvja:d] (kb)	:	makam
gravy ['grəvɪ] (kb)	:	kuah daging
green jack fruit [grɪ:n dʒæk fru:t] (kb)	:	nangka muda
host [həʊst] (kb)	:	tuan rumah
humble ['hʌmbɪl] (ks)	:	rendah hati
humorous ['hju:mərəs] (ks)	:	humoris
hut [hʌt] (kb)	:	pondok
icon ['aɪkən] (kb)	:	lambang
impatient [ɪm'peɪʃnt] (ks)	:	tidak sabar
intelligent [ɪn'telɪdʒənt] (ks)	:	pintar
introduce [ɪntrə'dju:s] (kkt)	:	memperkenalkan
introvert ['intrəvə:t] (ks)	:	introvet
investigation [ɪn'vestri'geɪʃn] (kb)	:	penyelidikan
involve [ɪn'velv] (kkt)	:	melibatkan
itch [ɪtʃ] (kb)	:	gatal
join [dʒɔɪn] (kkt)	:	mengikuti
jurisdiction [dʒuərɪs'dɪkʃn] (kb)	:	yuridiksi
jury ['dʒʊəri] (kb)	:	juri
kin [kɪn] (kb)	:	sanak; famili
knight [naɪt] (kb)	:	ksatria
lazy ['leɪzɪ] (ks)	:	malas
lone [ləʊn] (ks)	:	satu-satunya
lumberjack ['lʌmbədʒæk] (kb)	:	penebang pohon
marinate ['mærɪneɪt] (kkt)	:	mengasinkan
marking ['ma:kɪŋ] (kb)	:	tanda
marriage ['mærɪdʒ] (kb)	:	pernikahan
marvelous ['ma:vələs] (ks)	:	bagus sekali

mash [mæʃ] (kkt)	: melenyehkan
massive ['mæsɪv] (ks)	: raksasa
meditate ['mediteɪt] (kki)	: bersemedi
mince [mɪns] kkt)	: menghaluskan
mingle ['mɪŋgl] (kki)	: berbaur
miracle ['mɪrəkl] (kb)	: keajaiban
misdemeanor [mɪsdɪ'mi:nə] kb)	: pelanggaran hukum (yang ringan)
mix [mɪks] (kkt)	: mencampurkan
murmur ['mə:mə] (kki)	: berbisik
muscular ['mʌskjʊlə] (ks)	: berotot
mystical ['mɪstɪkl] (ks)	: gaib; mistik
nervous ['nə:vəs] (ks)	: gugup
noble ['nəʊbl] (ks)	: mulia
notable ['nəutəbl] (ks)	: terkenal
occasion [ə'keɪʒən] (kb)	: acara
offset [ɒf'set] (kkt)	: mengimbangi
onion ['ʌnjən] (kb)	: bawang merah
palace ['pæləs] (kb)	: istana
participant [pɑ:tɪsɪpənt] (kb)	: peserta
pass away s (kki)	: meninggal dunia
peculiar [pɪ'kjū:liə] ks)	: aneh
pellet ['pelɪt] (kb)	: butiran
performance [pə'fɔ:rəməns] (kb)	: pertunjukan; pergelaran
pile up ['paɪlʌp] (kkt)	: menumpuk
pity ['pɪvət] (kb)	: kasihan
pleased [pli:zd] ks)	: senang
podium ['pəudiəm] (kb)	: podium
pole [pəʊl] (kb)	: tiang
pond [pənd] (kb)	: kolam
poodle ['pu:dł] (kb)	: anjing pudel (berambut keriting)
possession [pə'zeʃn] (kb)	: kepemilikan
pound spaund] kkt)	: memukul-mukul
pour s(kkt)	: tuang
preparation [prepə'reiʃn] (kb)	: persiapan
pressure ['preʃə] (kb)	: tekanan
prosperous ['prɒspərəs] (ks)	: sejahtera
psychiatric [saɪkɪ'ætrɪk] (ks)	: berhubungan dengan kejiwaan
pug [pʌg] (kb)	: jenis anjing kecil berhidung pesek
punch [pʌnʃ] (kkt)	: memukul, menjotos
puppet ['pʌpɪt] (kb)	: golek; boneka
puppy ['pʌpi] (kb)	: anak anjing
quot t)	: mengutip
rag [ræg] (kb)	: kain lap
raid [reɪd] kb)	: razia
rattle ['rætl] (kkt)	: menderak-derakkan
realizes(kki)	: menyadari

reception [rɪ'sepʃn] (kb)	: resepsi
recipe ['resipi] (kb)	: resep
rein [reɪn] kb)	: tali kekang
relative ['relətɪvli] (kb)	: kerabat
repeatedly [rɪ'pi:tɪdli] (kk)	: berkali-kali
represent [reprɪ'zent] (kki)	: mewakili
request [rɪ'kwest] (kb)	: permintaan
restricting order [rɪ'streɪnɪŋ] ['ɔ:də] (kb)	: perintah penahanan
revolt [rɪ'veult] (kki)	: memberontak
roast [rəʊst] (kki)	: terpanggang
rumour ['ru:mə] (kb)	: rumor
sacred ['seɪkrəd] (ks)	: suci
sauce [sɔ:s] (kb)	: saus
saucepans ['sɔ:spæn] (kb)	: panci bergagang
sauté ['səuteɪ] (kkt/kki)	: tumis
scabies ['skeɪbi:z] (kb)	: kudis
scrap [skræp] (kb)	: sisa-sisa makanan
sensitive ['sensɪtɪv] (ks)	: sensitif
shepherd ['ʃepəd] (kb)	: anjing gembala
shred [ʃred] (kkt)	: memarut
shrimp cracker [ʃrɪmp 'krækə] (kb)	: kerupuk udang
shrimp paste [ʃrɪmp peɪst] (kkt)	: terasi udang
shy [ʃai] (ks)	: malu
simmer ['sɪmə] (kkt)	: didihkan (dengan api kecil)
skewer ['skjuə] (kb)	: tusuk sate
skinny ['skini] (ks)	: kurus
slanting ['sla:ntɪŋ] (ks)	: sipit
slaughter ['slɔ:tə] (kkt)	: menyembelih
slice [slaɪs] (kb)	: irisan, potongan
slice [slaɪs] (kki)	: mengiris
slipper ['slɪpər] (kb)	: sandal; selop
smoothly ['smu:ðli] (kk)	: dengan lancar
soothe [su:ð] (kkt)	: menenangkan
spear ['spiə] (kb)	: tombak
squeeze [skwi:z] (kki)	: memeras
stalk [stɔ:k] (kkt)	: mengikuti
staple ['steɪpl] (ks)	: pokok
steep [sti:p] (kki)	: merendam
stingy ['strɪndʒi] (ks)	: pelit
stinky [stɪŋki] (ks)	: bau tidak enak (busuk)
stir [stə:] (kkt)	: aduk
stubble ['stʌbl] (kb)	: jerami
stubborn ['stʌbən] (ks)	: keras kepala
stupid ['stju:pɪd] (ks)	: bodoh
surgery ['sə:dʒəri] (kb)	: operasi
suspicious [sə'spiʃəs] (ks)	: curiga

tamarind [tæmərɪnd] (kb)	:	asam
tender ['tendə] (ks)	:	lunak
testimony ['testɪməni] (kb)	:	kesaksian
topping ['tɔpɪŋ] (kb)	:	cream, keju, dll yang diletakkan diatas makanan
tournament ['tu:nəmənt] (kb)	:	turnamen; pertandingan
trivialized ['trɪviəlaɪzd] (kkt)	:	meremehkan
trophy ['trəʊfɪ] (kb)	:	piala
ulcer ['ʌlsə] (kb)	:	bisul
upset [ʌp'set] (kkt)	:	menganggu
useless ['ju:sləs] (ks)	:	sia-sia
vow[vau] (kb)	:	janji
wedding ['wedɪŋ] (kb)	:	pernikahan
well [wel] (kb)	:	sumur
whip [wɪp] (kb)	:	cemeti; cambuk
wicked ['wɪkɪd] (ks)	:	jahat
win [wɪn](kkt)	:	memenangkan
wrinkle ['rɪŋkl] (ks)	:	keriput

# GLOSSARY

adjective	: word which describes a noun
adverb	: word which modifies a verb, an adjective, another adverb or a whole sentence
advertisement	: announcement which tries to make sure that people know that something is for sale, that something is going to happen, or that a show is on
announcement	: statement made in public
appointment	: agreed time for a meeting
approving	: agreeing to something
attention	: careful thinking on something
background events	: elaborate what happened, to whom, and in what circumstances
cancelling	: stopping something which has been planned
character	: person in a play or a novel
characteristics features	: features that include physical appearance, qualities, and habitual behaviour
chronological order	: arrangement of events in order of the dates
compliment	: remark which praises someone or something
congratulations	: good wishes on someone who has done well
conjunction	: word which links different sections of a sentence
declining	: refusing something (an offer/invitation)
descriptive	: (text)
dialogue	: conversation between two people
disbelief	: not being able to believe something
drama	: serious performance in a theatre
evaluative remark	: comment that values something
excitement	: being excited
folktale	: story passed down from one generation to the next
greeting	: words said in meeting or welcoming someone
instructions	: indication of how something is to be done or used
introducing	: presenting someone to another person or to people who did not know him or her previously
invitation	: letter or card asking someone to do something
legend	: story from the past which may not be based on the fact
monologue	: speech by a person alone
myth	: ancient story about gods or something untrue commonly believed
narrative	: a spoken or written account of connected events; a story
news item	: spoken or written information about what has happened, an event
newsworthy event	: recounts the event in summary form
noun	: (in grammar) word which can be the subject of a verb and is used to refer to a person or thing
offer	: thing which is proposed

procedure	: way in which something ought to be carried out
pronoun	: word used instead of a noun, such as 'i', 'you', 'he', 'she', and 'it'
recipe	: instructions for cooking food
recount	: (text) to tell a story based on a sequence of events
sequence of events	: series of things which happen or follow one after the other
sources	: comments by participants in, witnesses to and authorities expert on the event
surprise	: feeling when something happens which you did not expect to happen
syllable	: a whole word or part of a word which has one single sound
sympathy	: feeling or understanding for someone else's problems, or after someone's death
thankning	: saying or doing something showing you are grateful to someone for doing something for you
verb	: (grammar) word which shows an action, being or feeling, etc.
vowel letter	: a letter used to represent such a sound, e.g. a, e, i, o, u

# Interlanguage:

## English for Senior High School Students X

*Interlanguage* adalah seri bahan ajar Bahasa Inggris untuk siswa SMA. Bahan ajar ini didesain untuk membuat pembelajaran secara bertahap mencapai kompetensi berbahasa yang lebih tinggi. Materi-materi dan kegiatan-kegiatan yang ada dalam buku ini disampaikan melalui beberapa tahapan, yaitu pembuka, pajanan terhadap bahasa target, penjelasan mengenai unsur-unsur kebahasaan, latihan berkomunikasi dalam bahasa target, evaluasi, dan refleksi.

Materi yang dikembangkan dalam bahan ajar ini diorganisasikan ke dalam dua (2) siklus pembelajaran, yaitu siklus lisan dan siklus tulis yang disampaikan secara terintegrasi. Masing-masing siklus mengembangkan ketrampilan berbahasa yang berbeda, yaitu menyimak dan berbicara (siklus lisan) dan membaca dan menulis (siklus tulis). Kegiatan dalam siklus lisan membantu siswa dalam memahami berbagai ungkapan dalam konteks kehidupan sehari-hari, seperti bagaimana berkenalan, menyetujui ajakan/tawaran/undangan, memuji, mengucapkan selamat dan lain-lain. Sedangkan kegiatan dalam siklus tulis membantu siswa memahami berbagai jenis teks seperti *recount, narrative, procedure*, dan lain-lain.

Hak Cipta buku ini dibeli oleh Departemen Pendidikan Nasional dari Penerbit PT Grasindo 

ISBN 979-462-895-6

Buku ini telah dinilai oleh Badan Standar Nasional Pendidikan (BSNP) dan telah dinyatakan layak sebagai buku teks pelajaran berdasarkan Peraturan Menteri Pendidikan Nasional Nomor 34 Tahun 2008 tanggal 10 Juli 2008 tentang Penetapan Buku Teks yang Memenuhi Syarat Kelayakan untuk Digunakan dalam proses pembelajaran.

HET (Harga Eceran Tertinggi) Rp...

**Di unduh dari : [Bukupaket.com](http://Bukupaket.com)**